

# PSEUDOLUS NOSTER

A Beginners' Latin Course

PART TWO

BY

C. W. E. PECKETT, M.A.

*Headmaster, The Priory School, Shrewsbury*

AND

A. R. MUNDAY, M.A.

*Headmaster, Tudor Grange Grammar School, Solihull*



PRINTED AND PUBLISHED BY  
WILDING AND SON LTD.  
CASTLE STREET, SHREWSBURY

*First published 1950*  
*Fifth edition 1964*

*Also by*

C. W. E. PECKETT and A. R. MUNDAY

THRASYMACHUS

A BEGINNERS' GREEK COURSE

*Printed and Published by*

WILDING AND SON LIMITED

CASTLE STREET, SHREWSBURY, ENGLAND

## PREFACE

PSEUDOLUS NOSTER completes the course begun by its predecessor, PRINCIPIA. This course aims at giving pupils a sound working knowledge of the Latin language, so that they can write, speak and, above all, read it with reasonable ease, and can tackle the original texts with some confidence.

The two books cover about seven terms' work, after which the pupils should be able to begin reading Caesar and Virgil not only with reasonable ease but also with enjoyment. They should also, after a further two terms of consolidation and revision, be able to begin continuous Prose Composition.

This book follows the basic principles of its predecessor. It treats the language as something to be spoken as well as written, it tries to build the unknown upon the known, it seeks to teach only one thing at a time and in an order which usage seems to demand, and it prefers the example to the rule. It goes a step further and, by touching on Roman background here and there and by introducing it more purposefully in the plays used for revision, bridges the gap between the intentionally youthful and modern atmosphere of PRINCIPIA and the material of the original texts which are to follow. Thus, while the material for the stories about Pseudolus is derived in the main from the roguish adventures of Till Eulenspiegel, the plays are based upon Roman myth and history.

We repeat that although this book is designed to bring Latin within the ken and tastes of pupils living in the twentieth century, it is not an attempt to abolish the discipline of hard work.

This book, like its predecessor, is arranged in eight parts. The first contains the basic reading material with the necessary grammar at the end of each chapter. The second part contains a number of poems by Catullus and Martial, which can be



introduced and enjoyed at appropriate moments. The third part consists of grammatical exercises, based on the work of each chapter. The fourth part contains English-Latin sentences, designed to ensure that each new point has gone home. Each chapter has twenty English-Latin sentences ; those in A are intended to exercise the new point, those in B this and preceding points. The fifth part consists of separate vocabularies listing the most important new words in each chapter which must be learnt thoroughly by heart and constantly revised. The sixth part gives a complete basic *Ars Grammatica* and the seventh and eighth contain Latin-English and English-Latin vocabularies.

Finally, we must offer our thanks to all those who have assisted in the production of this book, among whom must again be included the boys of the Priory School, Shrewsbury. Nor would this Preface be complete without a reference to our gratitude to the publishers, Messrs. Wilding & Son, and their staff for their courtesy, patience and efficiency in the numerous problems with which we have again presented them.

C.W.E.P.

A.R.M. 1950



	<i>Pāgina</i>
FABULAE	7
CARMINA .	. 133
EXERCITATIONES	. 143
SENTENTIAE ANGLICAE	. 177
VOCABULA .	. 199
ARS GRAMMATICA	. 221
LATINE-ANGLICE	283
ANGLICE-LATINE . . . . .	. 321



**PSEUDOLUS NOSTER**

**PARS PRIMA**  
**FABULAE**





# 1. ECHO

## Passive—Present, Future and Imperfect

### Exercitātiō A

Quintus : Marcus Sextum nōn amat.

Echō : Sextus ā Marcō nōn amātur.

Quintus : Sextus Marcum nōn amat.

Echō : Marcus ā Sextō nōn amātur.

Quintus : Marcus Sextum spectat.

Echō : Sextus ā Marcō . . . . .

Quintus : Sextus Marcum spectat.

Echō : Marcus ā Sextō . . . . .

Quintus : Marcus Sextum fugat.

Echō : Sextus . . . . . fugātur.

Quintus : Marcus Sextum retinet.

Echō : Sextus . . . . . retinētur.

Quintus : Marcus Sextum caedit.

Echō : Sextus . . . . .

Quintus : Sextus Marcum caedit.

Echō :

Quintus : Marcus saxum capit.

Echō :

Quintus : Sextus Marcum terret.

Echō :

Quintus :            Marcus saxum iacit.  
Echō :               

Quintus :            Baculum Marcum vulnerat.  
Echō :                Marcus baculō vulnerātur.

Quintus :            Saxum Sextum pulsat.  
Echō :                Sextus . . . . pulsātur.



Quintus :            Puerī clāmōrēs tollunt.  
Echō :                Clāmōrēs ā puerīs tolluntur.

Quintus :            Māter clāmōrēs audit.  
Echō :               

Quintus :            Māter puerōs fugat.  
Echō :               

Quintus :            Māter puerōs capit.  
Echō :               

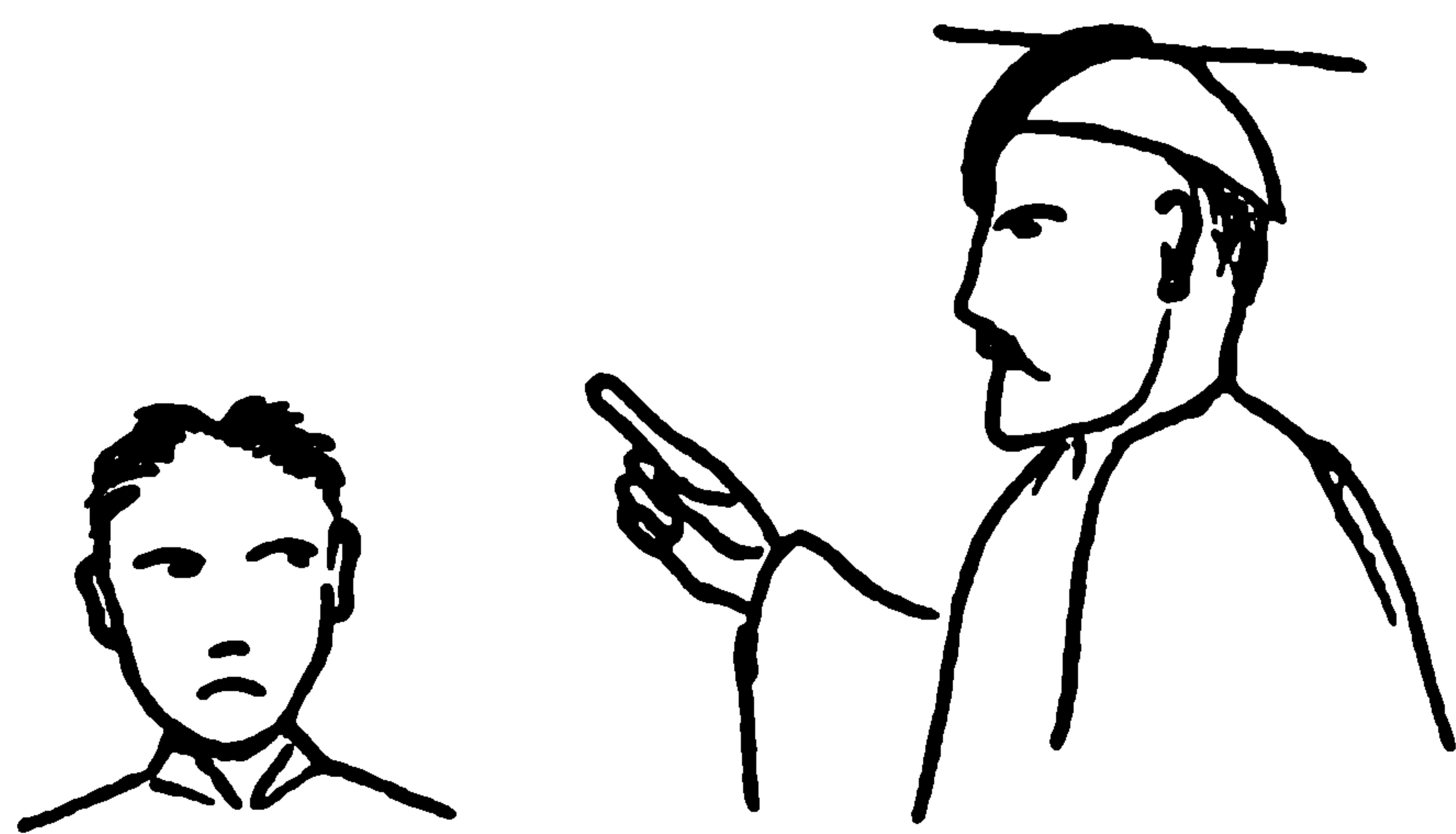
Quintus :            Māter puerōs ad cubīculum mittit.  
Echō :               

Quintus :            Puerī mātrem nōn amant.  
Echō :



**Exercitātiō B**

Quintus :           Magister mē laudat.  
Echō :             Ego ā magistrō laudor.  
Quintus :           Cūr magister mē laudat ?  
Echō :             Cūr ego ā magistrō laudor ?  
Septimus :          Quia magister tē nōn reprehendit.  
Echō :             Quia tū ā magistrō nōn reprehenderis.



Quintus :           Magister mē reprehendit.  
Echō :             Ego . . . . .  
Quintus :           Cūr magister mē reprehendit ?  
Echō :             Cūr ego . . . . . ?  
Septimus :          Quia magister tē nōn laudat.  
Echō :             Quia tū . . . . .

Quintus :           Magister mē in lūdō retinet.  
Echō :             Ego . . . . .  
Quintus :           Cūr magister . . . . . ?  
Echō :             Cūr ego . . . . . ?  
Septimus :          Quia magister tē nōn amat.  
Echō :             Quia tū . . . . .

Quintus :           Magister mē nōn amat.  
 Echō :             Ego . . . . .  
 Quintus :           Cūr magister . . . . . ?  
 Echō :             Cūr ego . . . . . ?  
 Septimus :          Quia magister tē in lūdō retinet.  
 Echō :             Quia tū . . . . .

Quintus :           Magister mē in lūdō custōdit.  
 Echō :             Ego . . . . .  
 Quintus :           Cūr magister . . . . . ?  
 Echō :             Cūr ego . . . . . ?  
 Septimus :          Quia magister tē nōn liberat.  
 Echō :             Quia tū . . . . .

Quintus :           Magister mē nōn liberat.  
 Echō :  
 Quintus :  
 Echō :  
 Septimus :          Quia magister tē in lūdō custōdit.  
 Echō :

Quintus et Octāvus :   Magister nōs in lūdō custōdit.  
 Echō :             Nōs ā magistrō in lūdō custōdimur.  
 Q. et O. :          Cūr magister nōs in lūdō custōdit ?  
 Echō :             Cūr nōs . . . . . ?  
 Septimus :          Quia magister vōs nōn liberat.  
 Echō :             Quia vōs ā magistrō nōn liberāmini.

Q. et O. :          Magister nōs nōn liberat.  
 Echō :             Nōs . . . . .  
 Q. et O. :          Cūr magister . . . . . ?  
 Echō :             Cūr nōs . . . . . ?  
 Septimus :          Quia magister vōs in lūdō custōdit.  
 Echō :             Quia vōs . . . . .

Q. et O. :           Magister nōs in lūdō retinet.  
Echō :  
Q. et O. :           Cūr magister . . . . . ?  
Echō :  
Septimus :           Quia magister vōs nōn amat.  
Echō :

Q. et O. :           Magister nōs nōn amat.  
Echō :  
Q. et O. :           Cūr magister . . . . . ?  
Echō :  
Septimus :           Quia magister vōs in lūdō retinet.  
Echō :

For the Future and the Imperfect, repeat with the necessary changes in the verbs.



# Ars Grammatica—I

## VOX PASSIVA

TEMPUS PRAESENS   TEMPUS FUTURUM   TEMPUS IMPERFECTUM

### pulsō-āre-āvi

pulsor  
pulsāris  
pulsātur  
pulsāmur  
pulsāmini  
pulsantur

pulsābor  
pulsāberis  
pulsābitur  
pulsābimur  
pulsābimini  
pulsābuntur

pulsābar  
pulsābāris  
pulsābātur  
pulsābāmur  
pulsābāmini  
pulsābantur

### retineō-ēre-retinui

retineor  
retinēris  
retinētur  
retinēmur  
retinēmini  
retinentur

retinēbor  
retinēberis  
retinēbitur  
retinēbimur  
retinēbimini  
retinēbuntur

retinēbar  
retinēbāris  
retinēbātur  
retinēbāmur  
retinēbāmini  
retinēbantur

### tangō-ere-tetigi

tangor  
tangeris  
tangitur  
tangimur  
tangimini  
tanguntur

tangar  
tangēris  
tangētur  
tangēmur  
tangēmini  
tangentur

tangēbar  
tangēbāris  
tangēbātur  
tangēbāmur  
tangēbāmini  
tangēbantur

**capiō-ere-cēpī**

capior	capiar	capiēbar
caperis	capiēris	capiēbāris
capitur	capiētur	capiēbātur
capimur	capiēmur	capiēbāmur
capimini	capiēmini	capiēbāmini
capiuntur	capientur	capiēbantur

**sepeliō-ire-sepelivī**

sepelior	sepeliar	sepeliēbar
sepeliris	sepeliēris	sepeliēbāris
sepelitur	sepeliētur	sepeliēbātur
sepelimur	sepeliēmur	sepeliēbāmur
sepelimini	sepeliēmini	sepeliēbāmini
sepeliuntur	sepelientur	sepeliēbantur

**faciō-ere-fēcī**

fīō	fiam	fīēbam
fīs	fīēs	fīēbās
fit	fiet	fīēbat
	fīēmus	fīēbāmus
	fīētis	fīēbātis
fiunt	fient	fīēbant

IMPERATIVUS MODUS

pulsāre	retinēre	tangere	capere	sepelire
pulsāmini	retinēmini	tangimini	capimini	sepelimini

INFINITIVUS MODUS

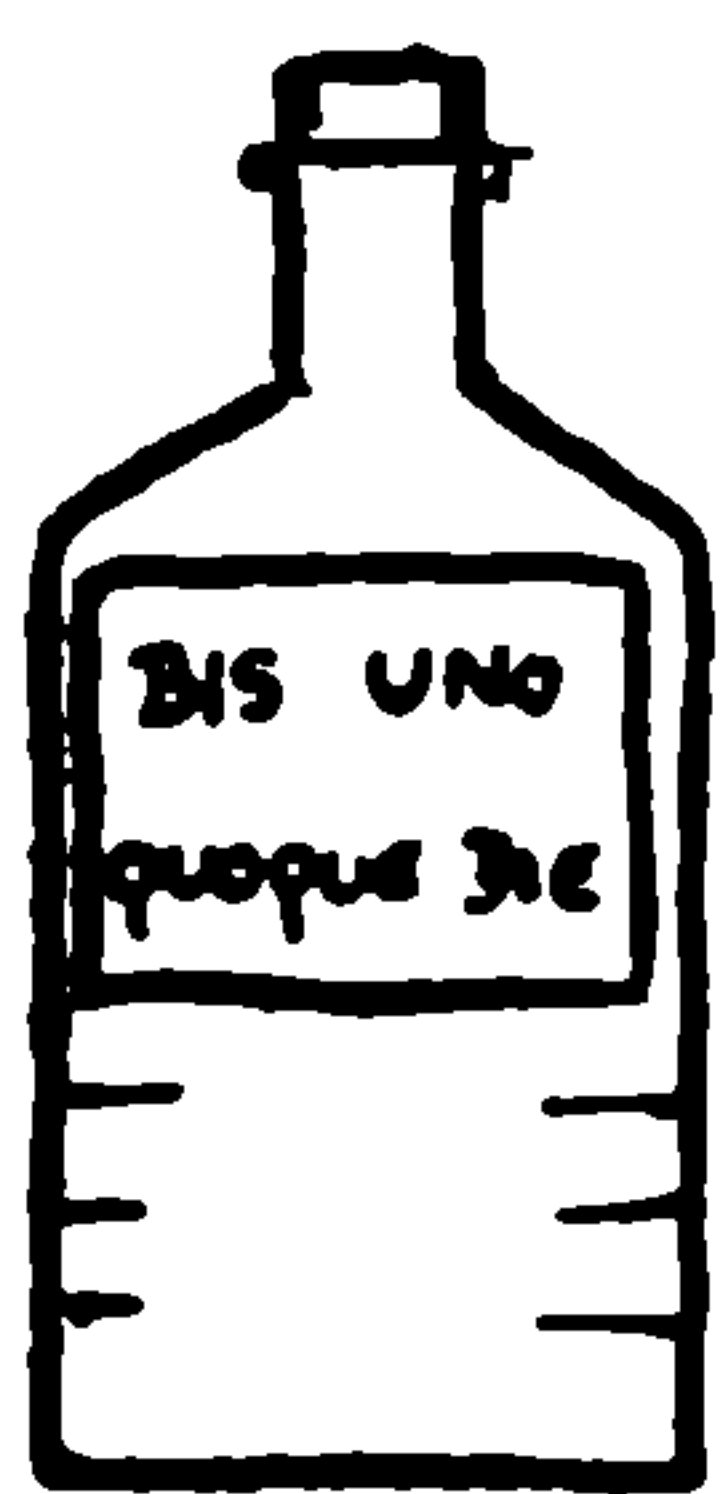
pulsāri	retinēri	tangī	capī	sepeliri	fieri
---------	----------	-------	------	----------	-------



## 2. DE PSEUDOLO ET MEDICO



Olim Pseudolus, pessimus quīdam iuvenis et callidus, iter faciēbat. Dum in viā ambulat, caput ēius vėlābātur, ōs ēius aperiēbātur, clāmor maximus ab eō tollēbātur. Subitō autem homō quīdam eī obviam īvit, quī, “O amīce,” rogāvit, “cūr ululās? Num morbō cruciāris? Namque ego optimus sum medicus, ā quō omnēs morbī sānantur.” Cui Pseudolus, “Vehementer,” respondit, “morbō crucior. Namque ex dentibus labōrō. Quā dē causā caput meum vėlātur. O mē miserrimum! O! O! O!” Medicus autem eum tacēre iussit. “Optimum,” inquit, “cōnsilium cēpī. Ambō dīvītēs fiēmus. Ego aquam sordidam ex hōc stagnō capiam medicinamque optimam ex eā faciam, quam in hāc urnā ad proximam urbem portābō. Cum ad urbem advēnerō, omnēs,



qui dolōribus cruciantur, ad mē venīre iubēbō. Dēinde tū ad mē venī et medicinam meam bibe, quā certē sānāberis. Sic multī cīvēs hūius urbis, quī morbis cruciantur, medicinam ement multamque pecūniam mihi dabunt. Tū quoque, ubi sānus fueris, partem hūius pecūniae accipiēs.”

Pseudolus igitur et medicus singulī ad proximam urbem adivērunt. Cīvēs, postquam clāmōrēs, quī ā medicō tollēbantur, audivērunt, celeriter in forum convēnērunt. Dēinde medicus, “Quis,” exclāmāvit, “medicinā meā sānārī vult? Certē ā mē sānābitur; nam medicinam habeō, quā omnēs morbī statim sānantur. Emite igitur medicinam meam, quā sine dubiō sānābiminī.”

Dēinde Pseudolus appropinquāvit et medicus eī medicinam vendidit, quam statim bibit. Subitō Pseudolus laetus fit.



Multi igitur cives medicinam emerunt et medico multam pecuniam dederunt. Postquam medicus multam pecuniam a civibus accepit, cum Pseudolo quam celerrime ex urbe fugit.

Postquam duo milia passuum cucurrerunt, Pseudolus, “Nunc,” inquit, “amice, da mihi partem pecuniae quam promissisti.” Medicus autem “Nonne,” respondit, “meministi verborum meorum? Nonne dixi ‘ubi sanus fueris’? Sed tu non sanus es. Etiam nunc e dentibus laboras. Quo modo mea medicinam, quae nihil nisi aqua sordida est, sanari potuisti?” “Sed,” respondit Pseudolus, caput suum detegens, “sanus sum. Ecce!” “Deos immortales!” exclamavit medicus. “Recte dicis. Aut tu aut ego magus sum. Accipe pecuniam.”

Sed Pseudolus re vera numquam laboraverat. Caput modo velaverat et dolore falso exclamaverat, quia pecuniam nullo labore accipere voluit. Laetus igitur abiit.

### 3. ITERUM DE MARCO ET SEXTO

#### Passive—Perfect, Pluperfect and Future Perfect

#### Exercitātiō A

Quintus : Marcus Sextum nōn amāvit.  
Echō : Sextus ā Marcō nōn amātus est.

Quintus : Sextus Marcum nōn amāvit.  
Echō : Marcus ā Sextō nōn amātus est.

Quintus : Marcus Sextum spectāvit.  
Echō : Sextus . . . . .

Quintus : Sextus Marcum spectāvit.  
Echō : Marcus . . . . .

Quintus : Marcus Sextum fugāvit.  
Echō :

Quintus : Marcus Sextum retinuit.  
Echō :

Quintus : Marcus Sextum cecīdit.  
Echō :

Quintus : Sextus Marcum cecīdit.  
Echō :

Quintus : Marcus saxum cēpit.  
Echō :

Quintus : Sextus Marcum terruit.  
Echō :

Quintus : Marcus saxum iēcit.  
Echō :

Quintus : Baculum Marcum vulnerāvit.  
Echō :

Quintus : Saxum Sextum pulsāvit.  
Echō :



Quintus : Puerī clāmōrēs sustulērunt.  
Echō : Clāmōrēs ā puerīs sublātī sunt.

Quintus : Māter clāmōrēs audīvit.  
Echō :

Quintus : Māter puerōs fugāvit.  
Echō :

Quintus : Māter puerōs cēpit.  
Echō :

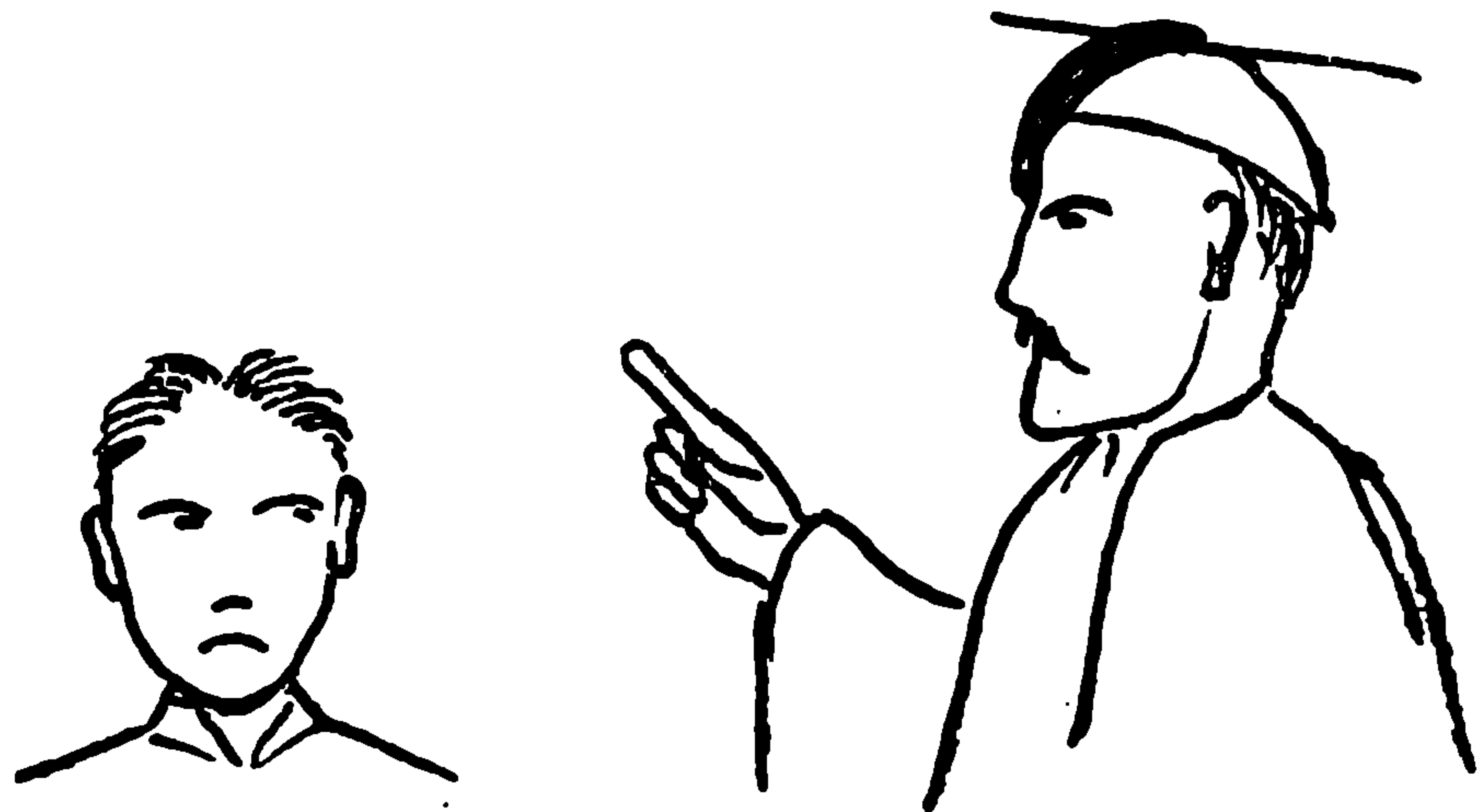
Quintus : Māter puerōs ad cubīculum mīsit.  
Echō :

Quintus : Puerī mātrem nōn amāvērunt.  
Echō :

### **Exercitātiō B**

Quintus : Magister mē laudāvit.  
Echō : Ego ā magistrō laudātus sum.  
Quintus : Cūr magister mē laudāvit ?  
Echō : Cūr ego ā magistrō laudātus sum ?  
Septimus : Quia magister tē nōn reprehendit.  
Echō : Quia tū ā magistrō nōn reprehēnsus es.

Quintus :                   Magister mē reprehendit.  
Echō :  
Quintus :                   Cūr . . . . . ?  
Echō :                   Cūr . . . . . ?  
Septimus :                Quia magister tē nōn laudāvit.  
Echō :                   Quia . . . . .



Quintus :                   Magister mē in lūdō retinuit.  
Echō :  
Quintus :                   Cūr . . . . . ?  
Echō :                   Cūr . . . . . ?  
Septimus :                Quia magister tē nōn amāvit.  
Echō :                   Quia . . . . .  
  
Quintus :                   Magister mē nōn amāvit.  
Echō :  
Quintus :  
Echō :  
Septimus :                Quia magister tē in lūdō retinuit.  
Echō :  
  
Quintus :                   Magister mē in lūdō custōdiit.  
Echō :  
Quintus :  
Echō :  
Septimus :                Quia magister tē nōn liberāvit.  
Echō :



Quintus :                   Magister mē nōn liberāvit.

Echō :

Quintus :

Echō :

Septimus :               Quia magister tē in lūdō custōdiit.

Echō :

Quintus et Octāvus :   Magister nōs in lūdō custōdiit.

Echō :                   Nōs ā magistrō in lūdō custōditī sumus.

Q. et O. :               Cūr. . . . . ?

Echō :                   Cūr. . . . . ?

Septimus :               Quia magister vōs nōn liberāvit.

Echō :                   Quia vōs ā magistrō nōn liberātī estis.

Q. et O. :               Magister nōs nōn liberāvit.

Echō :

Q. et O. :

Echō :

Septimus :               Quia magister vōs in lūdō custōdiit.

Echō :

Q. et O. :               Magister nōs in lūdō retinuit.

Echō :

Q. et O. :

Echō :

Septimus :               Quia magister vōs nōn amāvit.

Echō :

Q. et O. :               Magister nōs nōn amāvit.

Echō :

Q. et O. :

Echō :

Septimus :               Quia magister vōs in lūdō retinuit.

Echō :

## Ars Grammatica—II

### VOX PASSIVA

TEMPUS PERFECTUM	TEMPUS FUTURUM ET PERFECTUM	TEMPUS PLUSQUAM PERFECTUM
<b>pulsō-āre-āvi</b>		
pulsātus sum	pulsātus erō	pulsātus eram
pulsātus es	pulsātus eris	pulsātus erās
pulsātus est	pulsātus erit	pulsātus erat
pulsāti sumus	pulsāti erimus	pulsāti erāmus
pulsāti estis	pulsāti eritis	pulsāti erātis
pulsāti sunt	pulsāti erunt	pulsāti erant

Eōdem modō :—

### **retineō-ēre-retinui**

retentus sum

retentus erō

retentus eram

### **tangō-ere-tetigi**

tactus sum

tactus erō

tactus eram

### **capiō-ere-cēpi**

captus sum

captus erō

captus eram

### **faciō-ere-fēcī**

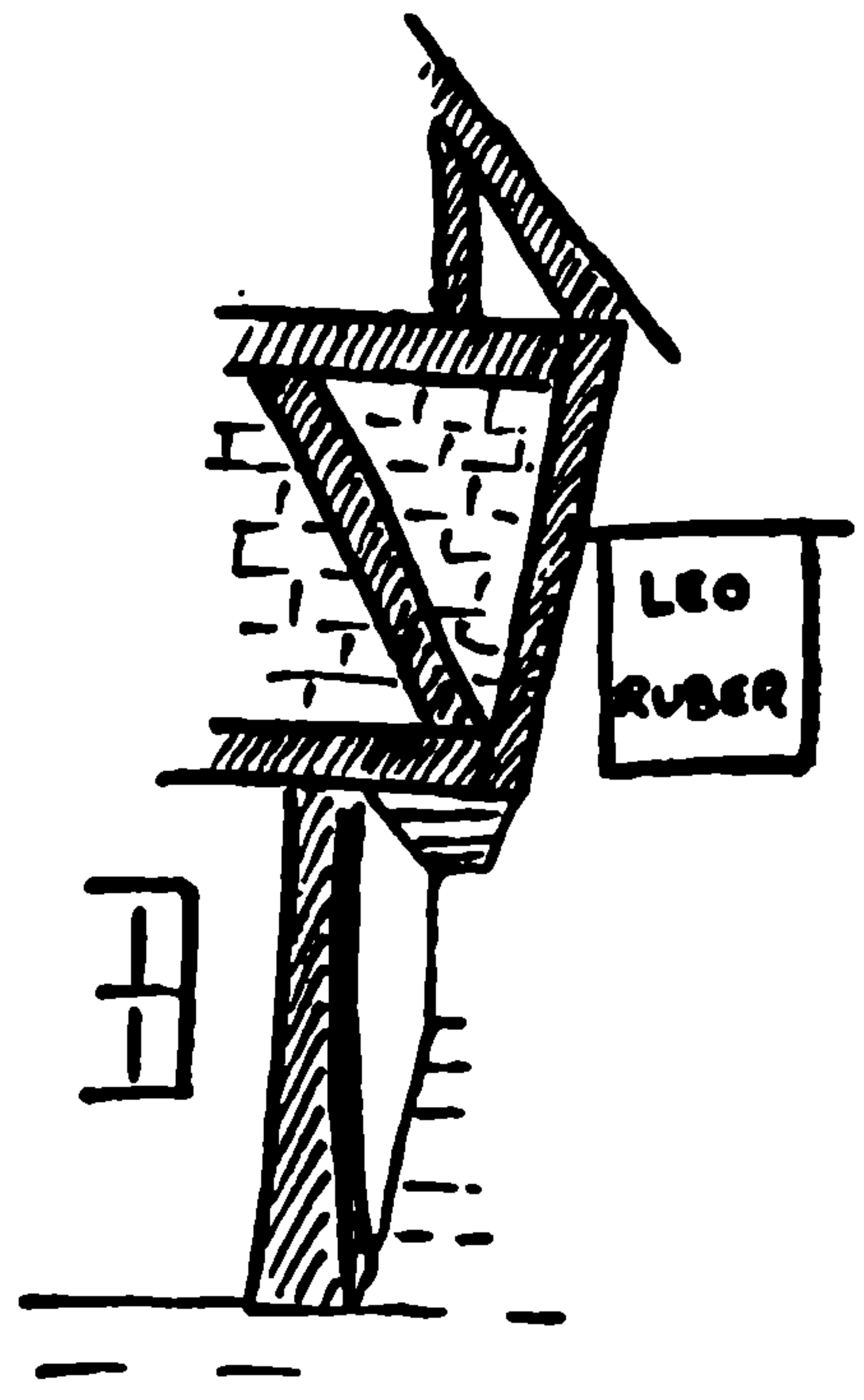
factus sum

factus erō

factus eram

#### 4. DE PSEUDOLO ET CAUPONE

Olim Pseudolus noster ēsuriēbat sitiēbatque, sed, ēheu ! ut semper, pauper erat. Nam omnis ēius pecūnia, nisi trēs assēs, iam expēsa erat. Ivit igitur ad dēversōrium quoddam, et quae in mūrīs scripta erant recitāvit. Hīc enim scriptum est “ Pānis noster optimē coctus est,” illic “ Frūgēs nostrae nūper dēcerptae sunt,” illic “ Vinum nostrum ex optimīs ūvis factum est.”



Pseudolus igitur dēversōrium intrāvit et caupōnem, “ O amice,” rogāvit, “ quantum pānis mihi tribus assibus vendēs ? ” Cui caupō, “ Tribus assibus,” respondit, “ sex unciās pānis tibi vendam.” “ Sex unciās igitur pānis,” inquit Pseudolus, “ tribus assibus emam. Dā mihi.” Dēinde, postquam pānis ei ā caupōne datus est, omnem statim cōsumpsit.



Ubi omnis pānis iam cōsumptus est, Pseudolus iterum caupōnem, “ O amice,” rogāvit, “ quot frūgēs mihi tribus assibus vendēs ? ” Cui caupō, “ Tribus assibus,” respondit, “ sex pōma tibi vendam.” “ Sex pōma igitur,” inquit Pseudolus, “ tribus assibus emam. Dā mihi.” Dēinde, postquam pōma ei ā caupōne data sunt, omnia statim cōsumpsit.

Ubi omnia pōma iam cōsumpta sunt, Pseudolus iterum caupōnem, “ O amice,” rogāvit, “ quantum vinī mihi tribus assibus vendēs ? ” Cui caupō, “ Tribus assibus,” respondit, “ sex sextāriōs vinī



vendam.” “ Sex sextāriōs igitur vīnī,” inquit Pseudolus, “ tribus assibus emam. Dā mihi.” Dēinde, postquam vīnum eī ā caupōne datum est, omne statim exhausit.

Ubi omne vīnum exhaustum est, caupōnī, “ Grātiās,” inquit, “ tibi agō quam maximās. Nunc quot assēs tibi dēbeō ? ” Caupō igitur digitis assēs numerāvit. Tandem, “ Sī rectē numerāvī,” inquit, “ novem assēs mihi dēbēs.” Cui Pseudolus, “ Quid dīcis, ō scelerāte ? Trēs solum assēs tibi dabō. Nōnne dīxistī ‘ Tribus assibus pānem tibi vendam, tribus assibus frūgēs tibi vendam ’ . . . ? ” Sed caupō, “ Cōnsilium tuum,” inquit, “ iam intellegō. Fūr sine dubiō es. Tē autem ad magistrātūs nōn dūcam, sī iussa mea ā tē statim perfecta erunt. Spectā ! Vidēsne dēversōrium illud ? Caupō mihi inimicus est. Tū ad eum abī et eum eōdem modō dēcipe quō mē dēcēpistī. Trēs plūrēs assēs tibi dabō. Accipe igitur et abī ! ”

Pseudolus igitur trēs plūrēs assēs laetus accēpit et, postquam assēs acceptī sunt, caupōnī “ Hoc,” inquit, “ amice, facere nōn possum. Namque caupōnem illum iam dēcēpī. Ille trēs assēs mihi dedit, quia tē eōdem modō dēcipī voluit quō eum dēcēpī.” Laetus igitur abīvit.

## 5. DE SOMNIO PSEUDOLI

### Middle Verbs

Olim Pseudolus noster duōs aliōs fūrēs Rōmam Tarentō comitābātur. Longum erat iter et lentē per viam prōgrediēbantur. Tertiō igitur diē postquam profecti sunt, paene omnem cibum iam cōsumpserant. Dum igitur Pseudolus, qui maximē fessus esse vidēbātur, ā tergō eōs sequitur, duo aliī fūrēs inter sē hōc modō conlocūti sunt. “Parum cibī habēmus. Comes tamen noster semper multum edit. Itaque oportet nōs eum aliquō modō dēcipere. Sic omnem cibum ipsi cōsumēmus. Nōlī autem timēre. Optimum iam cōsilium cēpi. Prōgredere !”

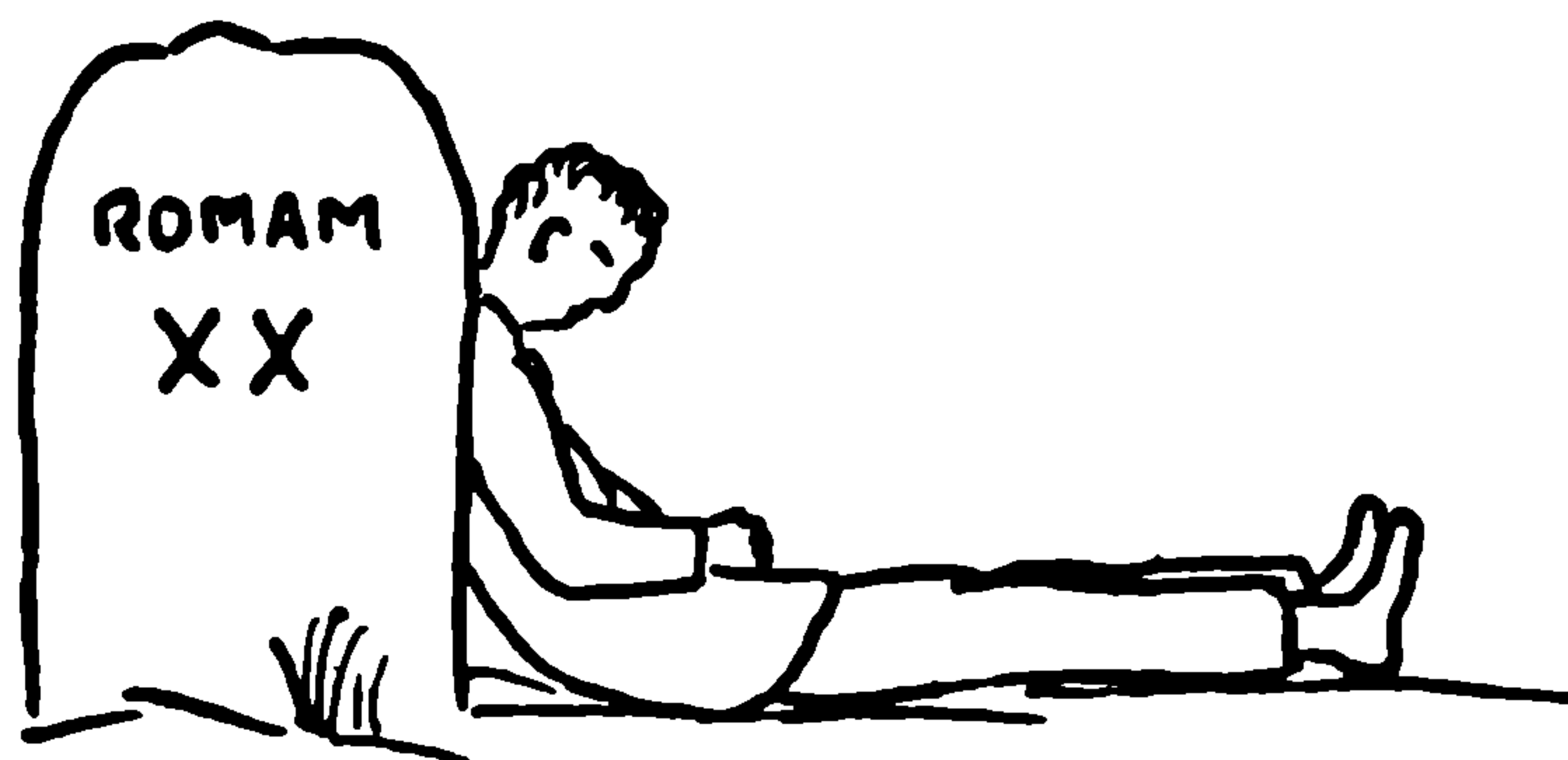
Ubi viginti mīlia passuum prōgressi sunt et sōl iam occidēbat, cōstitērunt et prope viam cōsēdērunt, quia edere volēbant. Dēinde fūr alter ūnum pānem, qui sōlus eis relictus erat, aliīs mōnstrāvit et, “O comitēs,” inquit, “ut mihi vidētur, hīc ūnus pānis nōbīs tribus nōn sufficiet. Itaque hoc, ut opinor, oportet nōs facere. Omnēs iam fessi sumus. Oportet igitur nōs statim dormire, et ei pānem dare, qui, dum dormit, somnium mirābilissimum viderit.” Pseudolus noster mali aliquid suspicābātur. Nihil autem dixit, et omnēs statim obdormivērunt.

Brevi fūr alter, quasi mirābili quōdam somniō perterritus, subitō experrectus est comitēsque magnā vōce surgere iussit. “O amīci,” inquit, “mirābile somnium vīdī, quod vōs certē mirābiminī. Duo enim deī, ut mihi vidēbātur, appropinquāvērunt et mē ad Elysium comportāvērunt. Mihi igitur, ut opinor, pānem edere licēbit.” Cui comes, “Somnium tuum,” inquit, “sine dubiō miror. Ego autem somnium mirābilius vīdī. Duo enim deī, ut mihi vidēbātur, appropinquāvērunt et



mē ad Tartarum comportāvērunt. Mihi igitur, ut opīnor, pānem edere licēbit.”

Pseudolus autem, ut vidēbātur, nōn expectatus est sed, dum fūrēs somnia narrant, dormiēbat. Fūrēs igitur eum excitāvērunt ; namque somnia sua ei quoque narrāre volēbant. Quibus Pseudolus, quasi stupefactus, “ Quis,” inquit, “ mē vocat ? Num comitēs mei estis ? Quō modō hūc regressi estis ? ” “ Numquam,” respondērunt, “ hinc abivimus.” “ Mirābilissimum igitur,” inquit Pseudolus, “ somnium vidī. Namque, ut mihi vidēbātur, duo deī appropinquāvērunt, quī alterum vestrum ad Elysium, alterum ad Tartarum comportāvērunt. Subitō igitur expectatus sum, et, quia pāne vōbīs iam nōn opus erat, eum tōtum sōlus dēvorāvī.” Laetus igitur abivit.



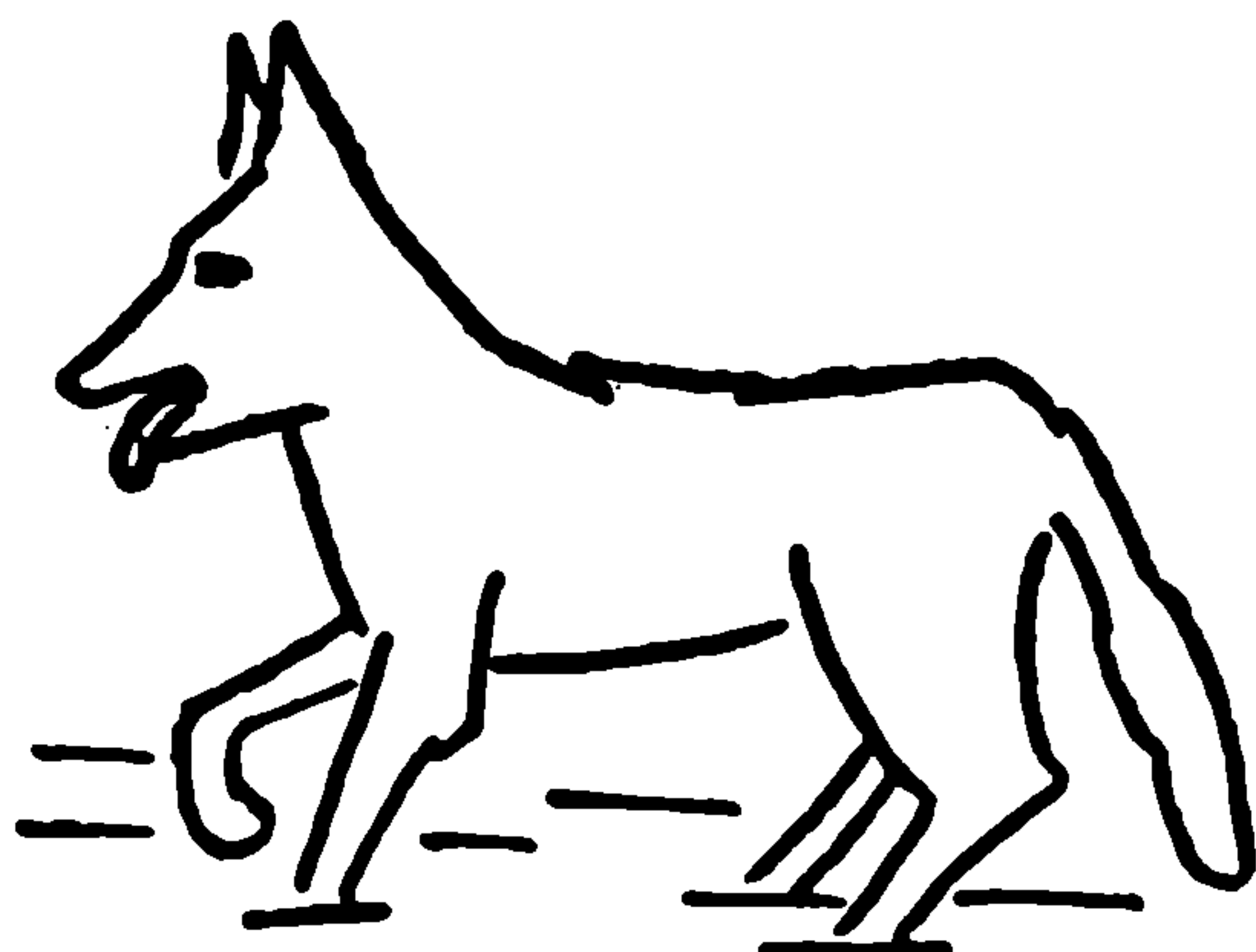
## 6. ROMULUS ET REMUS

### Revision

#### SCAENA PRIMA

*(Prope flūmen Tiberim. Intrat lupa.)*

Lupa : O mē miseram ! Ut  
sitiō ! Nullam aquam  
tōtum diem bibī. Opor-  
tet mē igitur ad flūmen  
prōgredi. O pedēs meōs !  
Quam sordidī sunt !  
Tiberis, quī super ripās  
effūsus est, multum limum in terrā reliquit.



*(Audītur infantium vāgītus.)*

Quid audiō ? Num infantēs hūmānōs vāgientēs ?  
Quid videō ? Alveusne in ripā expositus est ?

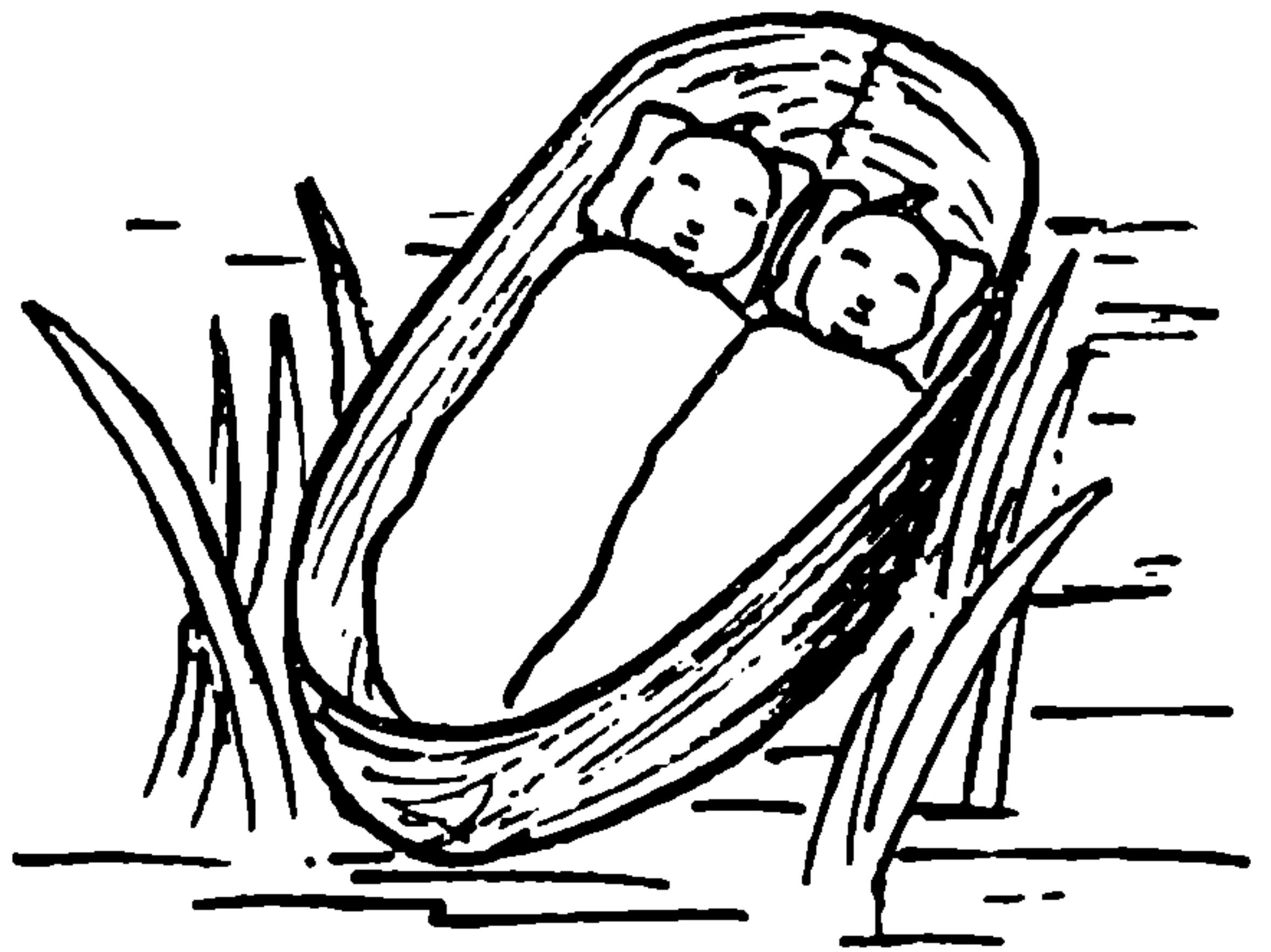
*(Iterum audītur infantium vāgītus.)*

Quid olfaciō ? Duo infantēs hūmānī in alveō  
relictī sunt. Quam pinguēs esse videntur !  
Edamne eōs ? Minimē vērō ! namque pulchrī sunt.  
Infantēs mei ā leōne ablātī sunt. Infantēs igitur  
hūmānōs in cavernam meam portābō et fovēbō

*(Infantēs linguā lambere incipit. Intrat Faustulus, pāstor rēgis.)*

Faustulus : Ecce ! Duo infantēs ā  
lupā cōsūmuntur. Abī,  
lupa, abī !

*(Lupam baculō suō expellit. Lupa  
quae expellitur, ululat. Faustulus ad  
alveum appropinquat.)*



O miserōs infantēs !  
Quam pulchrī esse viden-  
tur ! Geminī sunt, ut mihi vidētur. Sed quis est  
hic ānulus, quī circum collum alterius infantis  
suspēsus est ? Iam intellegō. Hī sunt geminī  
illī, quōs. . . .

*(Iterum vāgiunt infantēs.)*

Sed oportet mē eōs ad uxōrem meam celeriter  
portāre. Illa enim eōs fovēbit et educābit.

*(Exit Faustulus, quī duōs infantēs portat.)*

## SCAENA SECUNDA

*(Albae. In villā Amūlii rēgis. Numitor, frāter Amūlii, quī in  
sellā dormit, ā militibus excitātur.)*

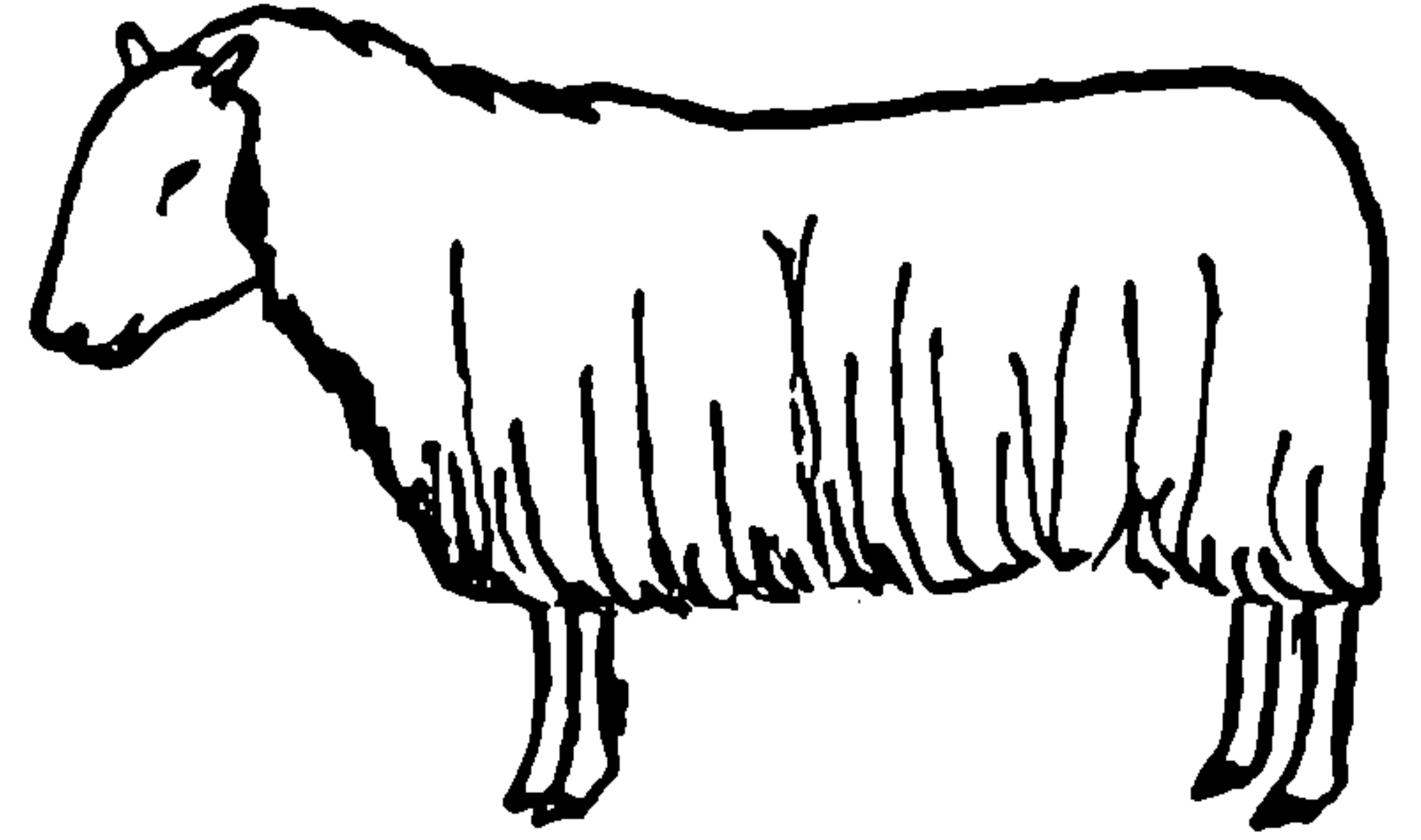
Numitor : Cūr tantum sonitum facitis, militēs ? Quem ad  
mē trahitis ?

Militēs : *(singulī)* Fūr est. Latrō. Bona nostra fūrātur.  
Agrōs populātur.



Numitor : Nōlite exclāmāre. Tū, centuriō, omnia mihi explicā.

Centuriō : In agrīs ovēs aliquōs spectābāmus. Subitō hīc et frāter eius impetum in nōs fēcērunt.



Captīvus : Agrōs nostrōs, domine, populābantur hī militēs. Ovēs nostrās fūrābantur.

Centuriō : Nōlī mentīrī, scelerātissime. Namque nōs, quī arma nōn habēbāmus, fugere coactī sumus.

Numitor : Nōn autem coactī estis hunc capere.

Centuriō : Sed, domine, in agrōs tuōs intrāvit.

Numitor : Meōsne in agrōs dīxistī ?

Centuriō : Quidnī ? Tuōs agrōs hīc populābātur tuāsque ovēs fūrābātur.

Numitor : Rectē igitur eum cēpistis.

*(Intrat Faustulus, quī captīvum cognōscit.)*

Faustulus : *(Sibi dīcit.)* Remus est. A militibus captus est. Quid oportet mē facere ?

Numitor : Abdūcite eum in carcerem.

*(Intrat Rōmulus.)*

Rōmulus : Ubi est frāter meus ? Liberāte frātre meum. Iubeō vōs omnēs eum liberāre.

Numitor : Capite eum, militēs !

Faustulus : *(Ad Numitōris pedēs sē iacit.)* O optime Numitor, hī duo frātrēs quasi filiī mihi sunt. A mē educātī sunt. Nōlī eōs interficere.

Numitor : Explicā mihi.

Faustulus : Olim, ubi infantēs erant, in alveō prope flūmen Tiberim expositī sunt. Ego eōs invēnī, dum lupa eōs fovet. Lupam igitur fugāvī, et puerōs ad uxōrem meam portāvī, quae eōs educāvit. Rōmulus et Remus ā nōbis nōminātī sunt. Optimī sunt

iuvenēs frātrēsque. Ovēs meās optimē custōdiunt  
et omnēs latrōnēs fugant.

Numitor : Vix tibi crēdere possum.

Faustulus : Ecce, domine, hunc ānulum cum eis in alveō  
invēnī.

Numitor : (*stupefactus*) Sorōris meae ānulus est. Hi  
frātrēs, sine dubiō, geminī eius filiī sunt, quōs  
abōminandus ille Amūlius exposuit, postquam  
mē ē rēgnō expulit. Liberāte eōs, militēs.

Rōmulus : Grātiās quam maximās tibi agimus, quod nōs  
liberāvistī. Faciēmus, domine, omnia quae nōs  
facere iusseris.

Numitor : Iubeō igitur vōs Amūlium interficere. Namque  
rex iterum fierī volō.

Rōmulus : Quid igitur nōbīs dabis, si eum interfēcerimus ?

Numitor : Omnia quae vultis vōbīs dabō.

Rōmulus : Dā igitur nōbīs militēs et arma. Urbs Alba iam  
minor est. Albā exire volumus et māiōrem  
condere urbem.

Numitor : Cum Amūlius ā vōbīs interfectus erit, haec  
vōbīs dabō.

*(Exeunt iuvenēs, qui mox Amūlium interficiunt.)*

### SCAENA TERTIA

*(In locō dēsertō. Ante diem duodecimum Kalendās Māiās.  
Parva urbs iam condita est. Mūrus etiam nunc aedificātur. A  
dextrā Rōmulus templum aedificat. A sinistrā stat Remus.)*

Rōmulus : Quis nōmen huic urbī novae dabit ?

Remus : Quis urbem novam reget ?

Rōmulus : Ego quia senior sum.



Remus : Ego quia nātū māior sum.

Rōmulus : Nātū māior nōn es ; namque geminī sumus.

Remus : Neque tū igitur senior es.

Rōmulus : Prōdigia igitur in caelō quaerēmus. Licet illī, ā quō māius prōdigium vīsum erit, rēgī fierī.

*(Prōdigia in caelō quaerunt.)*

Remus : Prōdigium videō. Ecce, sex avēs super caput meum volant !

Rōmulus : Prōdigium māius videō. Ecce duodecim avēs super caput meum volant ! Ego rex fīam ; namque māius prōdigium vīdī.

Remus : Minimē. Ego prior prōdigium vīdī. Ego rex fīam.

Rōmulus : Mentiris !

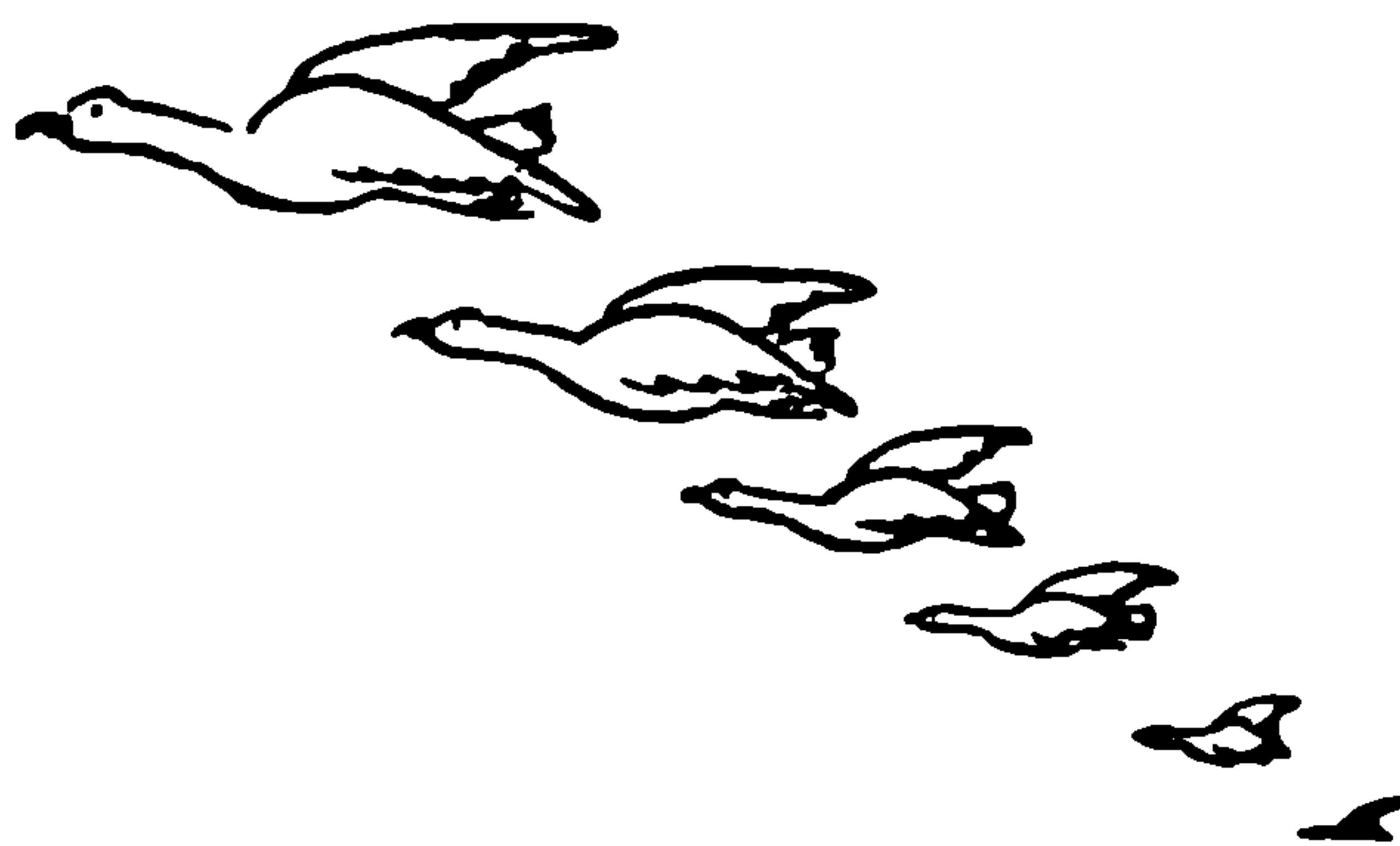
Remus : Mendax es !

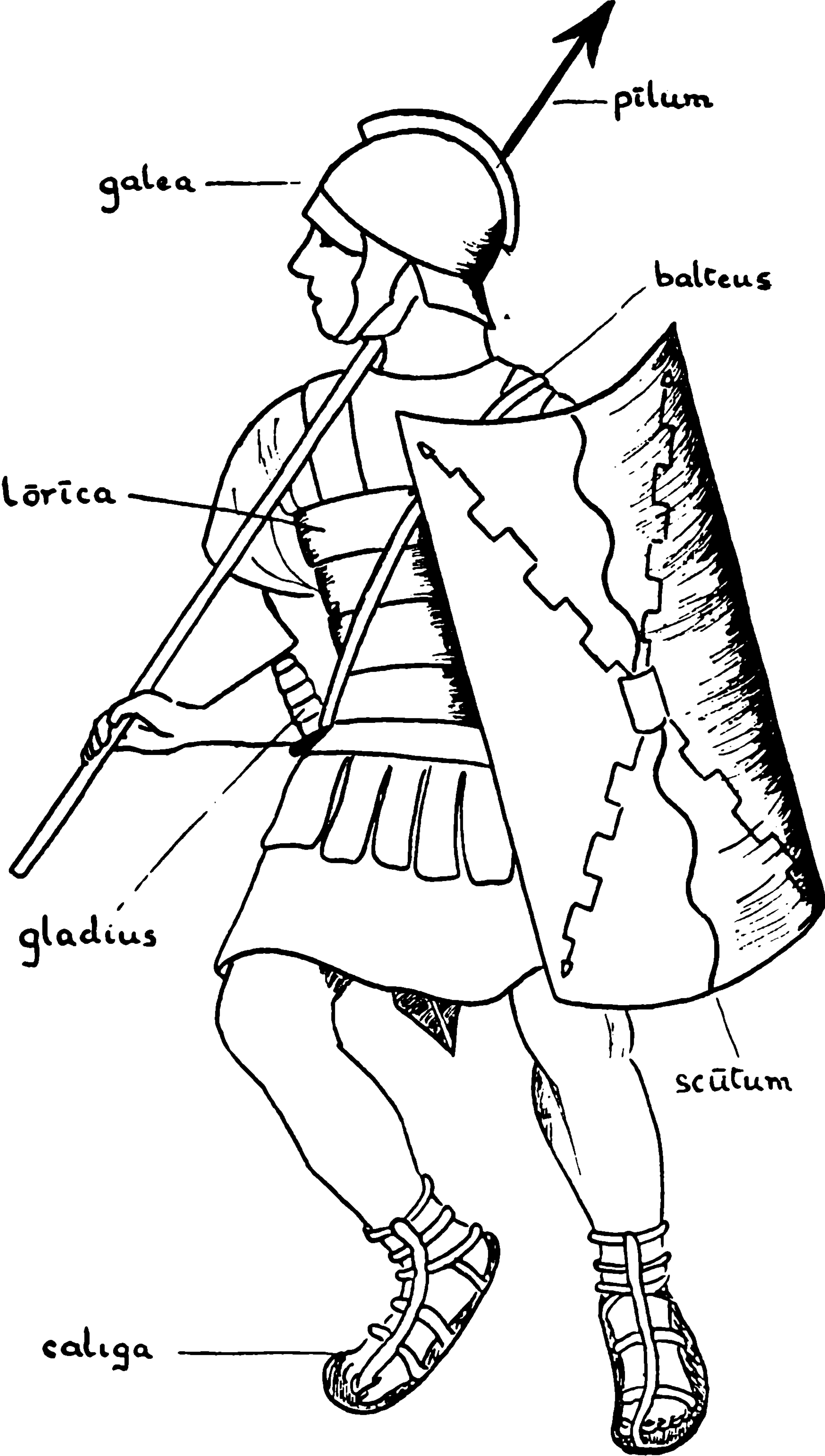
Rōmulus : Bona mea semper auferre vīs.

Remus : Tū quoque !

*Fit rixa. Remus super mūrū trānsilit. Rōmulus igitur eum interficit.)*

Rōmulus : Sic morientur omnēs quī super mūrū meum trānsiluerint. Nōmen Rōmam, ā nōmine meō nōminātum, huic urbī dabō.





**MILES ROMANUS**

## 7. DE EXERCITATIONIBUS EXERCITUS

### The Subjunctive—Indirect Command

#### Exercitātiō A

Centuriō : Surge.

Tirō : (*quī nōn audit*) Imperāsne mihi ut surgam?

Centuriō : Imperō tibi ut surgās. (*Tirō autem nōn surgit.*)

Tribūnus : Imperā eī ut surgat.

Centuriō : (*maximā vōce*) Surge !! (*Tirō surgit.*)

Centuriō : Indue galeam.

Tirō : Imperāsne mihi ut galeam induam ?

Centuriō : Imperō tibi ut galeam induās. (*Tirō autem galeam nōn induit.*)

Tribūnus : Imperā eī ut galeam indu . . .

Centuriō : Indue galeam !! (*Tirō galeam induit.*)

Centuriō : Tolle pīlum.

Tirō : Imperāsne mihi ut pīlum toll . . . ?

Centuriō : Imperō tibi ut pīlum toll . . . (*Tirō autem pīlum nōn tollit.*)

Tribūnus : Imperā eī ut pīlum toll . . .

Centuriō : Tolle pīlum !! (*Tirō pīlum tollit.*)

Centuriō : Invenī scūtum.

Tirō : Imperāsne mihi ut scūtum inveniam ?

Centuriō : Imperō tibi ut scūtum inveniās (*Tirō autem scūtum nōn invenit.*)

Tribūnus : Imperā eī ut scūtum inven . . .

Centuriō : Invenī scūtum !! (*Tirō scūtum invenit.*)



Centuriō : Polī lōricam.

Tīrō : Imperāsne mihi ut lōricam pol . . . ?

Centuriō : Imperō tibi ut lōricam pol . . . (*Tīrō autem lōricam nōn polit.*)

Tribūnus : Imperā eī ut lōricam pol . . .

Centuriō : Polī lōricam !! (*Tīrō lōricam polit.*)

Centuriō : Tenē gladium.

Tīrō : Imperāsne mihi ut gladium teneam ?

Centuriō : Imperō tibi ut gladium teneās. (*Tīrō autem gladium nōn tenet.*)

Tribūnus : Imperā eī ut gladium ten . . .

Centuriō : Tenē gladium !! (*Tīrō gladium tenet.*)

Centuriō : Tacē.

Tīrō : Imperāsne mihi ut tac . . . ?

Centuriō : Imperō tibi ut tac . . . (*Tīrō autem nōn tacet.*)

Tribūnus : Imperā eī ut tac . . .

Centuriō : Tacē !! (*Tīrō tacet.*)

Centuriō : Ambulā.

Tīrō : Imperāsne mihi ut ambulem ?

Centuriō : Imperō tibi ut ambulēs. (*Tīrō autem nōn ambulat.*)

Tribūnus : Imperā eī ut ambulet.

Centuriō : Ambulā !! (*Tīrō ambulat.*)

Centuriō : Festinā.

Tīrō : Imperāsne mihi ut festin . . . ?

Centuriō : Imperō tibi ut festin . . . (*Tīrō autem nōn festinat.*)

Tribūnus : Imperā eī ut festin . . .

Centuriō : Festinā !! (*Tīrō festinat.*)



Centuriō : Dēpōne pīlum.

Tirō : Imperāsne m . . . ut pīlum dēpōn . . . ?

Centuriō : Imperō t . . . ut pīlum dēpōn . . . (*Tirō autem pīlum nōn dēpōnit.*)

Tribūnus : Imperā e . . . ut pīlum dēpōn . . .

Centuriō : Dēpōne pīlum !! (*Tirō pīlum dēpōnit.*)

Centuriō : Cape iterum.

Tirō : Imperāsne . . . ut iterum cap . . . ?

Centuriō : Imperō . . . ut iterum cap . . . (*Tirō autem iterum nōn capit.*)

Tribūnus : Imperā . . . ut iterum cap . . .

Centuriō : Cape iterum !! (*Tirō iterum capit.*)

Centuriō : Reveni.

Tirō :

Centuriō : (*Tirō autem nōn revenit.*)

Tribūnus :

Centuriō : (*Tirō revenit.*)

Centuriō : Abi.

Tirō : Imperāsne mihi ut abeam ?

Centuriō : (*Tirō autem nōn abit.*)

Tribūnus :

Centuriō : (*Tirō abit, dēinde revenit.*)

Centuriō : Nōlī surgere.

Tirō : Imperāsne mihi nē surgam ?

Centuriō : Imperō tibi nē surgās. (*Tirō autem surgit.*)

Tribūnus : Imperā eī nē surg . . .

Centuriō : Nōlī surgere !! (*Tirō nōn surgit.*)

Centuriō : Nōlī galeam induere.

Tīrō : Imperāsne mihi nē galeam indu . . . ?

Centuriō : *(Tīrō autem galeam induit.)*

Tribūnus :

Centuriō : *(Tīrō galeam nōn induit.)*

Centuriō : Nōlī scūtum polire

Tīrō :

Centuriō : *(Tīrō autem scūtum polit.)*

Tribūnus :

Centuriō : *(Tīrō scūtum nōn polit.)*

Centuriō : Nōlī gladium tenēre.

Tīrō :

Centuriō : *(Tīrō autem gladium tenet.)*

Tribūnus :

Centuriō : *(Tīrō gladium nōn tenet.)*

Centuriō : Nōlī pīlum capere.

Tīrō :

Centuriō : *(Tīrō autem pīlum capit.)*

Tribūnus :

Centuriō : *(Tīrō pīlum nōn capit.)*

Centuriō : Nōlī abire.

Tīrō :

Centuriō : *(Tīrō autem abit.)*

Tribūnus :

Centuriō : *(Tīrō abit, dēinde revenit.)*

**Exercitātiō B**

Centuriō : Surge.

Tirō : Imperāvistine mihi ut surgerem ?

Centuriō : Imperāvī tibi ut surgerēs. (*Tirō autem nōn surgit.*)

Tribūnus : Nōnne imperāvistī eī ut surgeret ? Imperā iterum.

Centuriō : Surge !! (*Tirō surgit.*)

Centuriō : Indue galeam.

Tirō : Imperāvistine mihi ut galeam induerem ?

Centuriō : Imperāvī tibi ut galeam induerēs. (*Tirō autem galeam nōn induit.*)

Tribūnus : Nōnne imperāvistī eī ut galeam indu . . . ?  
Imperā iterum.

Centuriō : Indue galeam !! (*Tirō galeam induit.*)

Centuriō : Tolle pīlum.

Tirō : Imperāvistine mihi ut pīlum toll . . . ?

Centuriō : Imperāvī tibi ut pīlum toll . . . (*Tirō autem pīlum nōn tollit.*)

Tribūnus : Nōnne imperāvistī eī ut pīlum toll . . . ? Imperā iterum.

Centuriō : Tolle pīlum !! (*Tirō pīlum tollit.*)

Centuriō : Invenī scūtum.

Tirō : Imperāvistine mihi ut scūtum inven . . . ?

Centuriō : Imperāvī tibi ut scūtum inven . . . (*Tirō autem scūtum nōn invenit.*)

Tribūnus : Nōnne imperāvistī eī ut scūtum inven . . . ?  
Imperā iterum.

Centuriō : Invenī scūtum !! (*Tirō scūtum invenit.*)



Centuriō : Polī lōricam.

Tīrō : Imperāvistine mihi ut lōricam pol . . . ?

Centuriō : Imperāvī tibi ut lōricam pol . . . (*Tīrō autem lōricam nōn polit.*)

Tribūnus : Nōne imperāvisti ei ut lōricam pol . . . ?  
Imperā iterum.

Centuriō : Polī lōricam ! ! (*Tīrō lōricam polit.*)

Centuriō : Tenē gladium.

Tīrō : Imperāvistine mihi ut gladium ten . . . ?

Centuriō : Imperāvī tibi ut gladium ten . . . (*Tīrō autem gladium nōn tenet.*)

Tribūnus : Nōne imperāvisti ei ut gladium ten . . . ?  
Imperā iterum.

Centuriō : Tenē gladium ! ! (*Tīrō gladium tenet.*)

Centuriō : Tacē.

Tīrō :

Centuriō : (*Tīrō autem nōn tacet.*)

Tribūnus :

Centuriō : (*Tīrō tacet.*)

Centuriō : Festinā.

Tīrō :

Centuriō : (*Tīrō autem nōn festīnat.*)

Tribūnus :

Centuriō : (*Tīrō festīnat.*)

Centuriō : Dēpōne pīlum.

Tīrō :

Centuriō : (*Tīrō autem pīlum nōn dēpōnit.*)

Tribūnus :

Centuriō : (*Tīrō pīlum dēpōnit.*)



Centuriō : Cape iterum.

Tirō :

Centuriō : *(Tirō autem iterum nōn capit.)*

Tribūnus :

Centuriō : *(Tirō iterum capit.)*

Centuriō : Ambulā.

Tirō :

Centuriō : *(Tirō autem nōn ambulat.)*

Tribūnus :

Centuriō : *(Tirō autem ambulat.)*

Centuriō : Nōlī festināre.

Tirō : Imperāvistine mihi nē festin . . . ?

Centuriō : *(Tirō autem festinat.)*

Tribūnus :

Centuriō : *(Tirō autem celerius festinat.)*

Centuriō : Nōlī abire.

Tirō :

Centuriō : *(Tirō autem abit.)*

Tribūnus :

Centuriō : *(Tirō autem abit neque umquam revenit.)*

## Ars Grammatica—III

### SUBIUNCTIVUS MODUS

#### TEMPUS PRAESENS

##### VOX ACTIVA

##### VOX PASSIVA

##### **pulsō-āre-āvi-ātus**

pulsem  
pulsēs  
pulset  
pulsēmus  
pulsētis  
pulsent

pulser  
pulsēris  
pulsētur  
pulsēmur  
pulsēmini  
pulsentur

##### **retineō-ēre-retinui-retentus**

retineam  
retineās  
retineat  
retineāmus  
retineātis  
retineant

retinear  
retineāris  
retineātur  
retineāmur  
retineāmini  
retineantur

##### **tangō-ere-tetigi-tactus**

tangam  
tangās  
tangat  
tangāmus  
tangātis  
tangant

tangar  
tangāris  
tangātur  
tangāmur  
tangāmini  
tangantur

**capiō-ere-cēpi-captus**

capiam	capiar
capiās	capiāris
capiat	capiātur
capiāmus	capiāmur
capiātis	capiāmini
capiant	capiantur

**sepeliō-ire-sepelivī-sepultus**

sepeliam	sepeliar
sepeliās	sepeliāris
sepeliat	sepeliātur
sepeliāmus	sepeliāmur
sepeliātis	sepeliāmini
sepeliant	sepeliantur

NOTA BENE :—

**sum-esse-fui**

sim  
sis  
sit  
sīmus  
sītis  
sint

**eō-ire-ii**

eam  
eās  
eat  
eāmus  
eātis  
eant

**volō-velle-volu.**

velim  
velis  
velit  
velimus  
velītis  
velint

**Eōdem modō :—**

possim, adsim, <i>etc.</i>	abeam, adeam, <i>etc.</i>	mālim, nōlim
-------------------------------	------------------------------	-----------------

## TEMPUS IMPERFECTUM

## VOX ACTIVA

## VOX PASSIVA

**pulsō-āre-āvi-ātus**

pulsārem  
 pulsārēs  
 pulsāret  
 pulsārēmus  
 pulsārētis  
 pulsārent

pulsārer  
 pulsārēris  
 pulsārētur  
 pulsārēmur  
 pulsārēmini  
 pulsārentur

Eōdem modō :—

retinērem  
 retinērer

tangerem  
 tangerer

caperem  
 caperer

sepelirem  
 sepelirer

NOTA BENE :—**sum-esse-fui**

essem  
 essēs  
 esset  
 essēmus  
 essētis  
 essent

**eō-īre-īi**

īrem  
 īrēs  
 īret  
 īrēmus  
 īrētis  
 īrent

**volō-velle-volui**

vellem  
 vellēs  
 vellet  
 vellēmus  
 vellētis  
 vellent

Eōdem modō :—

possem,  
 adessem, *etc.*

abirem,  
 adirem, *etc.*

māllem,  
 nōllem



## 8. DE PSEUDOLO ET PISTORE

Olim Pseudolus noster, ut semper, ēsuriēbat. Venter ēius ei imperābat ut cibum sibi daret. Pseudolus autem, ut semper, pecūniam nōn habēbat, neque cibum emere poterat. Venter igitur ēius ei imperāvit ut cōnsilium caperet et grātis pānem acciperet.

Callidum igitur cōnsilium Pseudolus cēpit. Ad pistōrem ivit et, “O benigne pistor,” inquit, “dominus meus, quī dīves est, imperāvit mihi ut ad tē venirem et pānem emerem. Dedit mihi igitur hunc saccum, et mihi imperāvit ut eum pāne complērem.” Postquam haec dīxit, Pseudolus pistōri magnum saccum mōnstrāvit, sed rīmam ei nōn mōnstrāvit, quae in imō saccō facta erat.

Pistor autem, quī nōn benignus erat sed gravis, ei imperāvit ut pecūniam sibi daret. “Pānem enim,” inquit, “tibi nōn dabō, antequam pecūniam accēperō.” Cui Pseudolus, “Nunc,” inquit, “ō amīce, pecūniam nōn habeō, sed dominus meus, quī dītissimus est, mox mihi dabit.” Sed pistor irātus, “Rogā,” inquit, “dominum tuum ut statim pecūniam tibi det; nam, ut iam dīxī, antequam pecūniam accēperō, pānem tibi nōn dabō.” Pseudolus autem pistōrem nē irāscerētur precātus est. “Tū,” inquit, “ō amīce, imperā servō tuō ut mē domum comitētur; namque, sine dubiō, cum domum revēnerimus, dominus meus pecūniam ei dabit.”

Tandem pistor saccum pāne complēvit, et servus Pseudolum comitātus est. Sed postquam aliquantulum prōgressi sunt, Pseudolus rīmam in imō saccō aperuit et pānem per eam in līnum cadere sivit. Dēinde, “Eheu!” exclāmāvit, “tam sordidum pānem ad dominum meum portāre nōn possum. Namque ille semper mē sordidum

cibum emere vetat.” Servō igitur imperāvit nē pānem sordidum mirārētur, sed rediret et novum pānem reportāret. “Equidem,” inquit, “hic manēbō.” Servus igitur stultus, quī nihil suspicābātur, ad dominum rediit, et Pseudolus statim ventri suō ēsurgentī pānem dedit. Laetus igitur abiit.

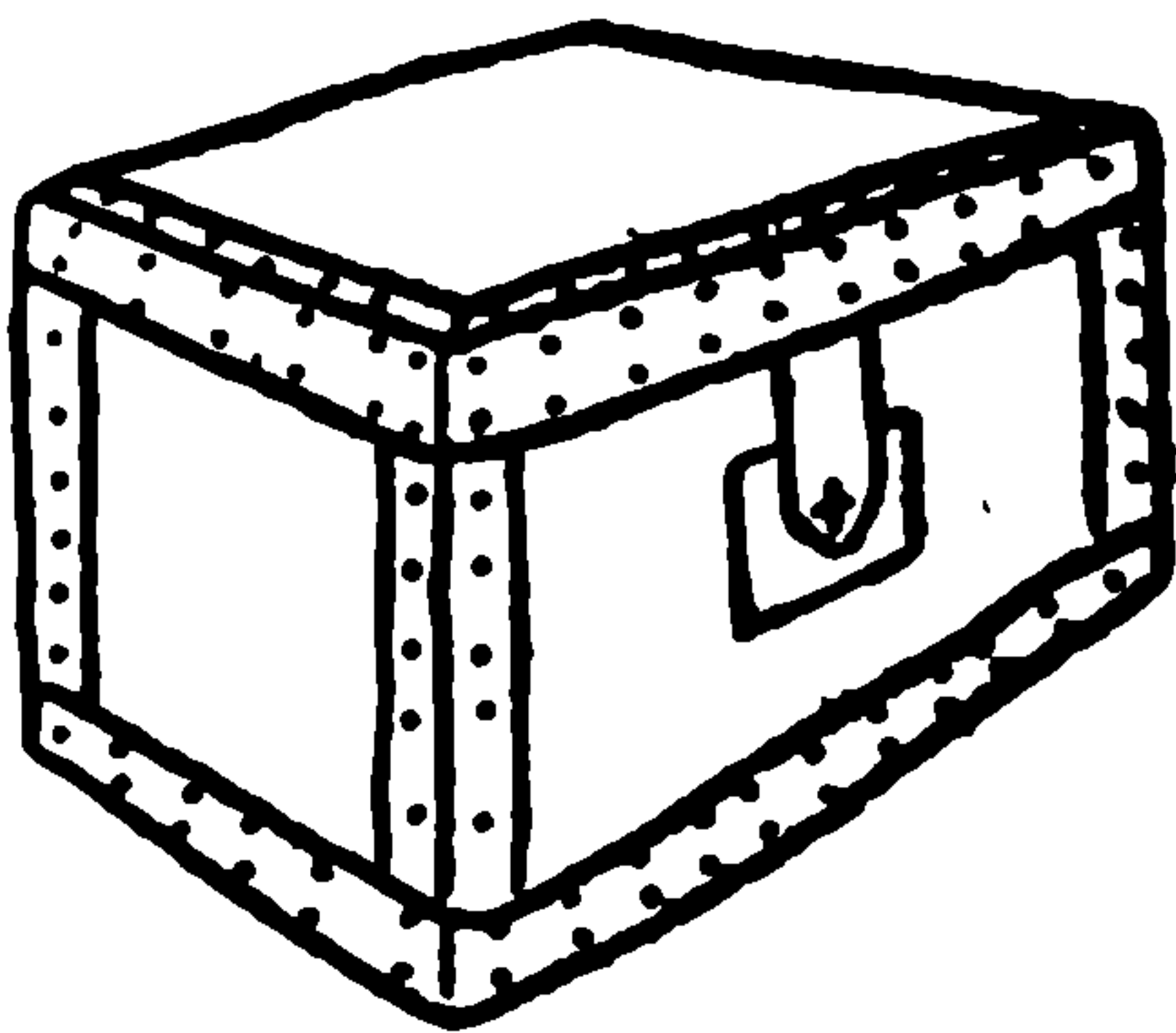


9. DE FURE

Purpose

Exercitātiō

- Marcus : Fūr exit.  
Magister : Quō cōnsiliō fūr exit ?  
Quintus : Ut baculum capiat, fūr exit.  
Magister : Quō cōnsiliō fūr exit ?  
Quintus : Ut baculum caperet, fūr exit.
- Marcus : Fūr baculum capit.  
Magister : Quō cōnsiliō fūr baculum capit ?  
Quintus : Ut fenestram frangat, fūr baculum capit.  
Magister : Quō cōnsiliō fūr baculum cēpit ?  
Quintus : Ut fenestram frang . . . , fūr baculum cēpit.
- Marcus : Fūr fenestram frangit.  
Magister : Quō cōnsiliō fūr fenestram frangit ?  
Quintus : Ut cistam extrah . . . , fūr fenestram frangit.  
Magister : Quō cōnsiliō fūr fenestram frēgit ?  
Quintus : Ut cistam extrah . . . , fūr fenestram frēgit.
- Marcus : Fūr cistam extrahit.  
Magister :  
Quintus : Ut cistam aperi . . . , fūr cistam extrahit.  
Magister :  
Quintus : Ut cistam . . . . .





Marcus : Fūr cistam aperit.  
Magister :  
Quintus : Ut pecūniam aufer . . . , . . . . .  
Magister :  
Quintus :  
  
Marcus : Fūr pecūniam aufert.  
Magister :  
Quintus : Ut cibum em . . . , . . . . .  
Magister :  
Quintus :  
  
Marcus : Vigil appropinquat.  
Magister :  
Quintus : Ut fūrem fug . . . , . . . . .  
Magister :  
Quintus :  
  
Marcus : Vigil fūrem fugat.  
Magister :  
Quintus : Ut eum cap . . . , . . . . .  
Magister :  
Quintus :  
  
Marcus : Fūr cistam omittit.  
Magister :  
Quintus : Ut curr . . . , . . . . .  
Magister :  
Quintus :  
  
Marcus : Fūr celeriter currit.  
Magister :  
Quintus : Ut effug . . . , . . . . .  
Magister :  
Quintus :

Marcus : Fūr celerius currit.

Magister :

Quintus : Nē vigil eum capiat, fūr celerius currit.

Magister :

Quintus : Nē vigil eum cap . . . , . . . . .

Marcus : Vigil celerrimē currit.

Magister :

Quintus : Nē fūr effug . . . , . . . . .

Magister :

Quintus :

Marcus : Vigil fūrem ad carcerem abdūcit.

Magister :

Quintus : Nē aliam pecūniam fūrētur, . . . . .

Magister :

Quintus :

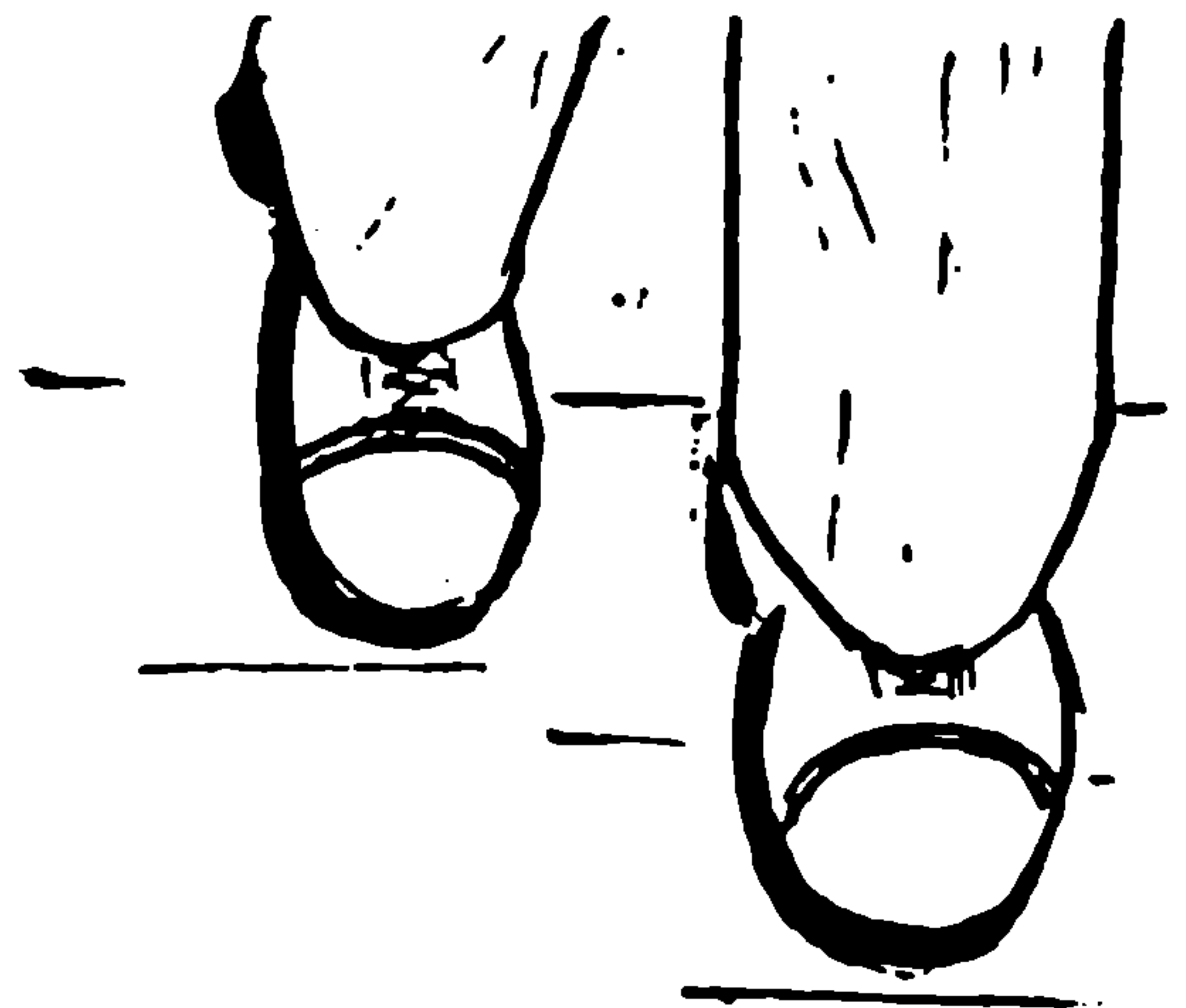
Marcus : Vigil in viā ambulat.

Magister :

Quintus : Ut aliōs fūrēs capiat nēve  
eōs fugere sinat, vigil in  
viā ambulat.

Magister :

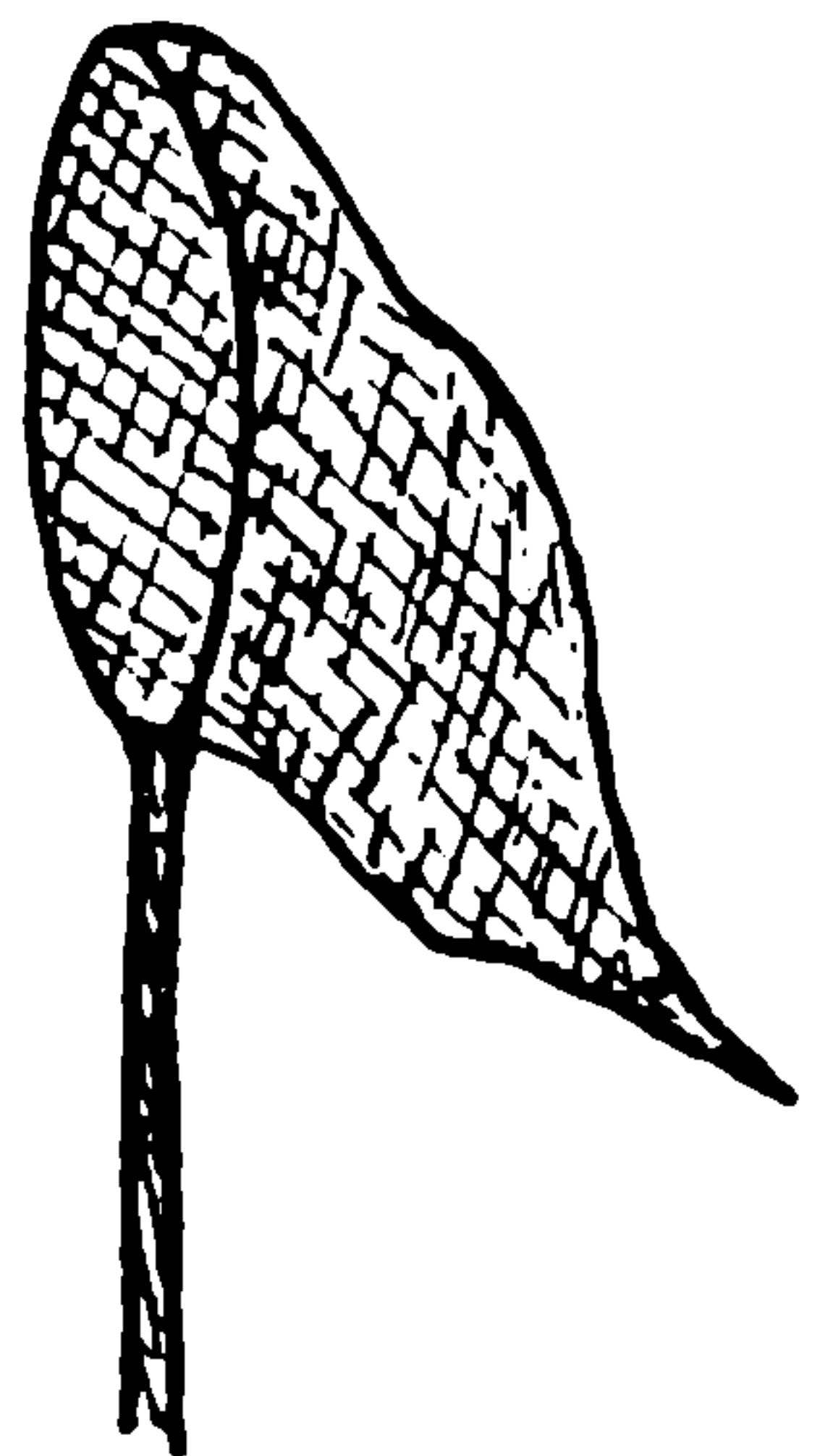
Quintus :



## 10. DE PSEUDOLO ET PISCE

Olim Pseudolus noster, ut amicum vidēret, iter faciēbat. Dum prōgreditur, piscem pinguissimum in lacū quōdam natantem cōspexit. Rēgis tamen superbissimī lacus erat, et rex, ut piscēs cōservāret, nēminem ex eō lacū piscēs captāre sivit. Servīs igitur imperāverat ut titulum in ripā pōnerent, in quō scriptum est “SI QUIS PISCES EX HOC LACU CAPTAVERIT, IN CARCEREM PROFUNDUM IACIETUR.” Hunc tamen titulum Pseudolus nōn flocci faciēbat, sed—ēheu!—rēte nōn habēbat, ut piscēs captāret. Callidissimum igitur cōsilium iniit, ut piscem adipisci posset.

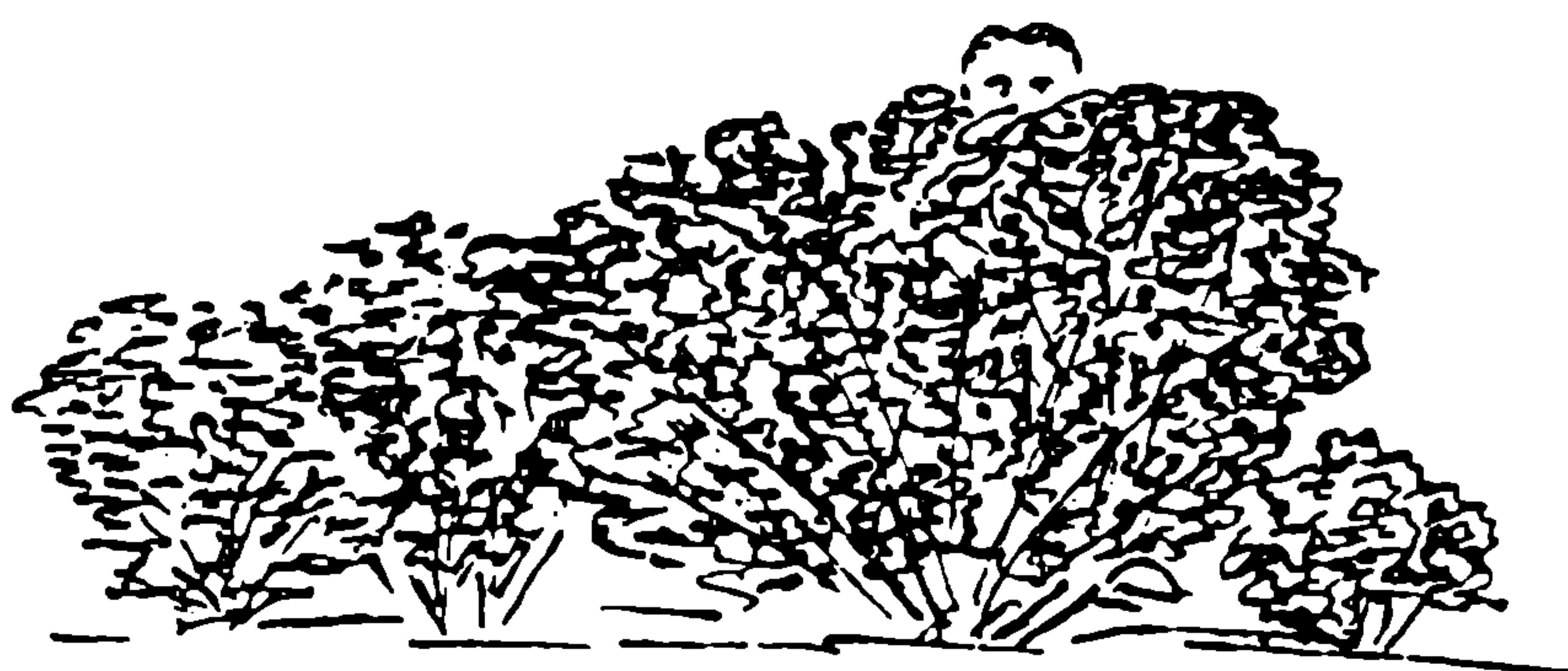
Itaque ad amicum suum, quī haud longē ā lacū habitābat quīque rēte ūtilissimum habēbat, prōgressus est et “O amice,” inquit, “in lacū rēgis piscem pinguissimum vidī. Ego tamen in aquā frigidā stāre nōn possum ut eum captem, quia tussim habeo neque satis bene valeō; sed quod amicus mihi es, hoc tibi nuntiō ut tū piscem adipisci possis.” “Grātiās quam maximās tibi agō,” respondit fūr alter. “Hāc ipsā nocte cum rēte meō exhibō, ut piscem illum captem.”



Itaque, postquam nox advēnit, fūr alter domō ēgressus est et ad lacum silentiō ivit, ut piscem fūrārētur. Haud tamen multō post Pseudolus quoque ad lacum ivit et alterum fūrem in mediō lacū piscem captāre cōnantem vidit. Post autem dūmēta sē cēlāvit, nē quis eum vidēret, et ibi diū manēbat. Dēinde, postquam amicus piscem rēte captāvit et ad ripam portāvit, Pseudolus ē dūmētis surrēxit et vōce terribilī, sicut vigil, “Omnēs,” exclāmāvit, “capti estis. Vōs omnēs comprehendō.” Statim igitur fūr alter, postquam haec verba



audivit, et piscem et rēte omisit, et quamcerri leēm fūgit, nē  
ā vigile comprehenderētur. Dēinde Pseudolus ad lacum  
appropinquāvit et piscem pinguissimum et rēte ūtilissimum  
humō sustulit. “Euge!” sibi dīxit, “domum meam abībō,  
ut piscem coquam sōlusque edam.” Laetus igitur abīvit.



## 11. FUR PECUNIAM AUFERT

### Gerundive of Purpose

#### Exercitātiō

Marcus : Fūr exit.

Magister : Quō cōnsiliō fūr exit ?

Quintus : Ut baculum capiat, fūr exit.

Sextus : Baculī capiendī causā fūr exit.

Magister : Quō cōnsiliō fūr exiit ?

Quintus : Ut baculum caperet, fūr exiit.

Sextus : Baculī capiendī causā fūr exiit.

Marcus : Fūr baculum capit.

Magister : Quō cōnsiliō fūr baculum capit ?

Quintus : Ut fenestram frangat, fūr baculum capit.

Sextus : Fenestrae frangendae causā fūr baculum capit.

Magister : Quō cōnsiliō fūr baculum cēpit ?

Quintus : Ut fenestram frangeret, fūr baculum cēpit.

Sextus : Fenestrae frangendae causā fūr baculum cēpit.

Marcus : Fūr fenestram frangit.

Magister : Quō cōnsiliō fūr fenestram frangit ?

Quintus : Ut cistam extrahat, fūr fenestram frangit.

Sextus : Cist . . . extrahend . . . causā fūr fenestram frangit.

Magister : Quō cōnsiliō fūr fenestram frēgit ?

Quintus : Ut cistam extraheret, fūr fenestram frēgit.

Sextus : Cist . . . extrahend . . . causā fūr fenestram frēgit.

Marcus : Fūr cistam extrahit.

Magister : Quō cōnsiliō fūr cistam extrahit ?

Quintus : Ut cistam aperiat, fūr cistam extrahit.

Sextus : Cist . . . aperi . . . . . fūr cistam extrahit.

Magister : Quō cōnsiliō fūr cistam extrāxit ?

Quintus : Ut cistam aperi . . . , fūr cistam extrāxit.

Sextus : Cist . . . aperi . . . . . fūr cistam extrāxit

Marcus : Fūr cistam aperit.

Magister : Quō cōnsiliō fūr cistam aperit ?

Quintus : Ut pecūniam auferat, fūr cistam aperit.

Sextus :

Magister : Quō cōnsiliō fūr cistam aperuit ?

Quintus : Ut pecūniam . . . , fūr cistam aperuit.

Sextus :

Marcus : Fūr pecūniam aufert.

Magister : Quō cōnsiliō fūr pecūniam aufert ?

Quintus : Ut cibum emat, fūr pecūniam aufert.

Sextus :

Magister :

Quintus :

Sextus :

Marcus : Vigil appropinquat.

Magister : Quō cōnsiliō vigil appropinquat ?

Quintus : Ut fūrem fuget, vigil appropinquat.

Sextus : Ad fūrem fugandum vigil appropinquat.

Magister :

Quintus :

Sextus :



Marcus : Vigil fūrem fugat.

Magister : Quō cōsiliō vigil  
fūrem fugat ?

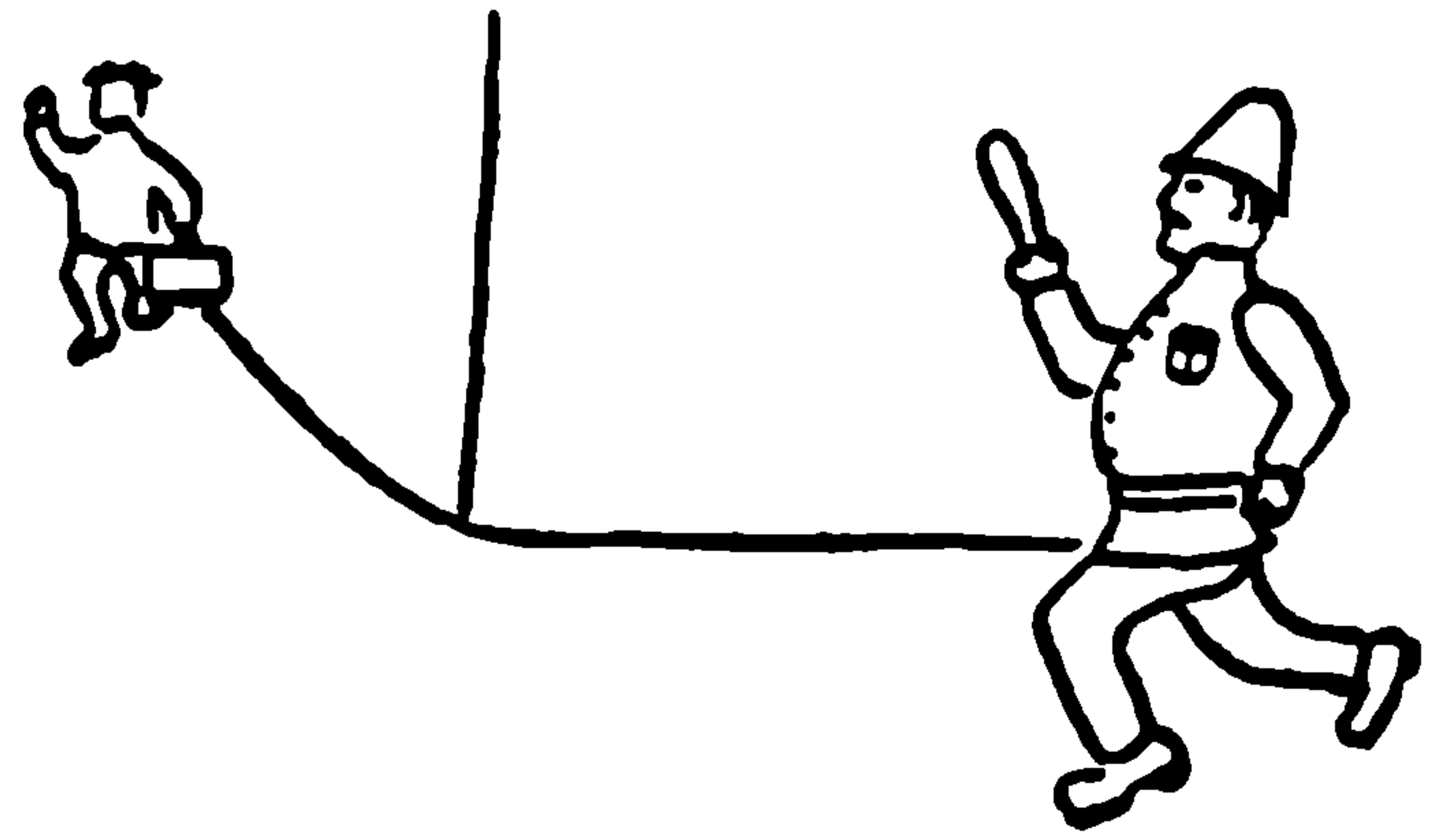
Quintus : Ut eum capiat, vigil  
fūrem fugat.

Sextus : Ad . . . . .  
vigil fūrem fugat.

Magister :

Quintus :

Sextus :



Marcus : Vigil fūrem capit.

Magister : Quō cōsiliō vigil fūrem capit ?

Quintus : Ut cīvēs dēfendat, vigil fūrem capit.

Sextus : Ad . . . . . vigil fūrem capit.

Magister :

Quintus :

Sextus :

Marcus : Fūr cistam omittit.

Magister : Quō cōsiliō fūr cistam omittit ?

Quintus : Ut currat, fūr cistam omittit.

Sextus : Currendī causā fūr cistam omittit.

Magister :

Quintus :

Sextus :

Marcus : Fūr baculum omittit.

Magister : Quō cōsiliō fūr baculum omittit ?

Quintus : Ut celeriter currat, fūr baculum omittit.

Sextus : Ad celeriter . . . . . fūr baculum omittit.

Magister :

Quintus :

Sextus :

Marcus : Vigil cōnsistit.  
 Magister : Quō cōnsiliō vigil cōnsistit ?  
 Quintus : Ut respīret, vigil cōnsistit.  
 Sextus : Ad . . . . . vigil cōnsistit.  
 Magister :  
 Quintus :  
 Sextus :

Marcus : Fūr celerrimē currit.  
 Magister : Quō cōnsiliō fūr celerrimē currit ?  
 Quintus : Ut effugiat, fūr celerrimē currit.  
 Sextus : Ad . . . . . fūr celerrimē currit.  
 Magister :  
 Quintus :  
 Sextus :

## Ars Grammatica—IV

### GERUNDIVUS MODUS

**pulsō-āre-āvi-ātus**

pulsandus-a-um

**tangō-ere-tetigi-tactus**

tangendus-a-um

**etineō-ēre-retinui-retentus**

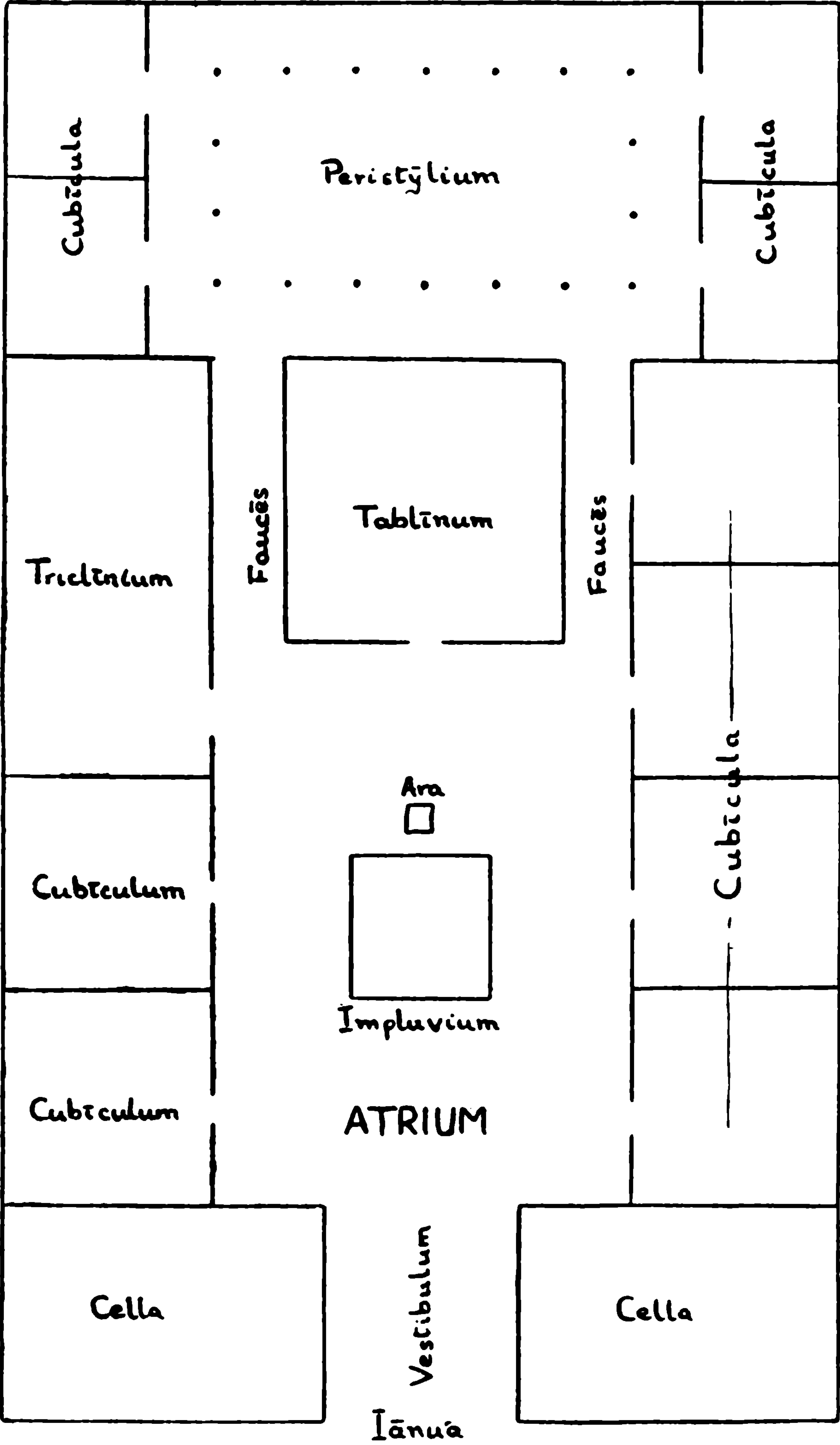
retinendus-a-um

**capiō-ere-cēpi-captus**

capiendus-a-um

**sepeliō-īre-sepelivi-sepultus**

sepeliendus-a-um



VILLA ROMANA



## 12. DE PSEUDOLO ET ENNIO

Pseudolus noster scilicet multōs amīcōs habēbat, quōrum ūnus erat Ennius. Hic Ennius poēta praeclārus erat ; nam multa et lepida carmina amīcī dēlectandī causā in tablinō suō scribēbat. Pseudolus igitur saepenumērō domum Enniī ibat ad carmina ēius audienda.

Olim igitur, ubi Ennius lepidissimum carmen scripsit, Pseudolus noster hūius carminis audiendī causā ad poētam ivit. Postquam ad villam ēius pervēnit, iānitōris surdī excitandī causā iānuam pulsāvit. Ubi iānitor iānuam aperuit, eum ut Ennium quaereret ōrāvit. Iānitor igitur ad Ennium quaerendum abivit. Mox tamen rediit et, “Nōn licet tibi,” inquit, “Ennium vidēre. Namque domī nōn est.” Dēinde, dormiendī causā, iānuam clausit. Pseudolus autem noster, quamquam nihil respondit, multa suspicābātur ; namque Ennium, ut opīnābātur, in peristyliō carmen clārā vōce recitantem audīverat. Nihil tamen dīxit sed silentiō domum abivit.

Paucis post diēbus poēta Ennius, quī novum carmen scripserat, ad Pseudolum nostrum recitandī causā accessit. Pseudolus autem, quī pauper erat, iānitōrem nōn habēbat. Itaque ubi Ennius iānuam pulsāvit, iānitōris excitandī causā, nēminem excitāvit. Neque enim Pseudolum ipsum excitāvit, quī ex atriō in cubiculum suum ad dormiendum īverat. Iānuam igitur iterum vehementius pulsāvit. Tum fragōre Pseudolus excitātus est, quī per fenestram magnā vōce, “Domī nōn sum,” exclāmāvit. “Abī in malam crucem !” Haec Enniī dīmittendī causā dīxit. Ennius autem nōn dimissus est, sed “O improbissime,” inquit, “es domī. Nam raucam tuam vōcem audiō. Cūius fallendī causā men-

titus es ? ” At Pseudolus, postquam haec audīvit, caput ē fenestrā extrūsit et vōce raucissimā, “ Homō,” inquit, “ impudentissimus es. Ego crēdidī iānitōrī tuō, quī, ut dīxit, tē domī invenīre nōn potuit, sed tū nōn crēdis mihi ipsī.”

Dēinde, dormiendī causā, caput retrāxit, et Ennius poēta domum ad maestissimum carmen scribendum abīvit.



## 13. DE POETA ET PHILOSOPHIS

### Gerundive of Necessity

#### Exercitatio

Poeta : Dēbeō puellam amāre.

Philosophus 1 : Cūr oportet tē puellam amāre ?

Philosophus 2 : Cūr necesse est tibi puellam amāre ?

Poeta : Quia puella mihi amanda est.

Philosophus 3 : Sed cūr puella tibi amanda est ?

Poeta : Quia dēbeō versiculōs scrībere.

Philosophus 1 : Cūr oportet tē versiculōs scrībere ?

Philosophus 2 : Cūr necesse est tibi versiculōs scrībere ?

Poeta : Quia versiculī mihi scrībendī sunt.

Philosophus 3 : Sed cūr versiculī tibi scrībendī sunt ?

Poeta : Quia dēbeō libellum compōnere.

Philosophus 1 : Cūr oportet tē libellum compōnere ?

Philosophus 2 : Cūr necesse est tibi libellum compōnere ?

Poeta : Quia libell . . . mihi compōnend . . . est.

Philosophus 3 : Sed cūr libell . . . tibi compōnend . . . est ?

Poeta : Quia dēbeō amicōs dēlectāre.

Philosophus 1 :

Philosophus 2 :

Poeta : Quia amic . . . dēlectand . . . sunt.





Philosophus 3 : Sed cūr amic . . . . . dēlectand . . . . . sunt?

Poēta : Quia dēbeō pecūniam capere.

Philosophus 1 :

Philosophus 2 :

Poēta :

Philosophus 3 : Sed cūr . . . . . ?

Poēta : Quia dēbeō cibum edere.

Philosophus 1 :

Philosophus 2 :

Poēta :

Philosophus 3 : Sed cūr . . . . . ?

Poēta : Quia dēbeō vīvere.

Philosophus 1 :

Philosophus 2 :

Poēta : Quia mihi vivendum est.

Philosophus 3 : Sed cūr . . . . . ?

Poēta : Quia dēbeō bibere.

Philosophus 1 :

Philosophus 2 :

Poēta :

Philosophus 3 : Sed cūr . . . . . ?

Poēta : Quia dēbeō timōrem expellere.

Philosophus 1 :

Philosophus 2 :

Poēta :

Philosophus 3 : Sed cūr . . . . . ?

Poēta : Quia puella mihi amanda est. Quod erat dēmōnstrandum.

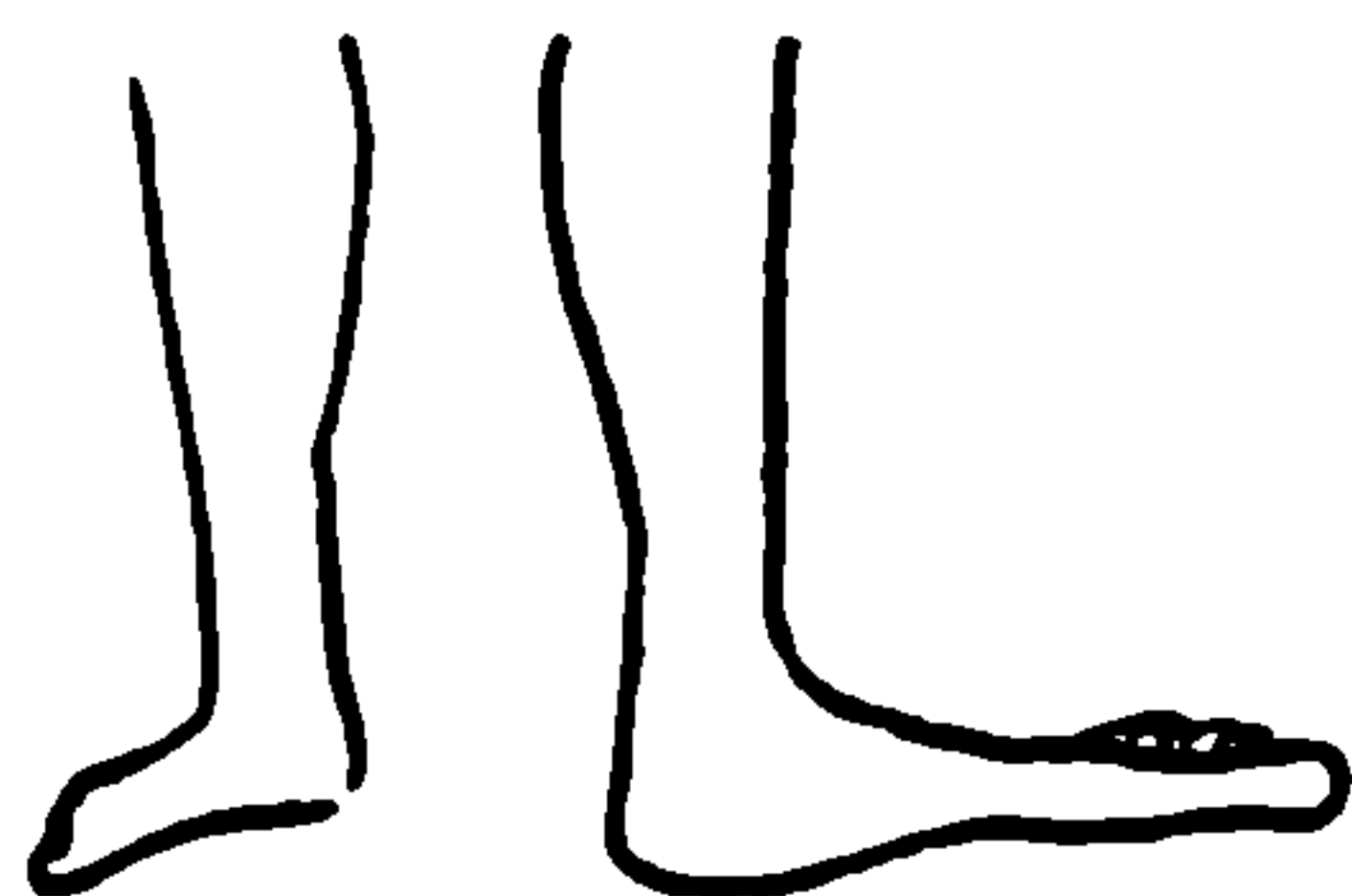


## 14. DE PSEUDOLO ET SUTORE

Olim Pseudolus noster calceōs āmiserat ; itaque necesse erat ei novōs calceōs adipisci. Ad tabernās igitur propinquās ei eundum erat ad novōs calceōs emendōs, sed,—ēheu !—pecūniam, quā eōs emeret, nōn habēbat. Cōnsilium igitur ei capiendum erat, quō novōs calceōs grātis adipiscerētur, et hoc tandem callidissimum cōnsilium cēpit.

Ad tabernam veteris cūiusdam sūtōris ivit, et postquam intrāvit sūtōremque invēnit, “ Salvē,” inquit, “ ō benevole sūtor. Valēsne ? Bīnī calceī mihi emendī sunt, sed—ēheu !—alter mihi pēs māior est. Itaque antequam calceōs ā tē emō, alter calceus in alterum pedem mihi indūcendus est ; namque omnēs calceī māiōrī pedī meō nōn aptī sunt. Licetne mihi igitur, ō cārissime sūtor, alterum calceum in alterum pedem indūcere ? ” “ Ita enim vērō,” respondit sūtor, et statim alterum calceum ei dedit, quem Pseudolus sine morā in alterum pedem indūxit.

Dēinde Pseudolus, “ O optime sūtor,” inquit, “quālēs calceōs suis! Hīc enim calceus certē māiōrī pedī meō aptus est. Sed nunc alter calceus in alterum pedem mihi indūcendus est; namque hīc mihi pēs minor est, et omnēs calceī minōrī pedī meō nōn aptī sunt. Licetne mihi, igitur, ō cārissime sūtor, alterum calceum in alterum pedem indūcere ? ” Tālia rogantī Pseudolō statim respondit sūtor, quī nihil malī suspicābātur, “ Ita enim vērō. Sī rē vērā tālibus pedibus nātus es, ambō calceī tibi indūcendī sunt. Namque nisi ambō hī calceī pedibus aptī sunt, aliī calceī novī mihi suendī erunt.”



Simulatque sūtor alterum calceum eī dedit, Pseudolus alterum calceum in alterum pedem indūxit, et ē tabernā quam celerrimē fūgit. Sed sūtor attonitus eum secūtus est exclāmāns, “ O cīvēs, comprehendite fūrem ! Dēbētis fūrem comprehendere ! Necesse est vōbis fūrem comprehendere ! Oportet vōs fūrem comprehendere ! Fūr vōbīs comprehendendus est.” Pseudolus autem dum currit, “ Nōn sum fūr,” exclāmāvit. “Nōlite mē comprehendere. Nōn comprehendendus sum. Currō spōnsiōnis vincendae causā. Bini calcei sunt pignus.” Cīvēs igitur eum nōn comprehendērunt sed abire sīvērunt. Itaque Pseudolus noster, qui binōs calceōs grātis adeptus erat, laetus domum abivit.



## 15. SCAEVOLA

### Revision

#### SCAENA PRIMA

*(Rōmae, a.d. quartum Idūs Māiās. Valerius Lūcrētiusque cōnsulēs et aliī senātōrēs in Cūriā sedent. Populus extrā Cūriam exclāmat.)*

Populus : Dā nōbīs cibum ! Dā nōbīs frūmentum !

Valerius : Tōtum iam annum, patrēs cōscriptī, Lars Porsenna cum Etrūscīs suīs urbem nostram obsidet. Novum igitur cōsiliū nōbīs capiendum est, quō eum vincāmus.

Lūcrētius : Rectē dicis, ō Valerī. Oportet nōs novum cōsiliū capere Porsennae vincendī causā. Sed quid est hoc novum cōsiliū ? Omnia iam frustrā explōrāvimus.

Populus : Dā nōbīs cibum ! Dā nōbīs frūmentum !

Herminius : (*senātor*) Audītisne, patrēs cōscriptī, populum exclāmantem ? Rogant nōs ut frūmentum eis dēmus.

Vitellius : (*alius senātor*) Sed quō modō frūmentum invenīre possumus ? Omne iam cōsumptum est, et omnēs agrī ab Etrūscīs vastātī sunt.

Populus : Dā nōbīs cibum ! Dā nōbīs frūmentum !

Valerius : Lictor, imperā cīvibus ut taceant nēve tantum sonitum faciant.

Lictor : (*ad iānuam Cūriae*) O cīvēs, cōsul vōbīs imperat nē tantum sonitum faciātis. Namque senātōrēs dēliberāre nōn possunt.



- Populus : Abī, fūrcifer ! Imperā cōsulī ut pācem cum Etrūscīs compōnat. Dā nōbīs cibum ! Dā nōbīs frūmentum !
- Vitellius : Nisi populō cibum dederis, Valerī, cīvēs nōn conciliābis. Male, ut mihi vidētur, Brūtus rēgēs expulit.
- Valerius : Dē mortuīs, Vitellī, nihil nisi bonum dicendum est.
- Vitellius : Rēgēs autem populum semper conciliābant. Namque omnia eis dabant.
- Populus : Dā nōbīs cibum ! Dā nōbīs frūmentum ! Cōsulēs ad Etrūscōs !
- Cīvis : Tacēte ! Ecce ! Gāius Mūcius venit, quī nōs servābit.
- Populus : Gāius Mūcius nōs servātūrus est. Gāium Mūcium ! Gāium Mūcium !
- Gāius Mūcius : (*iuvenis quīdam nōbilis*) Tacēte, ō cīvēs, nē senātōrēs dēliberantēs turbētis. Cōnsilium habeō, quō vōs servem.  
(*Gāius Mūcius Cūriam intrat.*)
- Valerius : Quid vīs, iuvenis ?
- Mūcius : Tiberim trānsīre, patrēs cōscriptī, et castra hostium intrāre volō.
- Herminius : Num frūmentum ex hostium castrīs ablātūrus es ?
- Mūcius : Nōn sum fūr. Melius cōnsilium cēpī. Namque Porsennam ipsum gladiō meō mediīs in castrīs interficiam. Tū, ō cōsul, imperā custōdibus nē mē exeuntem retineant.
- Lūcrētius : Et quid accidet sī tū ipse interfectus eris ?
- Mūcius : Multī aliī post mē proficīscuntur ad eadem facienda vel patienda.
- Populus : Gāius Mūcius nōs servābit. Mūcius nōs servātūrus est. Gāium Mūcium ! Gāium Mūcium !



## SCAENA SECUNDA

*(Trāns Tiberim. In castrīs Etrūscōrum, a.d. tertium Idūs Māiās. Militēs in ordinibus stant quō celerius stīpendia accipiant. Rex Porsenna ad āram sacrificat.)*

Porsenna : O Iuppiter optime maxime, grātiās tibi agimus quam maximās quod hostēs semper vincimus.

*(Aram relinquit et ad mēnsam sedet, in quā est multa pecūnia.)*

Nunc, scrība, sedē prope mē, ut militibus stīpendia rectē distribuāmus.

Scrība : *(Vestēs paene rēgālēs gerit.)* Omnia iam parāta sunt, ō rex, ut stīpendia militibus distribuāmus *(ē libellō recitāns)* Primō centuriōnī primae legiōnis vīginti assēs.

Porsenna : Primō centuriōnī primae legiōnis vīginti assēs.

*(Centuriō primus ad mēnsam accēdit ad stīpendium accipiendum.)*

Scrība : Secundō centuriōnī primae legiōnis quindecim assēs.

Porsenna : Secundō centuriōnī primae legiōnis quindecim assēs.

*(Centuriō secundus ad mēnsam accēdit stīpendiū accipiendū causā.)*

Scrība : Tertiō centuriōnī primae . . .

*(C. Mūcius subitō intrat et gladiō scrībam nōn rēgem interficit.)*

Mūcius : Sic pereunt omnēs, quī urbem Rōmam obsidēre audent.

Centuriō Primus : Hostis adest ! Scrībam iam interfēcit. Comprehendite eum, militēs, nē rēgem ipsum interficiat.



Mūcius : Viam mihi gladiō meō aperiam. Nēmō mihi obstāre poterit.

*(Effugere cōnātur, sed Etrūscī eum comprehendunt et ad rēgem retrahunt.)*

Porsenna : Quis es, iuvenis, quī tam audācter in castra nostra vēnistī ?

Mūcius : Rōmānus sum cīvis; Gāium Mūcium mē vocant. Hostem interficere voluī. Mortem meam nōn timeō sed tuam volō. Et facere et patī fortia Rōmānī solent.

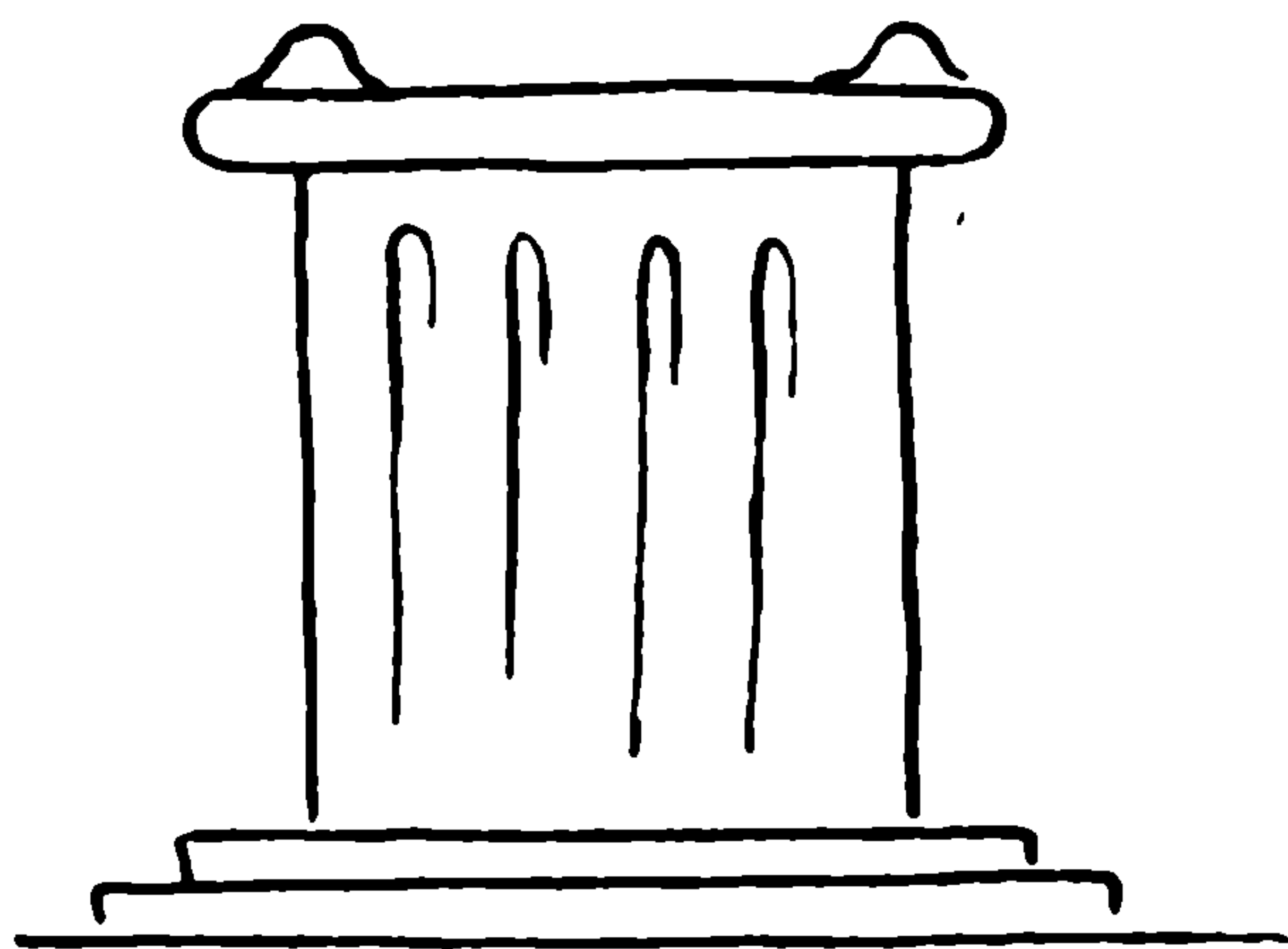
Porsenna : Id quod mox visūrī sumus. Nam mors certē crūdēlissima tibi patienda erit.

Mūcius : Licet tibi mē interficere, sī vis ; nam multi iuvenēs Rōmānī ad tē interficiendum ventūrī sunt.

Porsenna : Oportet nōs igitur exemplum in tē facere, ut aliis obstēmus. Ferte ignem, militēs, quō hunc Mūcium incendāmus.

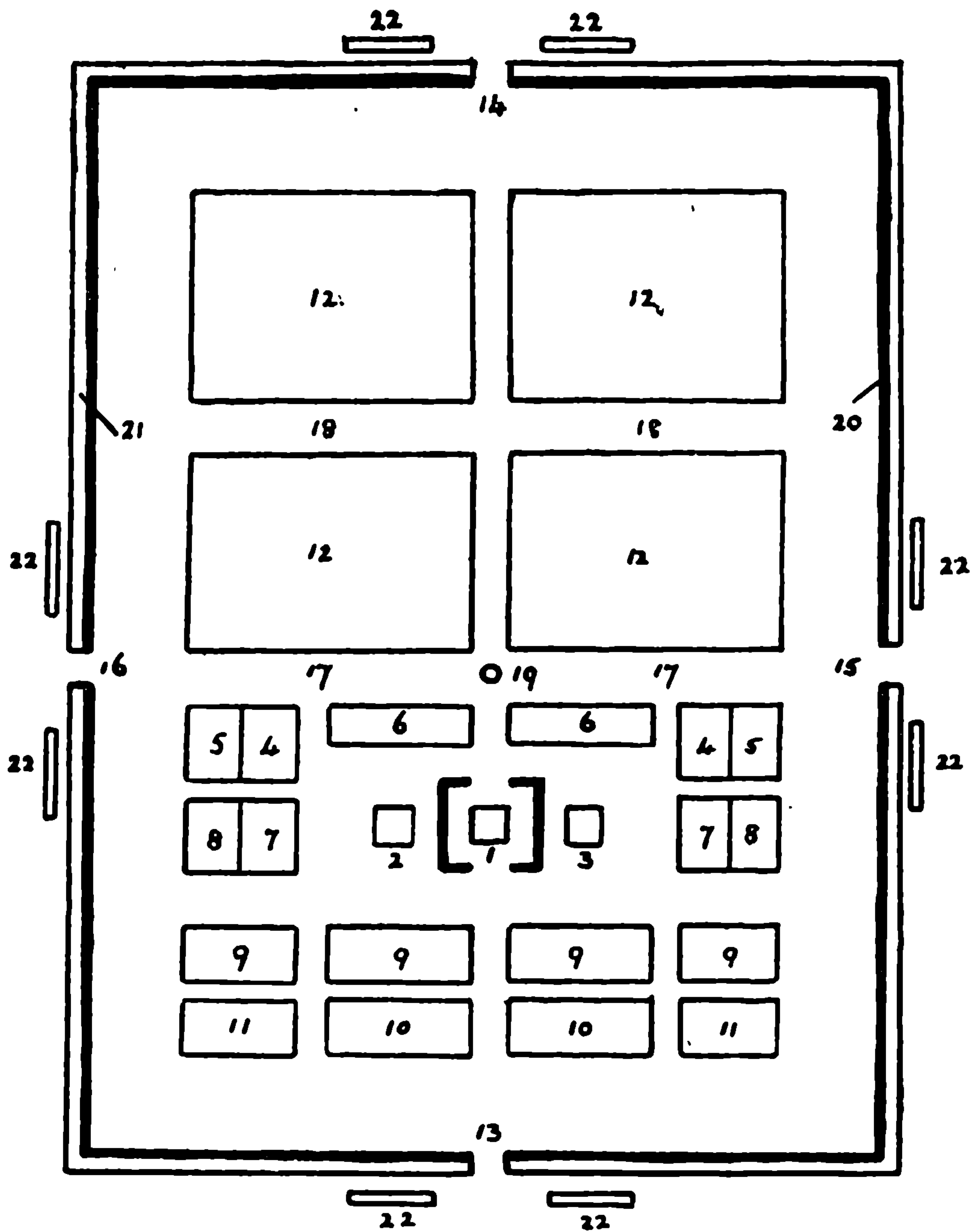
Mūcius : *(Manum dextram in igne, quī in ārā ardet, diū tenet.)*  
Ecce, Porsenna ! Corpus vile est eis qui patriam amant.

Porsenna : Abī, iuvenis audācissime. Tibi magis quam mihi nocēre ausus es. Sī multi aliī post tē ventūrī sunt, quī eadem facere audeant, numquam Rōmānōs



ARA

vincam. Rōmam igitur liber abī et pācem mihi cum Rōmānis compōne. Multi postea tibi cognōmen Scaevolam ā clāde dextrae dabunt. Quod cognōmen ego nunc honōris causā tibi dō.



### CASTRÀ ROMANA

- |                            |                                |
|----------------------------|--------------------------------|
| 1. Praetōrium              | 12. Militēs legiōnārii         |
| 2. Forum                   | 13. Porta praetōria            |
| 3. Quaestōrium             | 14. Porta decumāna             |
| 4. Lēgāti                  | 15. Porta principālis dextra   |
| 5. Praefecti sociōrum      | 16. Porta principālis sinistra |
| 6. Tribūni                 | 17. Via principālis            |
| 7. Equitēs dēlecti         | 18. Via quintāna               |
| 8. Peditēs dēlecti         | 19. Ara                        |
| 9. Equitēs extraordinārii  | 20. Vallum                     |
| 10. Peditēs extraordinārii | 21. Fossa                      |
| 11. Auxilia                | 22. Statiōnēs                  |

## Ars Grammatica—V

### PARTICIPIUM FUTURUM

**pulsō-āre-āvi-ātus**

pulsātūrus-a-um

**tangō-ere-tetigi-tactus**

tactūrus-a-um

**retineō-ēre-retinui-retentus**

retentūrus-a-um

**capiō-ere-cēpi-captus**

captūrus-a-um

**sepeliō-ire-sepelivī-sepultus**

sepultūrus-a-um

NOTA BENE :-—

**sum-esse-fui- ———**

futūrus-a-um

**eō-ire-ii- ———**

itūrus-a-um



## 16. FABULA LACRIMOSA

### Indirect Speech

#### Exercitātiō

*(Avus, quī surdus est, librum legere temptat : Marcus, quī loquax est, pēnsu scribere cōnātur.)*

Marcus : Hic libellus sordidus est.

Avus : Nōn possum audire. Quid dīcis ?

Marcus : Dīcō hunc libellum sordidum esse.

Avus : Etiam nunc nōn audiō. Quid dīxistī ?

Marcus : Dīxī hunc libellum sordidum esse.



Marcus : Ego ex oculīs labōrō.

Avus : Nōn possum audire. Quid dīcis ?

Marcus : Dīcō mē ex oculīs labōrāre.

Avus : Etiam nunc nōn audiō. Quid dīxistī ?

Marcus : Dīxī mē ex oculīs labōrāre.

Marcus : Hic stilus male scribit.

Avus : Nōn possum audire. Quid dīcis ?

Marcus : Dīcō h . . . stil . . . male scrib . . .

Avus : Etiam nunc nōn audiō. Quid dīxistī ?

Marcus : Dīxī h . . . stil . . . male scrib . . .

Marcus : Hoc pēnsu difficile est.

Avus :

Marcus : Dīcō . . . . .

Avus :

Marcus : Dīxī . . . . .

Marcus : Magistrum nōn amō.

Avus : Nōn possum audire. Quid dīcis ?

Marcus : Negō mē magistrum amāre.

Avus : Etiam nunc nōn audiō. Quid dīxistī ?

Marcus : Negāvī . . . . .

*(Marcus aliquamdiū tacet : avus aliquamdiū legit.)*

Marcus : Magister mihi pēsum difficillimum dedit.

Avus : Nōn possum audire. Quid dīcis ?

Marcus : Dīcō magistrum mihi pēsum difficillimum dedisse.

Avus : Etiam nunc nōn audiō. Quid dīxistī ?

Marcus : Dīxī magistrum mihi pēsum difficillimum dedisse.

Marcus : Ego nōn peccāvī.

Avus : Nōn possum audire. Quid dīcis ?

Marcus : Negō . . . peccāv . . .

Avus : Etiam nunc nōn audiō. Quid dīxistī ?

Marcus : Negāvī . . . . .

Marcus : Sērō ad lūdum nōn vēnī.

Avus :

Marcus : Negō . . . . .

Avus :

Marcus : Negāvī . . . . .

Marcus : Fortasse magistrum fefellī.

Avus :

Marcus :

Avus :

Marcus :

Marcus : Hominem magistrō crūdēliōrem nōn vidī.

Avus :

Marcus :

Avus :

Marcus :

*(Marcus aliquamdiū tacet : avus aliquamdiū legit.)*

Marcus : Pater mihi auxilium nōn dabit.

Avus : Nōn possum audire. Quid dīcis ?

Marcus : Negō patrem mihi auxilium datūrum esse.

Avus : Etiam nunc nōn audiō. Quid dīxistī ?

Marcus : Negāvī patr . . . mihi auxilium datūr . . . esse.

Marcus : Hoc pēnsū nōn faciam.

Avus : Nōn possum audire. Quid dīcis ?

Marcus : Negō . . . hoc pēnsū factūr . . . . .

Avus : Etiam nunc nōn audiō. Quid dīxistī ?

Marcus :

Marcus : Magister mē vīrgīs caedet.

Avus :

Marcus :

Avus :

Marcus :

Marcus : Sine dubiō lacrimābō.

Avus :

Marcus :

Avus :

Marcus :

Marcus : Ad cubiculum ibō.

Avus : (*subitō*) Dīcisne . . . ad cubiculum . . . . . ?

Marcus : Ita vērō. Dīxī . . . ad cubiculum . . . . .

Avus : Dīs grātiās agō.



Ars Grammatica—VI

INFINITIVUS MODUS

	TEMPUS PRAESENS		TEMPUS PERFECTUM	
	Vox ACTIVA	Vox PASSIVA	Vox ACTIVA	Vox PASSIVA
pulsō	pulsāre	pulsārī	pulsāvisse	pulsātus esse
retineō	retinēre	retinērī	retinuisse	retentus esse
tangō	tangere	tangī	tetigisse	tactus esse
capiō	capere	capī	cēpisse	captus esse
sepeliō	sepelire	sepelīrī	sepelivisse	sepultus esse

NOTA BENE :—

sum	esse	—	fuisse	—
possum	posse	—	potuisse	—
eō	īre	—	īvisse (iisse)	—
faciō	facere	fieri	fēcisse	factus esse
ferō	ferre	ferri	tulisse	lātus esse
volō	velle	—	voluisse	—
mālō	mālle	—	māluisse	—
nōlō	nōlle	—	nōluisse	—

TEMPUS FUTURUM

	Vox ACTIVA	Vox PASSIVA
pulsō	pulsātūrus esse	pulsātum iri
retineō	retentūrus esse	retentum iri
tangō	tactūrus esse	tactum iri
capiō	captūrus esse	captum iri
sepeliō	sepultūrus esse	sepultum iri

NOTA BENE :—

<b>sum</b>	futūrus esse ( <i>or</i> fore)	
<b>possum</b>	( <i>use</i> posse)	
<b>eō</b>	itūrus esse	
<b>faciō</b>	factūrus esse	factum iri
<b>ferō</b>	lātūrus esse	lātum iri
<b>volō</b>	( <i>use</i> velle)	
<b>mālō</b>	( <i>use</i> malle)	
<b>nōlō</b>	( <i>use</i> nolle)	

## 17. DE PSEUDOLO ET VIGILIBUS

Olim Pseudolus noster magnum auri pondus abstulerat, et quia putāvit vigilēs sē aurum auferentem vīdisse, quam celerrimē fūgit. Et rectē putāvit ; namque rē vērā trēs vigilēs eum nōn solum aurum auferentem vidērunt, sed etiam fugientem secūtī sunt. Hī trēs vigilēs celeriter currēbant et, dum currunt, saepe dicēbant sē mox Pseudolum compre, hēnsūrōs esse, sed—mirābile dictū !—quamquam oculī-auribusque et nāsis ūsī sunt, eum nusquam invenire potuērunt.

Tandem ad dēversorium pervēnērunt, et primus vigil. “ Putātisne,” inquit, “amīcī, Pseudolum in hoc dēversorium intrāvisse?” Cui secundus vigil, “ Putō,” respondit. “ Nōne vidētis id quod in titulō scriptum est ? ” In titulō haec verba scripta sunt :—



Pseudolus noster scilicet Patavii nātus erat. Secundus igitur vigil, “ Sciō,” inquit, “ Pseudolum Patavinum esse. Itaque crēdō eum hūc intrāvisse. Nam fūrēs semper vinum grātis bibere volunt. Oportet nōs dēversorium intrāre.”

Primus autem vigil, “ Nōn oportet,” inquit, “ nōs intrāre. Pseudolus, ut opīnor, putāvit nōs crēditūrōs esse eum intrāvisse. Itaque nōn intrāvit.” Tertius autem vigil, “ Meā quidem sententiā,” inquit, “ amīcī, nōbīs quam celerrimē hūc intrandum est. Hic Pseudolus fūr callidissimus est, quī



callidissima cōnsilia in animō habet. Putāvit igitur nōs crēditūrōs esse eum nōn intrāvisse. Itaque intrāvit.”

“ Bene dīxistī,” respondit prīmus vigil. “ Semper crēdidi tē sapientissimum esse.” Trēs igitur vigilēs dēversōrium intrāvērunt. Omnia cubīcula omnēsque latebrās explōrāvērunt, sed Pseudolum nusquam invēnērunt. Namque Pseudolus noster non intrāverat sed praeter dēversōrium cucurrerat, quippe quī titulum legere nōn posset. Laetus igitur abīverat.

## 18. QUAESTIONES

### Indirect Questions

#### Exercitātiō

*(Avus, quī surdus est, librum legere temptat : Marcus, quī importūnus est, pēnsu scribere nōn cōnātur.)*

Marcus : Mī ave, cūr librum legis ?

Avus : Nōn possum audire. Quid rogās ?

Marcus : Rogō cūr librum legās.

Avus : Etiam nunc nōn audiō. Quid rogāvisti ?

Marcus : Rogāvī cūr librum legerēs.

Avus : Quia legere volō, librum legō.

Marcus : Sed, mī ave, cūr librum legere vis ?

Avus : Nōn possum audire. Quid rogās ?

Marcus : Rogō cūr librum legere velīs.

Avus : Etiam nunc nōn audiō. Quid rogāvisti ?

Marcus : Rogāvī cūr librum legere vellēs.

Avus : Quia legere mihi placet, librum legere volō.

Marcus : Sed, mī ave, cūr legere tibi placet ?

Avus :

Marcus : Rogō cūr legere tibi plac . . .

Avus :

Marcus : Rogāvī cūr legere tibi plac . . .

Avus : Quia liber carmina lepida continet, legere mihi placet.

Marcus : Sed, mī ave, quid est carmen lepidum?

Avus :

Marcus : Rogō . . . . .

Avus :

Marcus : Rogāvī . . . . .

Avus : Tacē et scribe pēnsu tuu.

Marcus : (*sibi dīcit*) Avus, ut mihi vidētur, nescit quid . . .  
carmen lepidu.

*(Marcus aliquamdiū tacet : avus aliquamdiū libru legit.)*

Marcus : Mī ave, unde libru illu ēmistī ?

Avus : Nōn possum audire. Quid rogās ?

Marcus : Rogō unde libru illu ēmeris.

Avus : Etiam nunc nōn audiō. Quid rogāvistī ?

Marcus : Rogāvī unde libru illu ēmissēs.

Avus : Ab eō ēmī, quī libru mihi vendidit.

Marcus : Sed, mī ave, quis libru tibi vendidit ?

Avus :

Marcus : Rogō . . . . .

Avus :

Marcus : Rogāvī . . . . .

Avus : Is, quī libru scripsit, libru mihi vendidit.

Marcus : Sed, mī ave, quis libru scripsit ?

Avus :

Marcus :

Avus :

Marcus :

Avus : Publius Ovidius Nāsō libru scripsit.



Marcus : Sed, mī ave, quālem nāsum  
habēbat hīc Publius Ovidius  
Nāsō ?

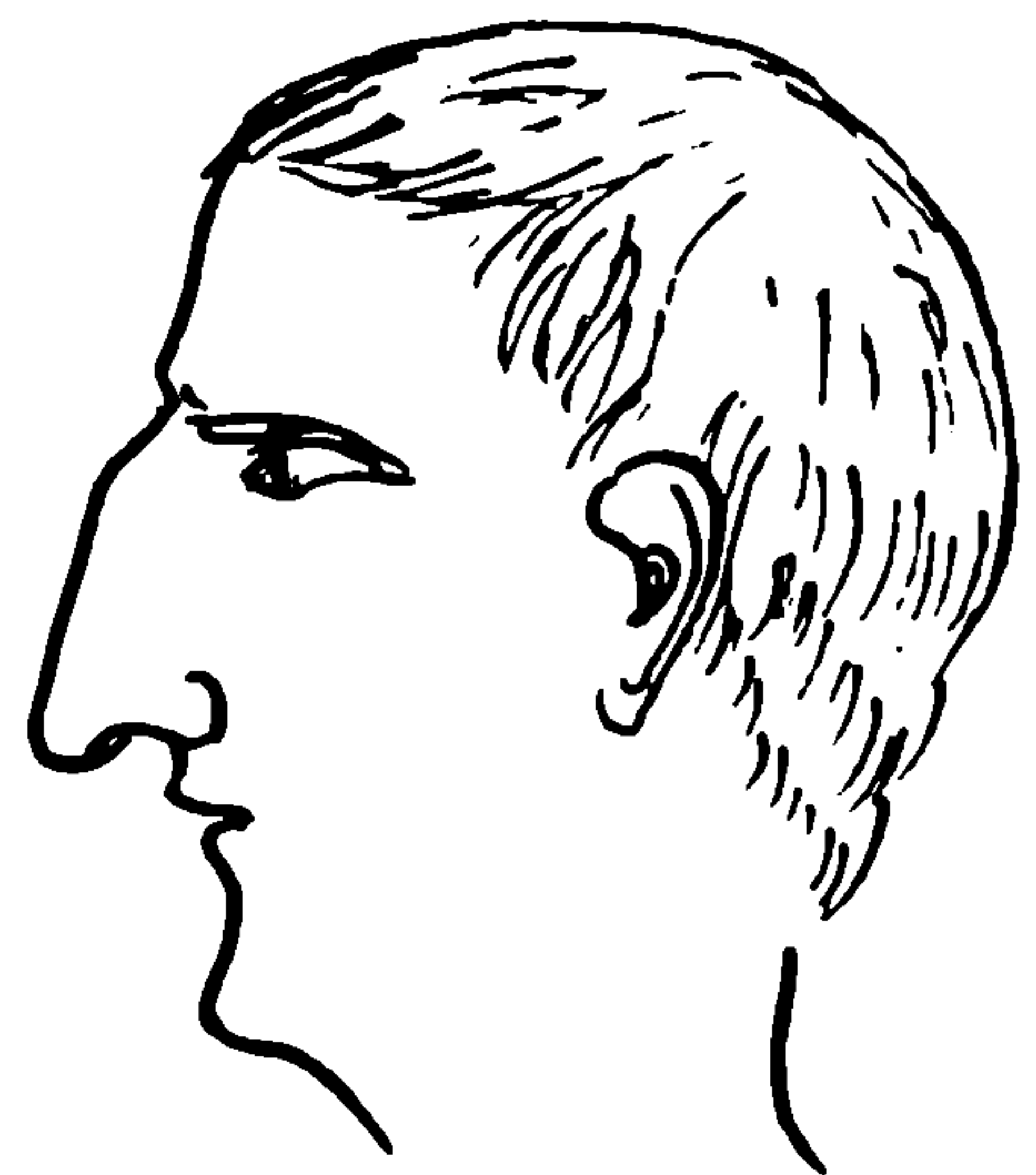
Avus :

Marcus :

Avus :

Marcus :

Avus : Tacē, abōminande, et scribe  
pēsum tuum.



P. OVIDIUS NASO

Marcus : (*sibi dīcit.*) Avus, ut mihi vidētur, nescit  
quālem . . . . .

(*Marcus aliquamdiū tacet : avus aliquamdiū librum legit.*)

Marcus : Mī ave, quandō alium librum legēs ?

Avus : Nōn possum audire. Quid rogās ?

Marcus : Rogō quandō alium librum lectūrus sis.

Avus : Etiam nunc nōn audiō. Quid rogāvistī ?

Marcus : Rogāvī quandō alium librum lectūrus essēs.

Avus : Ubi hunc librum perlēgerō, alium librum legam.

Marcus : Sed, mī ave, quandō librum illum perlegēs ?

Avus :

Marcus :

Avus :

Marcus :

Avus : Ubi tū tacueris, hunc librum perlegam.

(*Marcus aliquamdiū tacet : avus aliquamdiū librum legit.*)

Marcus : Mī ave, vīvitne adhūc Publius Ovidius Nāsō ?

Avus : Nōn possum audire. Quid rogās ?

Marcus : Rogō num adhūc vīvat Publius Ovidius Nāsō.

Avus : Etiam nunc nōn audiō. Quid rogāvistī ?

Marcus : Rogāvī num adhūc vīv . . . Publius Ovidius Nāsō.

Avus : Nōn vīvit adhūc Publius Ovidius Nāsō.

Marcus : Estne mortuus Publius Ovidius Nāsō ?

Avus :

Marcus :

Avus :

Marcus :

Avus : Tacē, fūrcifer, et scribe pēnsu tuu.

Marcus : (*sibi dīcit*) Avus, ut mihi vidētur, nescit utrum  
Publius Ovidius Nāsō mortuus . . . necne.

## Ars Grammatica—VII

### SUBIUNCTIVUS MODUS

#### TEMPUS PERFECTUM

##### VOX ACTIVA

##### **pulsō-āre-āvi-ātus-ātūrus**

pulsāverim

pulsāveris

pulsāverit

pulsāverimus

pulsāveritis

pulsāverint

##### VOX PASSIVA

pulsātus sim

pulsātus sis

pulsātus sit

pulsātī simus

pulsātī sītis

pulsātī sint

Eōdem modō :—

##### **retineō-ēre-retinui-retentus-retentūrus**

retinuerim

retentus sim

##### **tangō-ere-tetigi-tactus-tactūrus**

tetigerim

tactus sim

##### **capiō-ere-cēpi-captus-captūrus**

cēperim

captus sim

##### **sepeliō-ire-sepelivī-sepultus-sepultūrus**

sepeliverim

sepultus sim

## TEMPUS PLUSQUAMPERFECTUM

## VOX ACTIVA

## VOX PASSIVA

**pulsō-āre-āvi-ātus-ātūrus**

pulsāvissem  
 pulsāvissēs  
 pulsāvisset  
 pulsāvissēmus  
 pulsāvissētis  
 pulsāvissent

pulsātus essem  
 pulsātus essēs  
 pulsātus esset  
 pulsāti essēmus  
 pulsāti essētis  
 pulsāti essent

Eōdem modō :—

**retineō-ēre-retinui-retentus-retentūrus**

retinuissem

retentus essem

**tangō-ere-tetigi-tactus-tactūrus**

tetigissem

tactus essem

**capiō-ere-cēpi-captus-captūrus**

cēpissem

captus essem

**sepeliō-ire-sepelivi-sepultus-sepultūrus**

sepelivissem

sepultus essem



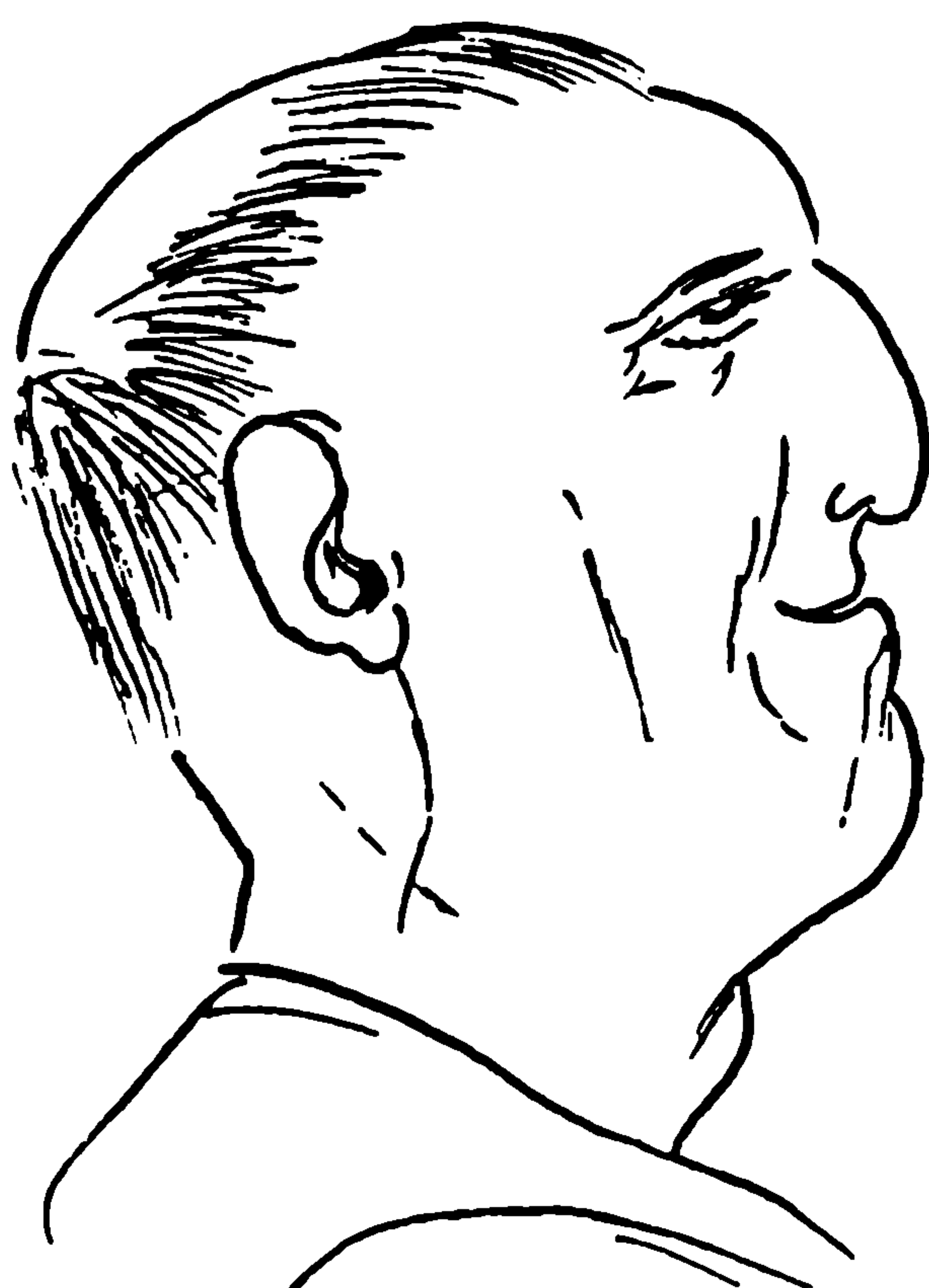
## 19. DE PSEUDOLO ET VIATORE

Olim Pseudolus noster, dum iter facit, viātōrī cuiādam obviam ivit. Hic viātor grave onus umeris portābat. Pseudolus igitur eum rogāvit quid portāret, et ille sē magnum ferri pondus portāre respondit. Statim igitur eum rogāvit quis esset, et ille sē Artotrōgum esse respondit. Itaque Pseudolus eum tertium rogāvit cūr tāli nōmine nōminātus esset, et ille, “Quia parentēs,” respondit, “tāli nōmine mē nōmināvērunt.”

Dēinde Pseudolus Artotrōgum rogāvit cūr parentēs eum tāli nōmine nōmināvissent, sed ille, “Hoc tibi, importūne, explicāre nōn possum. Nam quī fuerint parentēs mei omninō nesciō. Nunc autem tū, quī multa mē rogāvistī, dīc mihi num liceat mihi quoque aliquid tē rogāre.” Cui Pseudolus, “Quidnī?” respondit. “Licet tibi rogāre quicquid vīs.”

Artotrōgus igitur eum rogāvit quandō Rōmam ventūrus esset. Sed Pseudolus ei nihil respondit nisi ‘Mēcum ambulā.’ Artotrōgus igitur cum Pseudolō diū ambulābat, sed postquam octō iam milia passuum ambulāvērunt, Artotrōgus, quippe quī irātus esset, Pseudolum iterum rogāvit quandō Rōmam ventūrus esset. Pseudolus autem sēcūrus iterum nihil respondit nisi ‘Mēcum ambulā.’

Artotrōgus igitur cum eō ambulāre perrēxit, sed post duās hōrās, quippe quī putāret Pseudolum insānum esse, eum quot milia passuum iam prōgressi essent rogāvit. Cui Pseudolus,



ARTOTROGUS

“ Sēdecim mīlia passuum, ut putō,” respondit. “ Dīc mihi igitur,” inquit Artotrōgus, “ sine morā quandō Rōmam ventūrus sim ; namque diūtius tēcum nōn ambulābō.” Simulatque haec dīxit, se eum baculō pulsātūrum esse minātus est. Pseudolus autem, “ Nōlī irāscī,” inquit, “ amīce, sed cōnsiste. Nunc enim tibi dicere possum quandō Rōmam ventūrus sis. Post quinque hōrās veniēs.”

Artotrōgus tamen attonitus eum rogāvit cūr antea hoc nōn dīxisset. Cui Pseudolus, “ Voluī,” respondit, “ invenire quam celeriter ambulārēs. Sed primum, amīce, ut Rōmam post quinque hōrās veniās, necesse est tibi tē vertere ; namque nunc nōn Rōmam sed Patavium ambulāmus.” Artotrōgus igitur maestus Rōmam rēpere coepit, sed Pseudolus laetus abivit.



20. ALIA FABULA LACRIMOSA

Indirect Speech (Main and Subordinate Clauses)

Exercitātiō

*(Avus, quī surdus est, librum legere temptat: Marcus, quī loquax est, pēnsu scribere cōnātur.)*

Marcus : Rogō cūr hīc liber sordidus sit.  
Avus : Nōn possum audire. Quid dīcis ?  
Marcus : Dīcō mē rogāre cūr hīc liber sordidus sit.  
Avus : Etiam nunc nōn audiō. Quid dīxistī ?  
Marcus : Dīxī mē rogāre cūr hīc liber sordidus esset.

Marcus : Nesciō cūr ex oculis labōrem.  
Avus : Nōn possum audire. Quid dīcis ?  
Marcus : Negō mē scire cūr ex oculis labōrem.  
Avus : Etiam nunc nōn audiō. Quid dīxistī ?  
Marcus : Negāvī . . . . . cūr ex oculis labōr . . .

Marcus : Rogō cūr hīc stilus male scribat.  
Avus :  
Marcus : Dīcō . . . . .  
Avus :  
Marcus : Dīxī . . . . .

Marcus : Nesciō cūr hoc pēnsu difficillimum sit.  
Avus :  
Marcus : Negō . . . . .  
Avus :  
Marcus : Negāvī . . . . .

*(Marcus aliquamdiū tacet : avus aliquamdiū legit.)*



Marcus : Magister pēsum mihi dat, quī nōn peccō.

Avus :

Marcus : Dicō magistrum pēsum mihi dare, quī nōn peccem.

Avus :

Marcus : Dixī magistrum pēsum mihi dare, quī nōn peccārem.

Marcus : Magister pēsum mihi dat, quī nōn peccāvī.

Avus :

Marcus : Dicō magistrum pēsum mihi dare, quī nōn peccāverim.

Avus :

Marcus : Dixī magistrum pēsum mihi dare, quī non peccāv . . .

Marcus : Magistrum nōn amō, quī pēsum mihi dat.

Avus :

Marcus :

Avus :

Marcus :

Marcus : Fortasse magister pēsum mihi dedit, quia eum fefellī.

Avus :

Marcus :

Avus :

Marcus :

Marcus : Hominem crūdēliōrem, quam hic magister est, nōn vidēbō.

Avus :

Marcus :

Avus :

Marcus :

Marcus : Pater, quī cēnam edet, mihi auxilium nōn dabit.

Avus :

Marcus :

Avus :

Marcus :

Marcus : Hoc pēnsū, quod difficillimum est, nōn faciam.

Avus :

Marcus :

Avus :

Marcus :

Marcus : Hoc pēnsū, quod nōn faciam, difficillimum erat.

Avus :

Marcus :

Avus :

Marcus :

## 21. DE PSEUDOLO ET AEGROTIS

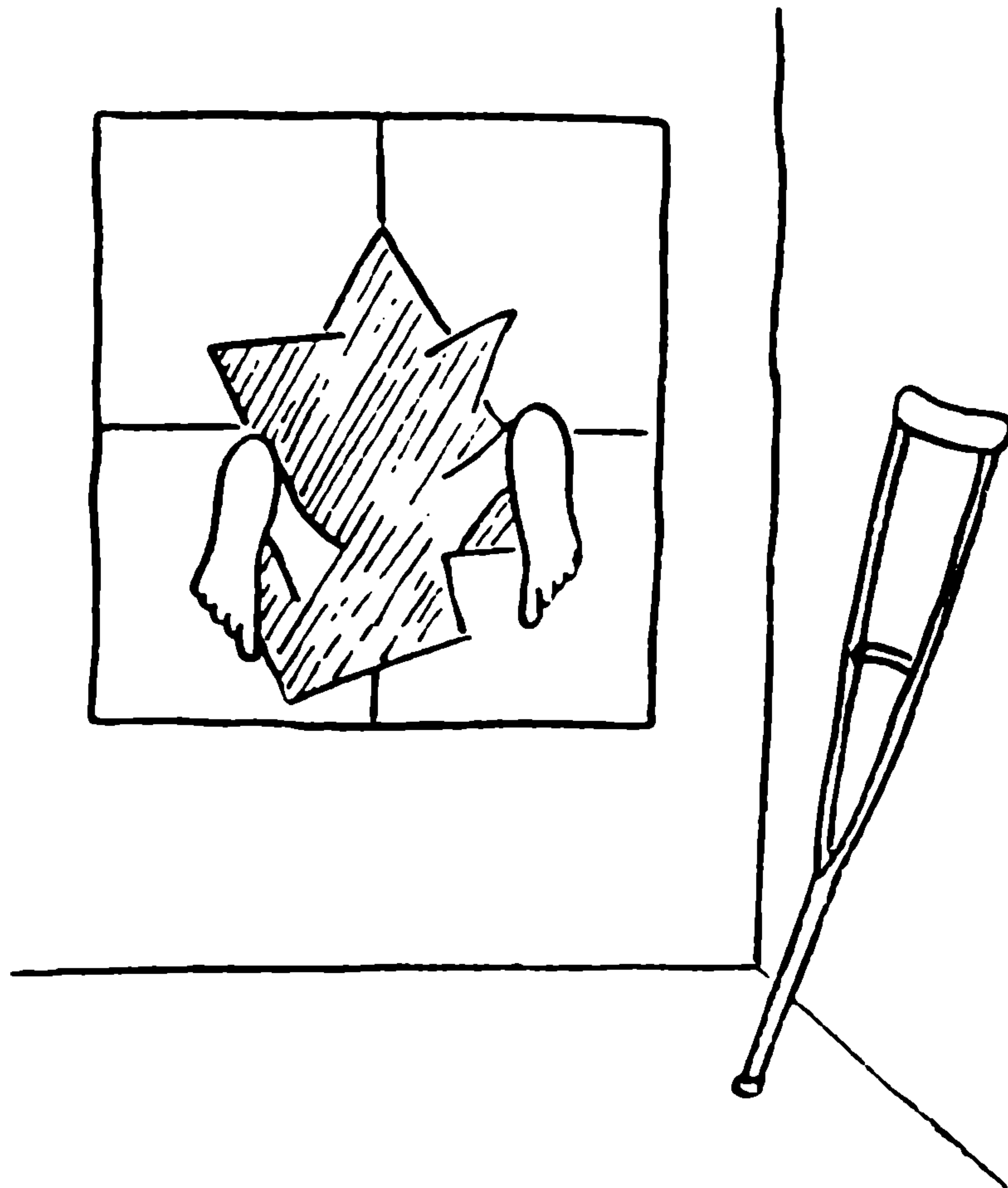
Olim Pseudolus noster, quippe quī pecūniam adipīscī vellet, simulāvit sē medicum sapientissimum esse, quī omnēs morbōs sārāre posset. Itaque summus medicus valētudinārii, in quo erant multī insānābilēs, Pseudolum ōrāvit ut eōs sārāret; quod Pseudolus prōmisit sē factūrum esse, sī multam pecūniam accēpisset. Summus igitur medicus prōmisit sē multam pecūniam ei datūrum esse, ubi aegrōtōs sārāvisset.

Itaque Pseudolus omnibus aegrōtis singulis sēcrētō hōc modō locūtus est. “Nōlī timēre, ō amīce; namque adfirmō tibi mē medicum sapientissimum esse, quī vōs omnēs sārāre possim. Prō certō enim habeō mē optimam medicīnam invēnisse, quae omnēs morbōs sānet, sed, ut hanc medicīnam compōnam, ūnus ē vōbis mihi interficiendus est. Nōlī tamen timēre, iterum precor, ō amīce; namque tē nōn interficiam. Unum modo alium interficiam, quem combūram. Dēinde cinerēs eius colligam, quōs ubi biberis, sine dubiō sārāberis. Dicō igitur mē eum interfectūrum esse, quī maximē aegrōtet. Quō melius invenīrem quis vestrum maximē aegrōtāret, hoc cōsiliū cēpi. Omnēs, quī sārī sunt, per iānuam currere iubēbō, et is quī ultimus currit, sine dubiō maximē aegrōtat. Ultimum igitur interficiam. Itaque tū, ubi mē iubentem audiveris, curre quam celerrimē, et cavē nē ultimus currās.”

Haec Pseudolus omnēs singulōs sēcrētō monuit. Dēinde summum medicum arcessivit, cui dixit sē omnēs insānābilēs, ut prōmisisset, sārāvisse. Medicus autem, quippe quī ipse aegrōtōs sārāre nōn posset, respondit sē ei nōn crēdere, quia nēmō hoc antea fēcisset neque umquam factūrus esset. Pseudolus igitur magnā vōce, “Omnēs,” exclāmāvit, “quī sārī estis, currite per iānuam.” Postquam haec audivērunt, omnēs, quamquam vehementer aegrōtābant, nōn solum per



iānuam sed etiam per fenestrās quam celerrimē concurrērunt. Dēinde Pseudolus, “ Ecce!” inquit, “ omnēs sānāvi.” Itaque summus medicus eī pecūniam dare coactus est. Laetus igitur Pseudolus abīvit.



## 22. CORIOLANUS

### SCAENA PRIMA

*(Rōmae, in Cūriā. Prīdiē Nōnās Novembrēs. Adsunt Cassius, Cominius, Menēnius, aliī sēnātōrēs.)*

Cominius : O patrēs cōscriptī, novī cōsulēs nōbīs creandī sunt. Nōmināte igitur duōs virōs, quōs optimōs fore putātis.

Cassius : Meā quidem sententiā, Cominius ipse optimus erit.

Menēnius : Ego quoque putō Cominium optimum cōsulem futūrum esse.

Senātōrēs : Fīat cōsul Cominius.

Cominius : Grātiās vōbīs agō, ō patrēs cōscriptī, quod mē iterum cōsulem creātis. Sed quis mēcum cōsul erit? Nēmō, ut mihi vidētur, melior erit quam Coriolānus.

Cassius : Dīc nōbīs, ō Cominī, cūr tibi placeat Coriolānus.

Cominius : Nōnne meministis cūr nōs Rōmānī eī nōmen Coriolānum indiderimus? Nōnne suā manū Volscōs vīcit Coriolōsque cēpit? Dīcunt enim Coriolānum forte castra dēfendisse, ubi hostēs ex urbe ērūperint. Eum cum paucīs militibus impetum hostium reppulisse, ipsum in hostēs impetum fēcisse, in urbem inrūpisse, omnia incendisse.

Cassius : Bene dixistī, Cominī. Placet mihi Coriolānus.

Menēnius : Mihi quoque placet. Gravis est et opus est nōbīs gravi duce, quī rem publicam servet. Nam plebs in patriciōs saevit.

*(Intrat Coriolānus.)*

Senātōrēs : Fiat cōsul Coriolānus quoque.

Coriolānus : Grātiās vōbīs agō, ō patrēs cōscriptī, quod mē cōsulem creātis. Prōmittō mē rem publicam servātūrum esse.

Menēnius : Primum autem ad Forum nōbīs eundum est, ut plēbem rogēmus num eī quoque placeant hī novī cōsulēs.

*(In Forum exeunt omnēs.)*

## SCAENA SECUNDA

*(In Forō. Adest plebs. Sicinius, tribūnus plēbis, apud plēbem orātiōnem habet.)*

Sicinius : Audite, Quiritēs.

Plebs : Audimus.

Sicinius : Māvultisne gladiō quam famē morī ?

Plebs : Gladiō ! Gladiō !

Sicinius : Stringite igitur gladiōs.

Plebs : Gladiōs stringimus.

Sicinius : Quis maximus nōbīs hostis est ?

Plebs : Coriolānus ! Coriolānus !

Sicinius : Quis igitur primus nōbīs interficiendus est ?

Plebs : Coriolānus ! Coriolānus !

Cīvis : Num, Sicinī, nōbīs imperās ut Coriolānum interficiāmus ? Nōnne scīs eum patriam servāvisse ?

Sicinius : Nōnne scītis eum superbissimum crūdēlissimumque esse ?

Plebs : Scīmus.

Sicinius : Nunc autem tacendum est. Namque eum cum Menēniō appropinquantem videō.

Menēnius : *(Cum Coriolānō intrat.)* Salvēte, Quiritēs. Quis est hīc tantus clāmor ? Cūr tantum clāmātis ? Nesciō cūr gladiōs manibus teneātis.



Sicinius : Senātōrēs autem bene sciunt cūr clāmēmus. Et mox nōn solum clāmābimus sed etiam gladiis ūtēmur. Nisi cibum nōbīs dederitis, ad Montem Sacrum sēcēdēmus.

Plebs : Sēcēdāmus ! Sēcēdāmus !

Menēnius : Patriciī sunt venter, ut ita dīcam, hūius reīpublicae, et vōs, Quiritēs, alia membra estis. Nisi alia membra ventrem cibum accipere sinunt, ea ipsa aegrōtāre incipiunt. Vōs patriciīs servīre dēbētis, ut patriciī vōs servent.

Cīvis : Bene dīxistī, Menēnī. Nōn sēcēssūrī sumus.

Plebs : Nē sēcēdāmus ! Nē sēcēdāmus !

Sicinius : Sed dīc nōbīs cūr adsit Coriolānus.

Menēnius : Senātōrēs eum cōnsulem mēcum creāre volunt. Placetne plēbī quoque ?

Sicinius : Nōn placet plēbī, quippe quī maximus nōbīs hostis sit.

Plebs : Nōn placet nōbīs Coriolānus. Interficate eum. Expellite eum.

Menēnius : Cavē, Coriolāne. Ego tē dēfendam.

*(Omnēs in Coriolānum impetum faciunt, quī fortiter sē dēfendēns ex urbe exit.)*

Coriolānus : Sic patriam nunc relinqūō sed mox regrediar.

### SCAENA TERTIA

*(Prope Rōmam in castrīs Volscōrum. Coriolānus cum Aufidiō, Volscōrum duce, cēnam edit.)*

Aufidius : Tibi propinō, Coriolāne, quod nōbīs auxilium dās. Etiam nunc nesciō cūr Rōmānōs reliqueris.

Coriolānus : Scis mē eōs quam maximē ōdisse, quod mē ex urbe expulerint. Nōn dubium est quīn eōs ulcīscar. Tē igitur, amice, adiuvābō, ut urbem expugnēs incendāsque.

Aufidius : Sciō tē mē adiūtūrum esse. Sed quis est hic clāmor ?

*(Militēs mulierēsque clāmantēs audiuntur.)*

Coriolānus : Mātrisne vōcem audiō ? Spērō mē ei resistere posse.

*(Veturia, māter Coriolānī, et Volumnia, uxor, cum filiīs intrant.)*

Aufidius : Ecce, Coriolāne, māter tibi uxorque et filii adsunt.

Coriolānus : Salvē, māter. Quam laetus tē videō ! Licetne mihi tē ōsculāre ?

Veturia : Nōlī mē ōsculāre. Scire volō utrum ad hostem vēnerim an ad filium. Sumne māter an captiva in castris tuis ? Nōne meministī Rōmae domum ac penātēs tibi esse, mātrem, uxōrem, filiōs ?

*(Mulierēs puerique lacrimantēs Coriolānum ōsculāre cōnantur.)*

Coriolānus : Abīte, mulierēs. Namque lacrimās vix retinere possum. Abīte ! Sī vultis, castra ab urbe movēbō.

*(Exeunt mulierēs puerique.)*

Aufidius : Quid dixistī ? Dixistine tē castra ab urbe mōtūrum esse ?

Coriolānus : Dixī.

Aufidius : Sed nōne anteā adfirmāvistī tē mē adiūtūrum esse, ut urbem expugnārem incenderemque ?

Coriolānus : Hoc quoque dixī.

Aufidius : Prōditor es ! Militēs ! (*Intrant militēs.*) Prōditor est Coriolānus. Ut patriam ōlim prōdidit, ita nunc nōs prōdere vult. Interficate eum. (*Militēs Coriolānum interficiunt.*) Corpus ad rogum portāte. Ira mē insānum reddidit. Sed necesse erit mihi castra movēre. Sine Coriolānō Rōmam expugnāre nōn poterō. Sic Rōma servābitur morte Coriolānī, ut ōlim audāciā eius servāta est.



## 23. DE VIRO AUDACISSIMO

### Ablative Absolute

#### Exercitātiō

Marcus et Sextus : Heri Pȳrgopolinīcēs noctū contrā hostēs pugnāvit.

Magister : Dīcite mihi quō modō pugnāverit.

Marcus : Sonum audīvit.

Magister : Postquam sonum audīvit, quid fēcīt?

Marcus : Cum sonum audīvisset, arma induit.

Sextus : Sonō audītō, arma induit.

Magister : Postquam arma induit, quid fēcīt?

Marcus : Cum arma induisset, mīlītēs convocāvit.

Sextus : Armīs indūtīs, mīlītēs convocāvit.

Magister : Postquam mīlītēs convocāvit, quid fēcīt ?

Marcus : Cum mīlītēs convoc . . . , ōrātiōnem habuit.

Sextus : Mīlit . . . convoc . . . , ōrātiōnem habuit.

Magister : Postquam ōrātiōnem habuit, quid fēcīt ?

Marcus : Cum ōrātiōnem hab . . . , mīlītēs ēdūxit.

Sextus : Orāt . . . hab . . . , mīlītēs ēdūxit.



PYRGOPOLINICES

Magister : Postquam militēs ēdūxit, quid fēcit ?

Marcus : Cum milit . . . ēdūx . . . , sonitum pedum appropinquantium audīvit.

Sextus . . . . . , sonitum pedum appropinquantium audīvit.

Magister : Postquam sonitum audīvit, quid fēcit ?

Marcus : Cum . . . . . , gladium omīsit.

Sextus : . . . . . , gladium omīsit.

Magister : Postquam gladium omīsit, quid fēcit ?

Marcus : Cum . . . . . , scūtum abiēcit.

Sextus : . . . . . , scūtum abiēcit.

Magister : Postquam scūtum abiēcit, quid fēcit ?

Marcus : Cum . . . . . , fūgit Pȳrgopolinīcēs.

Sextus : . . . . . , fūgit Pȳrgopolinīcēs.

Magister : Sed quī erant hostēs ?

Marcus : Equidem nesciō. Militēs autem nihil invēnērunt nisi asinum senīlem.

## 24. DE PATRE PSEUDOLI

Olim pater Pseudolī in lectō iacēbat ; nam in eō erat ut morerētur. Omnēs medicī multis medicīnis datīs eum sārāre nōn potuērunt. Itaque, cum ā medicīs certior factus esset sē mox moritūrum esse, trēs filiōs suōs domum vocāvit, ut opēs suās inter eōs distribueret. Cum igitur Pseudolus frātrēsque ēius duo advēnissent, pater eōs ad lectum suum convocāvit. Dum circum lectum stant, testāmentum suum tenuī vōce recitāvit.

Aquā exhaustā, primō filiō, “ Tibi,” inquit, “ mī fili, omnēs meōs agrōs dabō ; cole eōs fidēliter.” Quibus auditīs, primus filius, quī pius erat, “ Grātiās tibi quam maximās agō,” respondit, “ sed spērō deōs effectūrōs esse ut longius vivās, et eis ipse fruāris.” Quibus dictīs maestus ad agrōs suōs abīvit.

Dēinde pater, cum medicinam exhausisset, secundō filiō, “ Tibi,” inquit, “ mī fili, omnem meam pecūniam dabō ; ūtere eā bene.” Quae cum audivisset secundus filius, quī fidēlis erat, “ Grātiās tibi quam maximās agō,” respondit, “ sed spērō deōs effectūrōs esse ut longius vivās, et eā ipse fruāris.” Quibus dictīs maestior ad tabernam suam abīvit.

Tandem pater Pseudolum vīdit. Quō visō, statim vinum exhausit vinōque exhaustō ex ventre labōrāvit. Itaque





maximē irātus, “Tibi, ō scelerātissime,” exclāmāvit, “nihil dabō nisi ūnum assem, ut fūnem emās, quō tē suspendās.” Quae cum audīvisset (vel quibus auditīs) Pseudolus, quī sēcūrus erat, dulce rīdēns, “Grātiās tibi quam maximās agō,” respondit, “sed spērō deōs effectūrōs esse ut longius vivās, et eō ipse fruāris.” Quibus dictīs laetissimus ad dēversōrium reversus est.

## 25. DE EGNATIO

### Ablative Absolute : Present Tense

#### Exercitātiō

Marcus : Dum māter lacrimat,  
Sextus : vel mātrem lacrimante,  
Omnēs : Egnātius semper rīdet.

Marcus : Dum aliī dolent,  
Sextus : vel aliīs dolentibus,  
Omnēs : Egnātius semper rīdet.

Marcus : Dum soror lūget,  
Sextus : vel sorōr . . . lūg . . . ,  
Omnēs : Egnātius semper rīdet.

Marcus : Dum frātrēs amicum  
sepeliunt,  
Sextus : vel frātr . . . amicum  
sepel . . . ,  
Omnēs : Egnātius semper rīdet.

Marcus : Dum avunculus in lectō moritur,  
Sextus :  
Omnēs :

Marcus : Dum hostēs appropinquant,  
Sextus :  
Omnēs :

Marcus : Dum hostēs urbem incendunt,  
Sextus :  
Omnēs :



Marcus : Dum villa sua ardet,

Sextus :

Omnēs :

Marcus : Dum hostēs cīvēs interficiunt,

Sextus :

Omnēs :

Marcus : Dum cīvēs mortuōs in sepulcra impōnunt,

Sextus :

Omnēs :

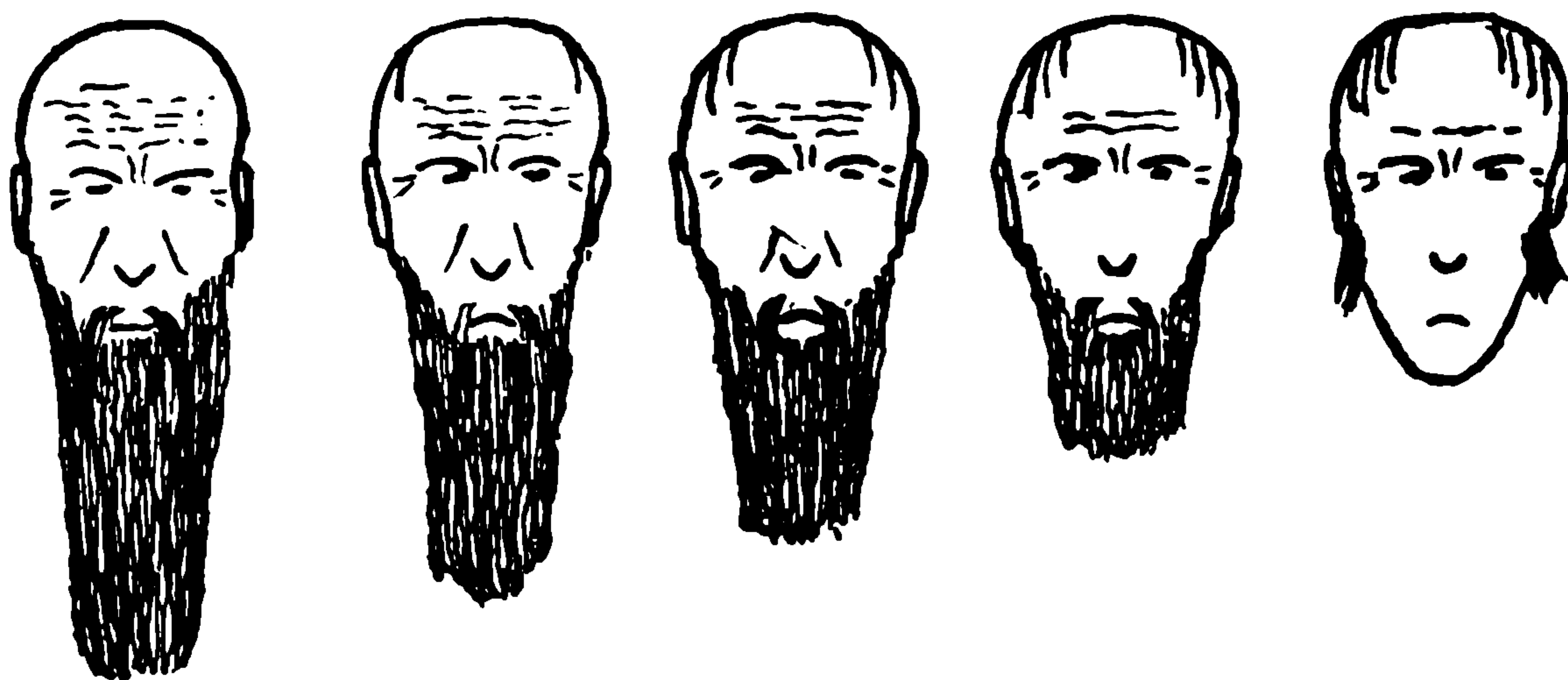
Visne scīre cūr Egnātius semper rīdeat ? Num quia laetus est ? Minimē vērō, sed quia candidōs habet dentēs.



## 26. DE PSEUDOLO ET REGE

Olim Pseudolus noster, vigilibus dormientibus, magnum fūrtum fēcerat. Itaque, fūrtō inventō, rex, cum Pseudolum vī cēpisset, eum in exsilium expulit. “Nunc,” inquit rex, “ō scelerātissime, exsul es, et sī tē iterum in terrā meā invēnerō, nōn dubium est quīn tē interficiam.” Pseudolus autem, rēge haec dīcente, rīdēbat, et postea sēcūrus in terram rēgis ibat quāndōcumque volēbat.

Pseudolus igitur noster, dum quondam per hanc terram raedā vehitur, subitō rēgem appropinquantem cōspexit. Quō visō, statim sē interfectum irī putābat. Rēge igitur lentē appropinquante, Pseudolus ad agricolam, quī terram prope viam colēbat, accessit, et eum cūius terram coleret rogāvit. Cūi agricola, “Meam” respondit, “terram colō; namque tritavō mortuō atavus meus hanc terram accēpit, et cum atavus mortuus esset abavus meus accēpit; abavō autem mortuō, proavus meus accēpit, et cum proavus mortuus esset, avus meus accēpit; avus autem, dum moritur, patrī meō dedit, et ego patre iam moriente terram colō. Itaque nōn dubium est quīn haec terra mea sit.”



Quibus audītis, Pseudolus, “Vendēsne mihi,” inquit, “aliquantulum terrae?” Cūi agricola respondit sē libenter

hoc factūrum esse. Pseudolus igitur terram ēmit, quā raedam complēret. Quā emptā, agricolae, “ Nunc,” inquit Pseudolus, “ nōn dubium est quīn haec terra mea sit. Valē.” Quibus dictis, cum terram in raedam imposuisset, statim ascendit et sē in terram usque ad umerōs immersit.

Sed rex iam appropinquāverat et, cum Pseudolum agnōvisset, “ Quid,” rogāvit, “ in terrā meā facis? Nōne dixi mē tē interfectūrum esse, sī iterum in terrā meā invēnissem? ” Cui respondit Pseudolus, “ Nōn tuā in terrā sum, sed meā, quam ego meā ipse pecūniā ab agricolā ēmī.” Quibus dictis, Pseudolus noster, rēge irāscente, laetus abīvit.

## 27. ITERUM DE VIRO AUDACISSIMO

### Participles

#### Exercitātiō

Marcus et Sextus et Quintus : Heri Pȳrgopolinīcēs interdiū  
contrā hostēs pugnāvit.

Magister : Dīcite mihi quō modō contrā hostēs pugnāverit.

Marcus : Postquam *galeam* poliit, *eam* induit.

Sextus : Cum *galeam* poliisset, *eam* induit.

Quintus : *Galeam polītam* induit.

Magister : Dēinde quid fēcit ?

Marcus : Postquam *scūtum* poliit, *id* sustulit.

Sextus : Cum *scūtum* poliisset, *id* sustulit.

Quintus : *Scūtum polītum* sustulit.

Magister : Dēinde quid fēcit ?

Marcus : Postquam *lōricam* poliit, *eam* induit.

Sextus : Cum . . . . .

Quintus : *Lōric . . . polīt . . .* induit.

Magister : Dēinde quid fēcit ?

Marcus : Postquam *caligās* invēnit, *eās* induit.

Sextus :

Quintus :

Magister : Dēinde quid fēcit ?

Marcus : Postquam *gladium* invēnit, *eum* cēpit.

Sextus :

Quintus :



Magister : Dēinde quid fēcit ?

Marcus : Postquam *gladium* cēpit, *ēius* balteum sibi circumdedit.

Sextus :

Quintus :

Magister : Dēinde quid fēcit ?

Marcus : Dum *fīlius* lacrimat, *eī* ōsculum dedit.

Quintus : *Fīliō lacrimantī* ōsculum dedit.

Magister : Dēinde quid fēcit ?

Marcus : Dum *uxor* lacrimat, *eī* ōsculum dedit.

Quintus : *Uxōr . . . lacrimant . . .* ōsculum dedit.

Magister : Dēinde quid fēcit ?

Marcus : Dum *fīlius* lacrimat, *eum* reliquit.

Quintus :

Magister :

Marcus : Dum *uxor* lacrimat, *eam* reliquit.

Quintus :

Magister :

Marcus : Dum *hostēs* appropinquant, *eōs* audīvit.

Quintus :

Magister :

Marcus : Postquam *hostēs* audīvit, *eōrum* gladiōs timuit.

Sextus :

Quintus :

Magister :

Marcus : Dum *hostēs* appropinquant, *eōs* timuit.

Quintus :

Magister :

Marcus : Postquam *scūtum* sustulit, *id* abiēcit.

Sextus :

Quintus :

Magister :

Marcus : Postquam *gladium* strinxit, *eum* abiēcit.

Sextus :

Quintus :

Magister :

Marcus : Postquam *galeam* exuit, *eam* abiēcit.

Sextus :

Quintus :

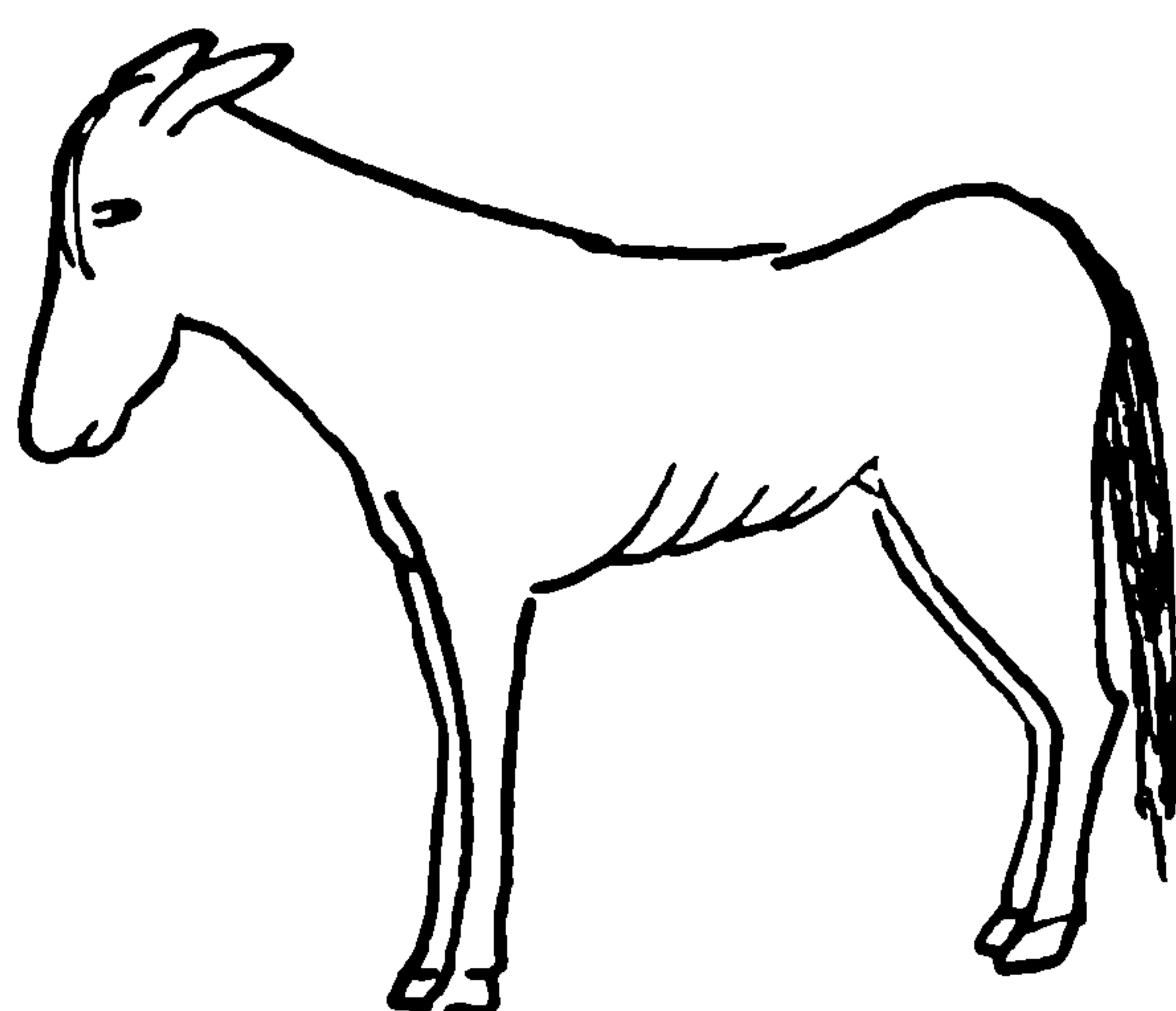
Magister :

Marcus : Dum hostēs impetum faciunt, celeriter fūgit.

Quintus : Hostibus impetum facientibus, celeriter fūgit.

Magister : Sed quī erant hostēs ?

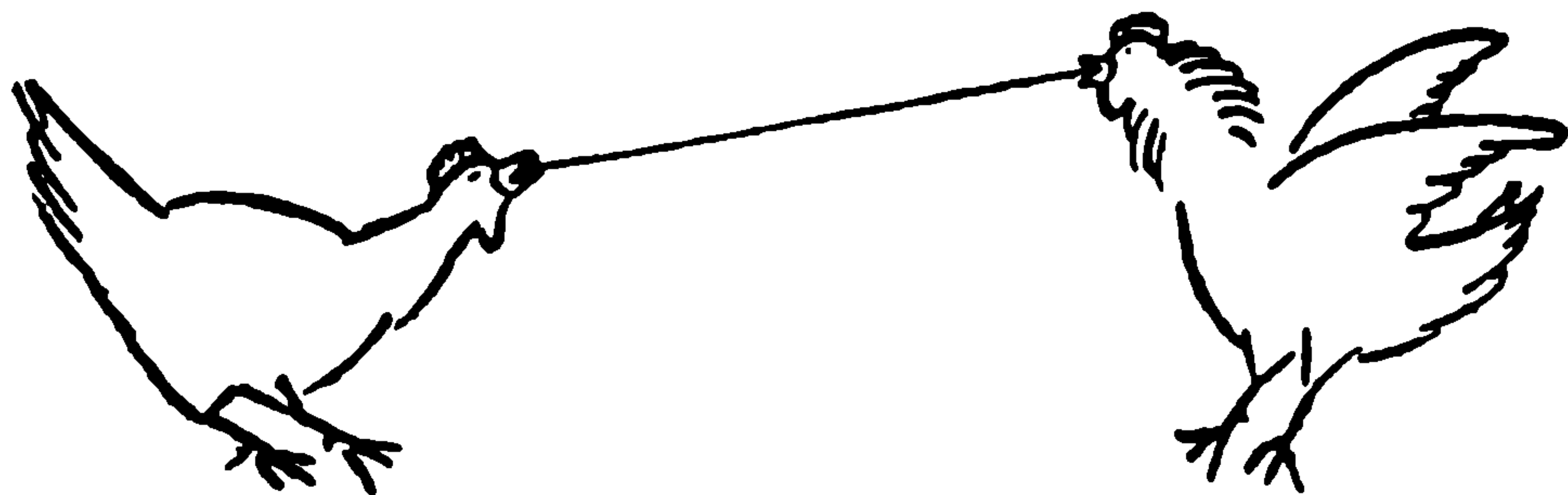
Marcus : Equidem nesciō. Mīlitēs autem nihil invēnērunt nisi asinum senilem.



## 28. DE PSEUDOLO ET GALLINIS

Olim Pseudolus noster omnem pecūniam ab aliis ablātā āmisit. Valdē igitur ēsuriēbat, et ad divitem quemdam, qui multum cibum in aedibus collectum habēbat, prōgressus est. Ad quem prōgressus rogāvit quandō sibi cēnam datūrus esset. Quibus auditis, dives ei gallinās suās in agrōs dimissās mōnstrāvit et, “Sī,” inquit, “omnēs hās centum gallinās, quae nunc lātē per agrōs vagantur, ad mē attuleris neque manibus tuis tetigeris, cēnam tibi dabō.” Quibus conditionibus auditis, Pseudolus cōnsilium iniit, quō gallinās ad divitem addūceret nēve manibus suis tangeret.

Primum pānem lapidōsum in limō relictum invēnit. Dēinde quinquāgintā fīla capta inter sē coniunxit. Postea ad centum extrēmās partēs hōrum quinquāgintā filōrum sic coniunctōrum aliquantulum pānis adligāvit. Quibus factis, hanc māchinam ad dolum parātā in terrā disposuit, sed fīla celāvit, nē gallinae ea vidēre possent. Gallinae autem, quamquam fīla in terrā disposita vidēre nōn poterant, pānem passim dispositum vidērunt. Quem visum statim omnēs simul rostris suis petivērunt. Sic captae sunt gallinae; neque enim pānem rostris captum dēvorāre poterant, quod altera gallina alteram extrēmam fili partem summā vī trahēbat, neque pānem in gulā haerentem reicere poterant. Namque māior erat pānis quam quem reicerent.





Pseudolus igitur, cum gallinās sē liberāre cōnantēs vidisset, fila coniuncta dextrā cēpit. Sic omnēs gallinās filis captās neque manibus suis tactās ad dīvitem addūxit, quī cēnam bene meritam eī dedit. Laetus igitur abīvit.

## 29. CATILINA

### SCAENA PRIMA

*(Domī apud Catilinam. Adsunt Catilīna, Cethēgus, Varguntēius, Crassus, Cūrius.)*

Cethēgus : Rogāmus, Catilīna, cūr hic omnibus servis  
āmōtis cēnēmus.

Crassus : Rogāmus quoque cūr hic omnibus iānuīs clausis  
maneāmus.

Catilīna : Omnia vōbīs expōnam. Sciō enim vōs omnēs  
fortēs fidēlēsque mihi esse. Quam ob rem vōs  
hūc convocāvi. Vōs nōn solum fortēs  
fidēlēsque estis sed etiam oppressi pauperēsque.

Crassus : Ego autem . . .

Catilīna : Veniam, Crasse, mihi dā. Tū sōlus inter nōs opēs  
habēs, quibus, ut sciō, prō pauperibus tuis  
amicis ūti vis. Nōne tū, Cūri, ē senātū ā  
cēnsōribus expulsus es ?

Cūrius : Vēra dicis.

Catilīna : Nōne Cicerō, Varguntēie, effēcit ut tū apud  
praetōrem damnārēris.

Varguntēius : Falsa dixit Cicerō.

Catilīna : Pauci, duce Cicerōne, rem publicam gubernant,  
dum nōs, boni atque nōbilēs, ab eis opprimimur.  
Quōusque tandem haec patiēmini ?

Cethēgus : Gladiis strictis, ut mihi vidētur, ūti nōs oportet.

Catilīna : Lēgibus prius ūti oportet. Spērō mē cōsulem  
cum Cicerōne futūrum esse.

Varguntēius : Sed quid si cōsul nōn factus eris ? Quid tum  
faciēs ?

- Catilīna : Armīs nōs ipsī liberābimus.
- Crassus : Sed quō modō ? Quandō ?
- Catilīna : Sanguine Cicerōnis effūsō amicōrumque ēius.  
Ecce ! sanguinem hūmānum in hāc urnā collec-  
tum habeō. Oportet vōs omnēs hōc exhaustō  
in rem publicam coniūrāre.
- Omnēs : (*dum bibunt*) Bibimus et coniūrāmus.
- Catilīna : Tū, Cūrī, nōn bibistī. Cūr bibere nōn vīs ?
- Cūrius : Bibere mihi nōn placet.
- Varguntēius : Bibe, scelerātissime. Nisi hunc sanguinem  
biberis, sanguinem tuum effundam.
- Cūrius : Nōlite irāsci. Iam bibō. (*Bibit Cūrius quoque.*)
- Catilīna : Nunc, sanguine exhaustō, omnia vōbīs expōnam.  
Pīsō, amicus meus, exercitum in Hispāniā habet.  
Multa arma passim cēlāta habēmus. Nisi cōnsul  
factus erō, bellum rei publicae indicēmus.
- Crassus : Bellum dīcis ?
- Cethēgus : Bellum dīcit et rectē dīcit.
- Catilīna : Servi quoque nōs adiuvābunt. Gallī quoque  
auxilium nōbīs dabunt. Dīvitēs interficiēmus  
opēsque eōrum capiēmus.
- Omnēs : Bellum rei publicae indicāmus.
- Catilīna : Et quid dē Cicerōne illō ?
- Varguntēius : Cum dē Cicerōne rogēs, ego respondēbō. Ego eum  
in lectō suō dormientem hāc ipsā nocte inter-  
ficiam.
- Catilīna : Grātiās quam maximās, amīcī fidēlissimī, vōbīs  
agō. Nunc autem abeundum est. Tacitī et  
singulī abīte, nē quis nōs suspicētur.



## SCAENA SECUNDA

*(Domī apud Fulviam. Adest Fulvia. Intrat Cūrius.)*

Fulvia : Salvē, mī amice. Cūr tam sērō venīs ?

Cūrius : Cēnāvī.

Fulvia : Quibuscum cēnāvistī ?

Cūrius : Cum Crassō et Cethēgō cēnāvī.

Fulvia : Apud quem cēnāvistī ?

Cūrius : Rogās apud quem cēnāverim ?  
Apud . . .

Fulvia : Nōlī mentīrī : namque iam sciō.  
Servus meus tē vīdit Catilīnae  
villam intrantem.

Cūrius : Apud Catilīnam, ut dīcis, cēnāvī multisque dictis et  
audītis ad tē veniō.

Fulvia : Multisque exhaustis. Quid bibistī ? Quid in ōre tuō  
videō ? Num sanguinem ?

Cūrius : Sanguinem dīcis ?

Fulvia : Num rē vērā sanguinem bibistī ? Vix crēdere  
possum.

Cūrius : Veniam mihi dā. Namque omnia tibi expōnam.  
Sanguinem hūmānum bibī.

Fulvia : A tē abhorreō. Cūr sanguinem bibistī ?

Cūrius : Con . . . con . . . coniūrāvimus in rem publicam.

Fulvia : O prōditōrēs ! Venī mēcum.

Cūrius : Quō abīs ?

Fulvia : Ad Cicerōnem.

Cūrius : Sed, ō dēliciae . . .

Fulvia : Dēliciae ! Numquam postea tē amābō nisi mēcum  
vēneris Cicerōnique omnia exposueris.

Cūrius : Sed coniūrāvī. Nihil mihi expōnere licet.

Fulvia : Eī, quī cum tālibus coniūrāvit, omnia expōnere licet.  
Sed cum ita dicās, cēnsōrēs vocābō. Venī mēcum.

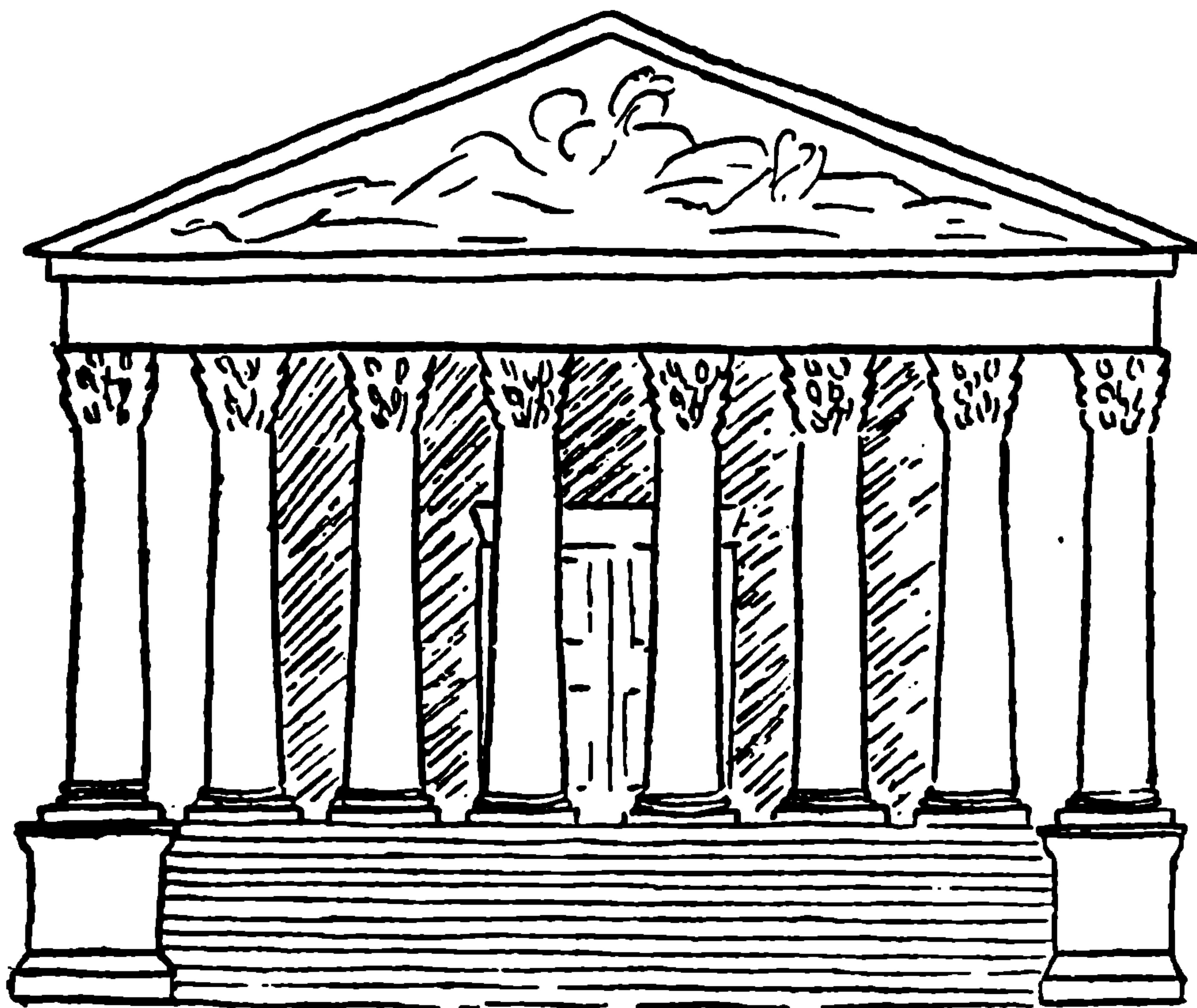
Cūrius : Tēcum veniam.



FULVIA

## SCAENA TERTIA

*(In templō. Adsunt senātōrēs, inter quōs sunt et Cicerō et Catilīna et Catō.)*



Cicerō : Quōusque tandem abūtēris, Catilīna, patientiā nostrā? Nōne intellegis nōs omnēs iam dē coniūrātiōne tuā bene scīre? Quid proximā nocte fēcistī? Ubi fuistī? Quōs convocāvistī? Quid bibistī?

O tempora! O mōrēs! Senātōrēs haec omnia sciunt. Cōsul eum videt. Hīc tamen Catilīna vivit. Vivit? Immō vērō etiam in senātum gladiō paene strictō vēnit. Sed meā quidem sententiā oportet cōsulem iubēre tē, Catilīna, ad mortem dūcī.

Catilīna : Nōlite, ō patrēs cōscriptī, Cicerōnī crēdere. Cōfiteor mē pauperem esse. Omnēs tamen pauperēs nōn sunt prōditōrēs. Ego et māiōrēs meī quam plūrimū rei publicae auxilium dedimus. Putātisne igitur mē patriam perdere velle?



Cicerō : Quō modō haec verba, ō patrēs, patī potestis ?

Senātōrēs : Hostis ! Interficite eum ! Expellite eum !

Catilīna : Inimicī mē in exsilium agunt. Sed Rōmam incendam ut eōs ulciscar.

*(Exit Catilīna.)*

Cicerō : Habet, patrēs cōscriptī, habet arma in Etrūriā cēlāta ; habet exercitum servōrum et perditōrum hominum. Quā rē dē salūte vestrā populique Rōmānī diligenter ac fortiter dēliberāte.

Catō : Meā quidem sententiā Antōnius mittendus est Catilinae necandī causā cōsulēsque vidēre dēbent nē quid dētrimentī capiat rēs publica.

Senātōrēs : Rectē dicit Catō. In Catōnis sententiam pedibus imus.

#### SCAENA QUARTA

*(Aliquot post annis in agrīs suis duo militēs, stīpendia ēmeriti, labōrant.)*

Miles Primus : Salvē, amice. Crēscuntne segetēs ?

Miles Secundus : Salvē tū quoque. Bene crēscunt.

Miles Primus : Scisne quis sit diēs ?

Miles Secundus : Bene sciō. Diēs est quō Catilīna ille contrā rem publicam pugnāvit.

Miles Primus : Ego in Catilinae exercitū pugnāvī.

Miles Secundus : Et ego in Antōniī.

Miles Primus : Tē strictō gladiō in mē currentem vidī.

Miles Secundus : Et ego tē in mē.

Miles Primus : Uterque igitur ab alterō, relictō nōn bene scūtō, fūgit.

Miles Secundus : Quidnī ? Is enim, quī in bellō fugit, ut agrōs colat postea vivit.

Miles Primus : Catilīna autem nōn fūgit.



Miles Secundus : Tū enim sciēbās ?

Miles Primus : Sciēbam. Cīvis malus erat sed optimus imperātor. In bellō adversis vulneribus mortuus est. Cadāver ēius longē ā suīs inter hostium cadāvera invēnērunt. Etiam tum vultus ēius ferox erat.

Miles Secundus : Omnēs autem morī dēbent.

Miles Primus : Rectē dicis, amīce, et dīvitēs et pauperēs, et optimī et scelerātissimī. Cūrā ut valeās.

Miles Secundus : Tū quoque.

## 30. DE BIBULO

### Consecutives

#### Exercitātiō

Quintus : Quam antiquum vinum bibit Bibulus !

Sextus : Quāle vinum bibit Bibulus ?

Septimus : Tam antiquum vinum bibit Bibulus,

Omnēs : ut statim obdormiat.

Quintus : Quam antiquum vinum bibēbat Bibulus !

Sextus : Quāle vinum bibēbat Bibulus ?

Septimus : Tam antiquum vinum bibēbat Bibulus,

Omnēs : ut statim obdormiret.

Quintus : Quam dulce vinum bibit Bibulus !

Sextus : Quāle vinum bibit Bibulus ?

Septimus : Tam dulce vinum bibit Bibulus,

Omnēs :

Quintus : Quam dulce vinum bibēbat Bibulus !

Sextus : Quāle vinum bibēbat Bibulus ?

Septimus : . . . dulce vinum bibēbat Bibulus,

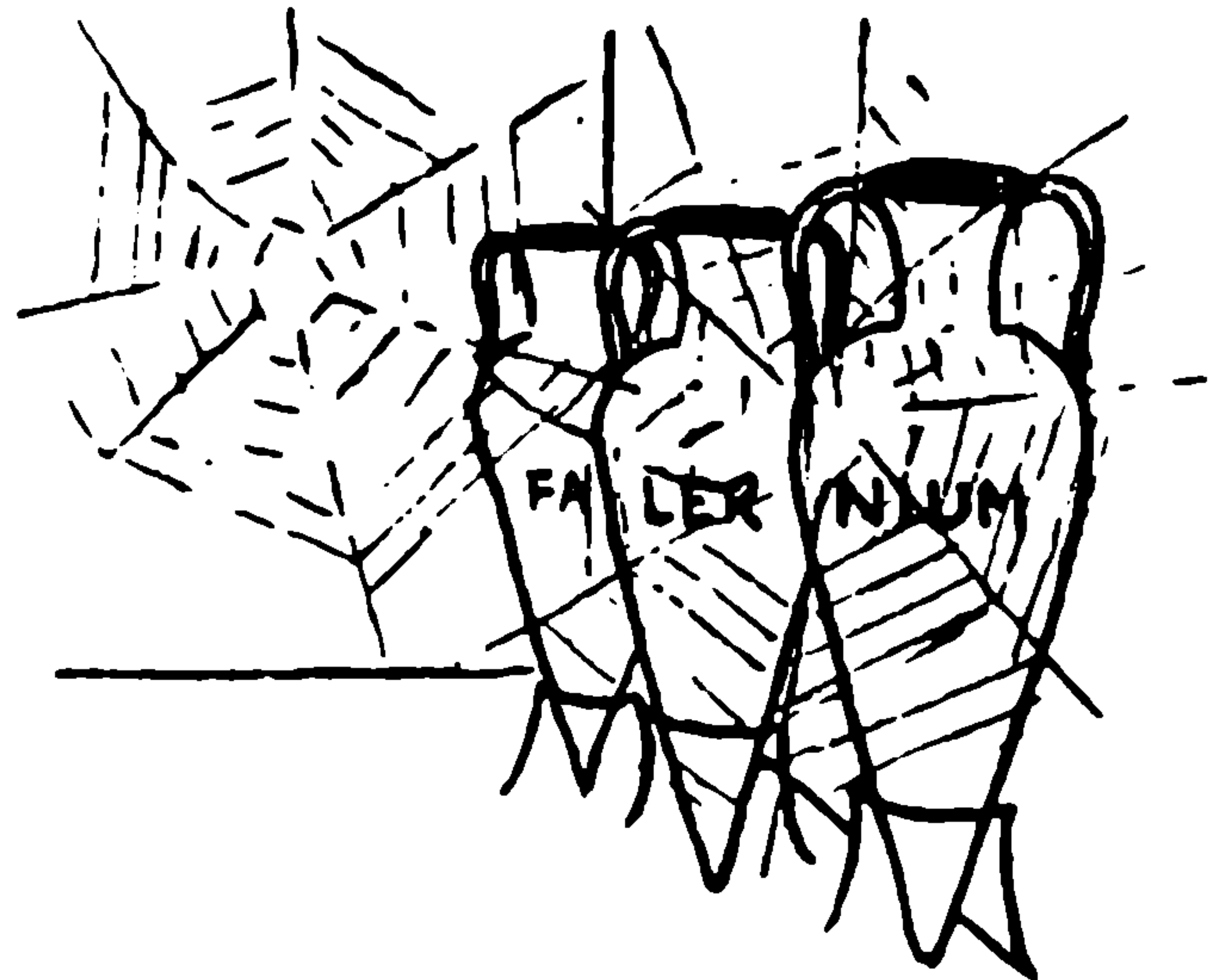
Omnēs :

Quintus : Quam celeriter vinum bibit Bibulus !

Sextus : Quō modō bibit Bibulus ?

Septimus : . . . celeriter bibit Bibulus,

Omnēs :



Quintus : Quam celeriter vinum bibēbat Bibulus !

Sextus : Quō modō bibēbat Bibulus ?

Septimus : . . . celeriter bibēbat Bibulus,

Omnēs :

Quintus : Quam avidē vinum bibit Bibulus !

Sextus : Quō modō bibit Bibulus ?

Septimus :

Omnēs :

Quintus : Quam avidē vinum bibēbat Bibulus !

Sextus :

Septimus :

Omnēs :

Quintus : Quantum vinī bibit Bibulus !

Sextus : Quantum vinī bibit Bibulus ?

Septimus : Tantum vinī bibit Bibulus,

Omnēs :

Quintus : Quantum vinī bibē-  
bat Bibulus !

Sextus :

Septimus :

Omnēs :

Quintus : Quanta pōcula bibit  
Bibulus !

Sextus :

Septimus :

Omnēs :

Quintus : Quanta pōcula bibēbat Bibulus !

Sextus :

Septimus :

Omnēs :



BIBULUS



Quintus : Quāle vīnum bibit Bibulus !

Sextus : Quāle vīnum bibit Bibulus ?

Septimus : Tāle . . . . . ,

Omnēs :

Quintus : Quāle vīnum bibēbat Bibulus !

Sextus :

Septimus :

Omnēs :

Quintus : Quot pōcula bibit Bibulus !

Sextus :

Septimus :

Omnēs :

Quintus : Quot pōcula bibēbat Bibulus !

Sextus :

Septimus :

Omnēs :

Quintus : Quot urnās bibit Bibulus !

Sextus :

Septimus :

Omnēs :

Quintus : Quot urnās bibēbat Bibulus

Sextus :

Septimus :

Omnēs :

Quintus : Ita bibit Bibulus !

Sextus : Quō modō bibit Bibulus ?

Septimus : Ita bibit Bibulus,

Omnēs : ut nōn iterum bibat

Quintus : Ita bibēbat Bibulus !

Sextus :

Septimus :

Omnēs :

Quintus : Ita dormit Bibulus !

Sextus :

Septimus :

Omnēs :

Quintus : Ita dormiēbat Bibulus !

Sextus :

Septimus :

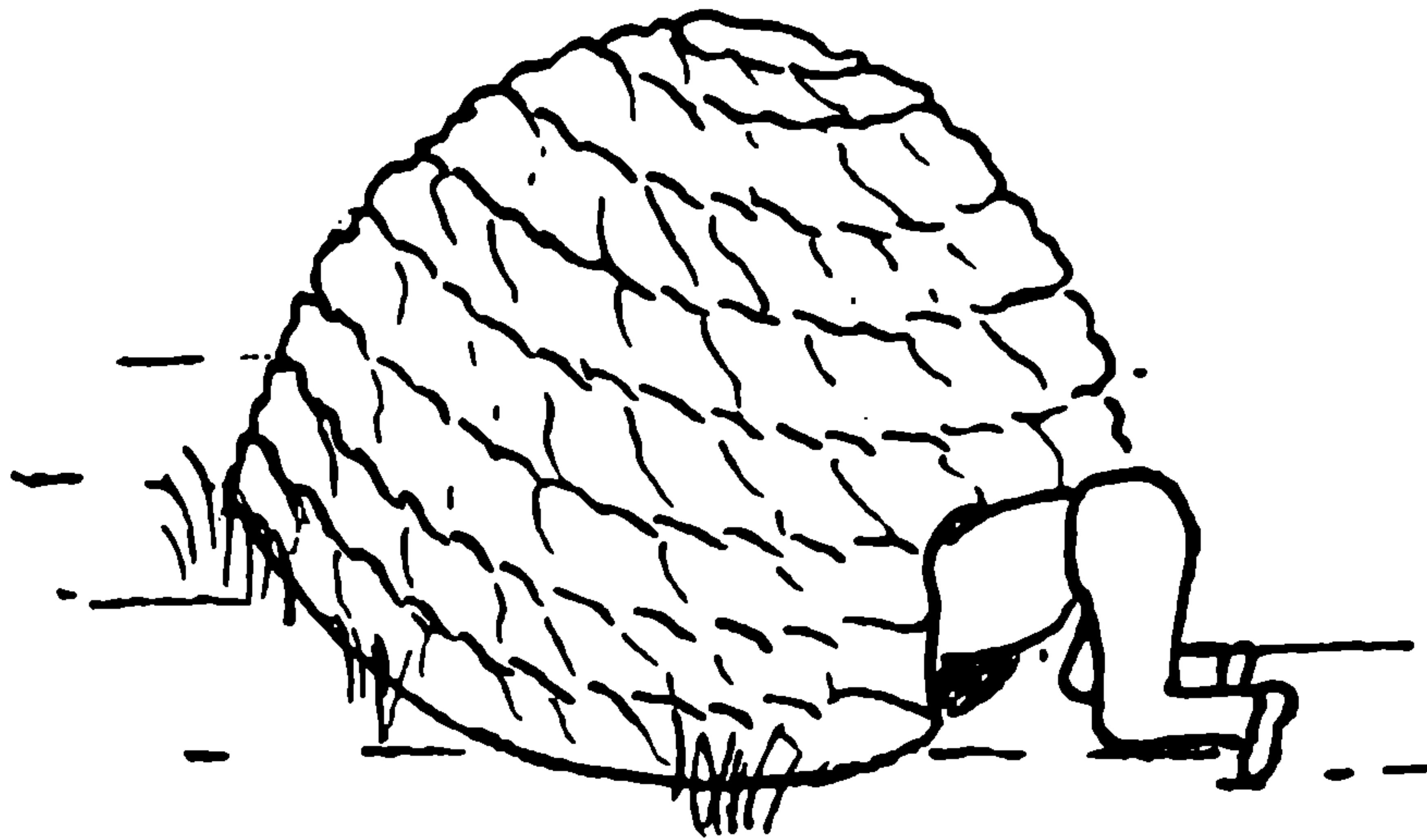
Omnēs .

Sextus : Cūr nōn iterum bibet Bibulus ?

Omnēs : Eheu ! Bibulus noster mortuus est.

### 31. DE PSEUDOLO ET ALVEO

Olim Pseudolus noster tam fessus erat ut dormire cuperet, sed tantus erat ardor sōlis ut umbram quaerere dēbēret. Tālis autem erat nātūra locī ut nulla arbor ibi crēsceret, quae umbram ei praebēret. Ivit igitur ad locum dēsertum, ubi multī et vacuī alveī erant, quōrum ūnus tantus erat ut hominem facile continēret. Quō visō Pseudolus, “ Quid,” sē rogāvit, “ mihi obstat quōminus in alveum illum inrēpam et dormiam?” Quibus rogātis, “ Nihil, amice,” sibi respondit, “ tē prohibet quōminus hoc faciās.” Cum igitur in alveum inrēpsisset, statim obdormiuit. Ita autem dormiēbat ut ad sōlis occāsum nōn expergiscerētur.



Tandem cum nox advēnisset, duo fūrēs eō vērunt, quippe quī ūnum alveum auferre cuperent. Quōrum prior, “ Nox,” inquit, “ amice, tam tenēbricōsa est ut nēmō nōs vidēre possit : neque vigilēs adsunt. Nihil igitur nōbis obstat quōminus alveum auferāmus.” Cui fūr alter, “ Bene dīcis,” respondit. “ Alveum auferāmus. Equidem vērō dē apibus nihil intellegō, sed gravissimum alveum audīvī plūrimum mel continēre.” “ Oportet nōs igitur,” inquit fūr prior, “ gravissimum alveum quaerere.” Cui fūr alter, “ Ita vērō,” respondit, “ gravissimus alveus nōbis quaerendus est.”



Omnēs igitur alveōs singulōs sustulērunt, ut invenīrent quis gravissimus esset. Mox ad eum alveum vērunt, in quō Pseudolus noster dormiēbat. Hic alveus eis plūrimum mel continēre vidēbātur. Tam gravis autem erat ut vix tollere possent. Tandem alveō manibus sublātō fūgerunt.

Sed Pseudolus noster mōtū excitātus, cum eōs intēr sē loquentēs audivisset, cognōvit eōs fūrēs esse. Statim sibi, “Haud dubium est,” inquit, “quīn hī duo fūrēs, sī me in hōc alveō invēnerint, mē interfectūrī sint. Mihi igitur effugiendum est. Sed quō modō effugiam? Namque hī duo fūrēs tam fortēs esse videntur et adeō celeriter currunt ut vix ex alveō exire possim.”

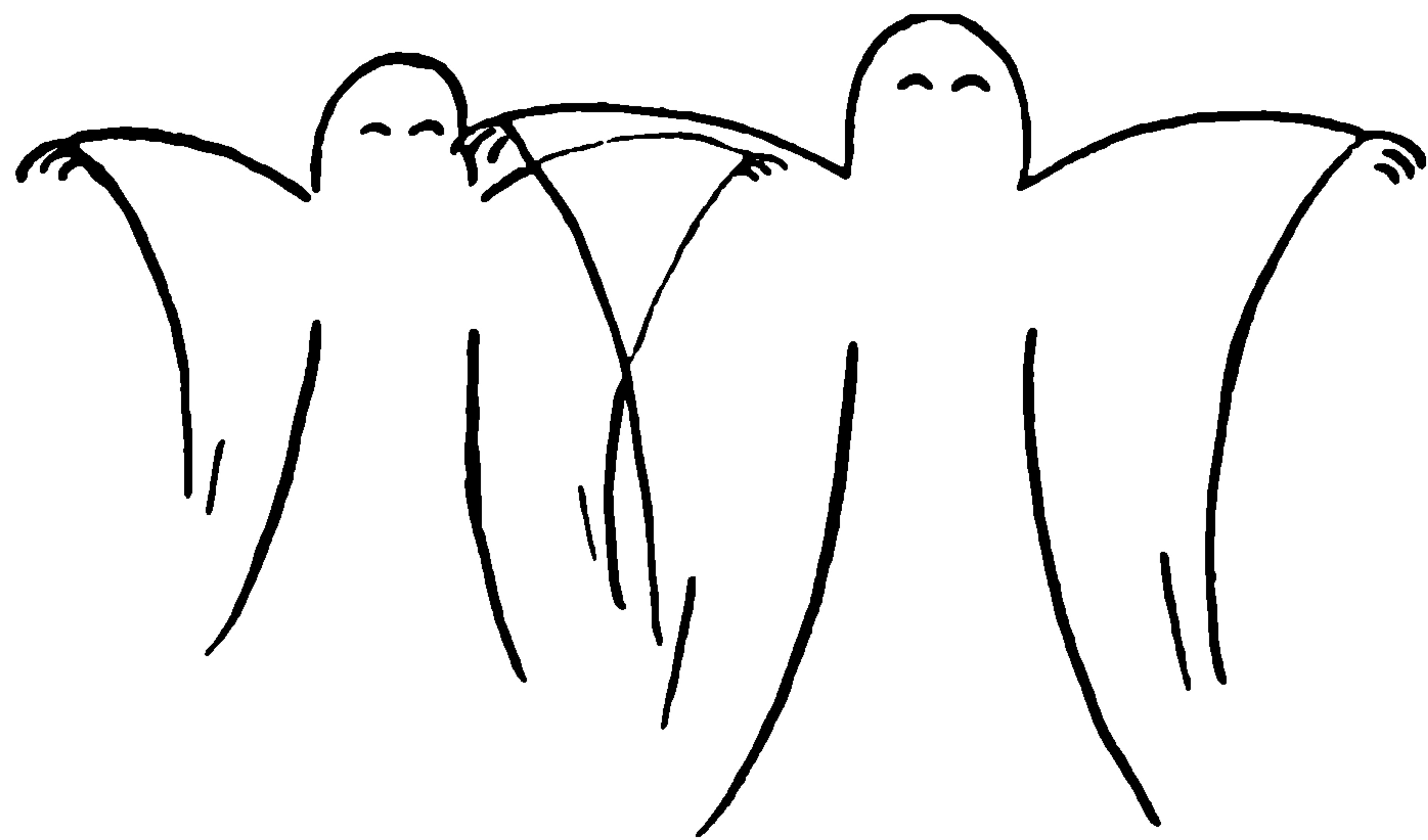
Effugietne Pseudolus? Quō modō effugiet? Quid tū cēnsēs, ō optime lector? Lege proximam nostram fābulam.

32. DE FRATRIBUS TIMIDIS

Verbs of Fearing

Exercitātiō

Frāter Prīmus :                    Hostis mē vidēbit.  
Frāter Secundus :                Timeō nē hostis mē videat.  
Anima Frātris Primī :        Putābam hostem mē visūrum esse.  
Anima Frātris Secundī :      Timēbam nē hostis mē vidēret.  
Anima Frātris Primī :        Hostis mē vīdit.  
Anima Frātris Secundī :      Timeō nē hostis mē viderit.



Frāter Prīmus :                    Hostis mē vincet.  
Frāter Secundus :                Timeō nē hostis mē vincat.  
Anima Frātris Primī :        Putābam hostem mē victūrum esse.  
Anima Frātris Secundī :      Timēbam nē hostis mē vinceret.  
Anima Frātris Primī :        Hostis mē vīcit.  
Anima Frātris Secundī :      Timeō nē hostis mē vīcerit.

Frāter Prīmus :                    Hostis mē interficiet.  
Frāter Secundus :                Timeō . . . . .  
Anima Frātris Primī :        Putābam hostem mē interfectūrum  
                                              esse.  
Anima Frātris Secundī :      Timēbam . . . . .  
Anima Frātris Primī :        Hostis mē interfēcit.  
Anima Frātris Secundī :      Timeō . . . . .

Frāter Primus : Frāter mē nōn dēfendet.  
 Frāter Secundus : Timeō ut frater mē dēfendat.  
 Anima Frātris Primī : Putābam frātre mē nōn dēfēn-  
 sūrum esse.  
 Anima Frātris Secundī : Timēbam ut . . . . .  
 Anima Frātris Primī : Frāter mē nōn dēfendit.  
 Anima Frātris Secundī : Timeō ut . . . . .

Frāter Primus : Trāns flūmen nōn natābō.  
 Frāter Secundus :  
 Anima Frātris Primī : Putābam mē trāns flūmen nōn natā-  
 tūrum esse.  
 Anima Frātris Secundī :  
 Anima Frātris Primī : Trāns flūmen nōn natāvi.  
 Anima Frātris Secundī :

Frāter Primus : In ulteriōrem rīpam nōn ēvādam.  
 Frāter Secundus :  
 Anima Frātris Primī : Putābam mē in ulteriōrem rīpam  
 nōn ēvāsūrum esse.  
 Anima Frātris Secundī :  
 Anima Frātris Primī : In ulteriōrem rīpam nōn ēvāsī.  
 Anima Frātris Secundī :

Frāter Primus : In Tartarum ibō.  
 Frāter Secundus :  
 Anima Frātris Primī : Putābam mē in Tartarum itūrum  
 esse.  
 Anima Frātris Secundī :  
 Anima Frātris Primī : In Tartarum ivi.  
 Anima Frātris Secundī :



Frāter Primus : In Tartarō manēbō.

Frāter Secundus :

Anima Frātris Primī : Putābam mē in Tartarō mānsūrum  
esse.

Anima Frātris Secundī :

Anima Frātris Primī : In Tartarō mānsī.

Anima Frātris Secundī :

Frāter Primus : Nōn iterum vivam.

Frāter Secundus :

Anima Frātris Primī : Putābam mē nōn iterum victūrum  
esse.

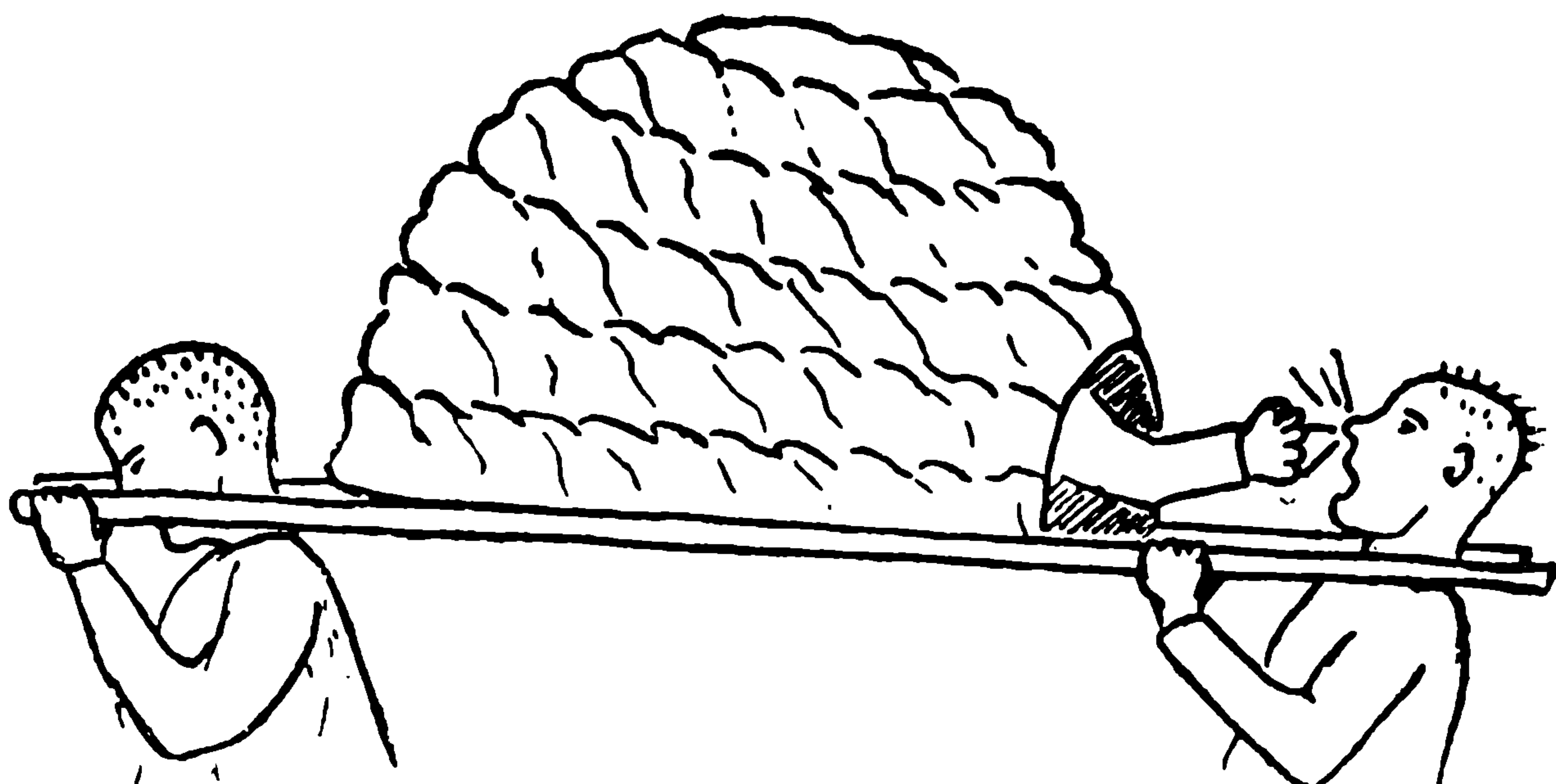
Anima Frātris Secundī :

Anima Frātris Primī : Nōn iterum vixī.

Anima Frātris Secundī :

### 33. ITERUM DE PSEUDOLO ET ALVEO

Pseudolos noster, ut meministi, in alveō erat, quem duo fūrēs noctū auferēbant. Cum timēret nē eum interficerent, cōsiliū cēpit quō effugeret. Manū ex alveō extendit et aurem dextram fūris, quī prior cēdēbat, vehementer vulsit. Statim ille, cum putāret alterum fūrem hoc fēcisse, “O pessime,” inquit, “cūr aurem meam vellis? Timeō nē alveus cadat; namque tam gravis est ut vix meis duābus manibus ferre possim. Cum tam gravis sit, nōn oportet tē mē impedire quōminus hoc faciam.” Cui alter, “Tacē, improbissime,” respondit. “Vereor nē errōrem fēceris. Ego nihil fēcī.”



Quibus auditis, mox Pseudolus manū iterum extendit, et nāsum fūris, quī posterior cēdēbat, vehementius pulsāvit. Statim ille, cum putāret alterum fūrem hoc fēcisse, “Quid facis, fūrcifer?” exclāmāvit. “Iam adfirmāvī mē nihil fēcisse, et nunc tū nāsum meum pulsās. Timeō nē alveum omittam.” Cui, “Vereor,” respondit alter, “nē tū insānus sis. Nōne tibi dixī alveum tam gravem esse ut vix meis duābus manibus ferre possem? Quō modō igitur tē pulsāre potuī? Timeō nē pugnandī cupidus sis. Nisi ā mē pulsārī vīs, nōlī tālia dicere.”

Quibus auditis, mox Pseudolus subridens manum iterum extendit, quā aurem sinistram priōris fūris vehementissimē vulsit. Statim ille, cum putāret alterum fūrem hoc fēcisse, alveum omisit et exclāmāvit. “ O impudice, scelerāte, bustirape, parricida, sacrilege, periūre, carnifex . . . iterumne aurem meam vellis ? Ego tibi nōn nocuī, sed vereor nē pugnax sis. Sī igitur pugnandī cupidus es, pugnēmus. Equidem tē nōn timeō.” Et statim pugnō ōs alterius pulsāvit. Sic rixa facta est. Illis inter sē pugnantibus, Pseudolus noster ex alveō ērēpsit et per tenebrās noctis laetus domum abivit.



## 34. MARCUS AQUAM A PUMICE POSTULAT

### Conditionals

#### Exercitātiō A

Marcus : Utinam dīves fuisset.

Quintus : Sed nōn fuistī.

Sextus : Quid fēcissēs, sī dīves fuissēs?

Marcus : Sī dīves fuisset, rēte habuissem.

Quintus : Sed nōn fuistī.

Marcus : Utinam rēte habuissem.

Quintus : Sed nōn habuistī.

Sextus : Quid fēcissēs, sī . . . . .?

Marcus : Sī . . . . ., manū tenuissem.

Quintus : Sed nōn habuistī.

Marcus : Utinam rēte manū tenu . . .

Quintus : Sed nōn tenuistī.

Sextus : Quid fēcissēs, sī . . . . .?

Marcus : Sī . . . . ., in rīpā sēd . . .

Quintus : Sed nōn tenuistī.

Marcus : Utinam in rīpā sēd . . .

Quintus : Sed nōn sēdistī.

Sextus :

Marcus : Sī . . . . ., piscēs vidēre potu . . .

Quintus : Sed nōn sēdistī.

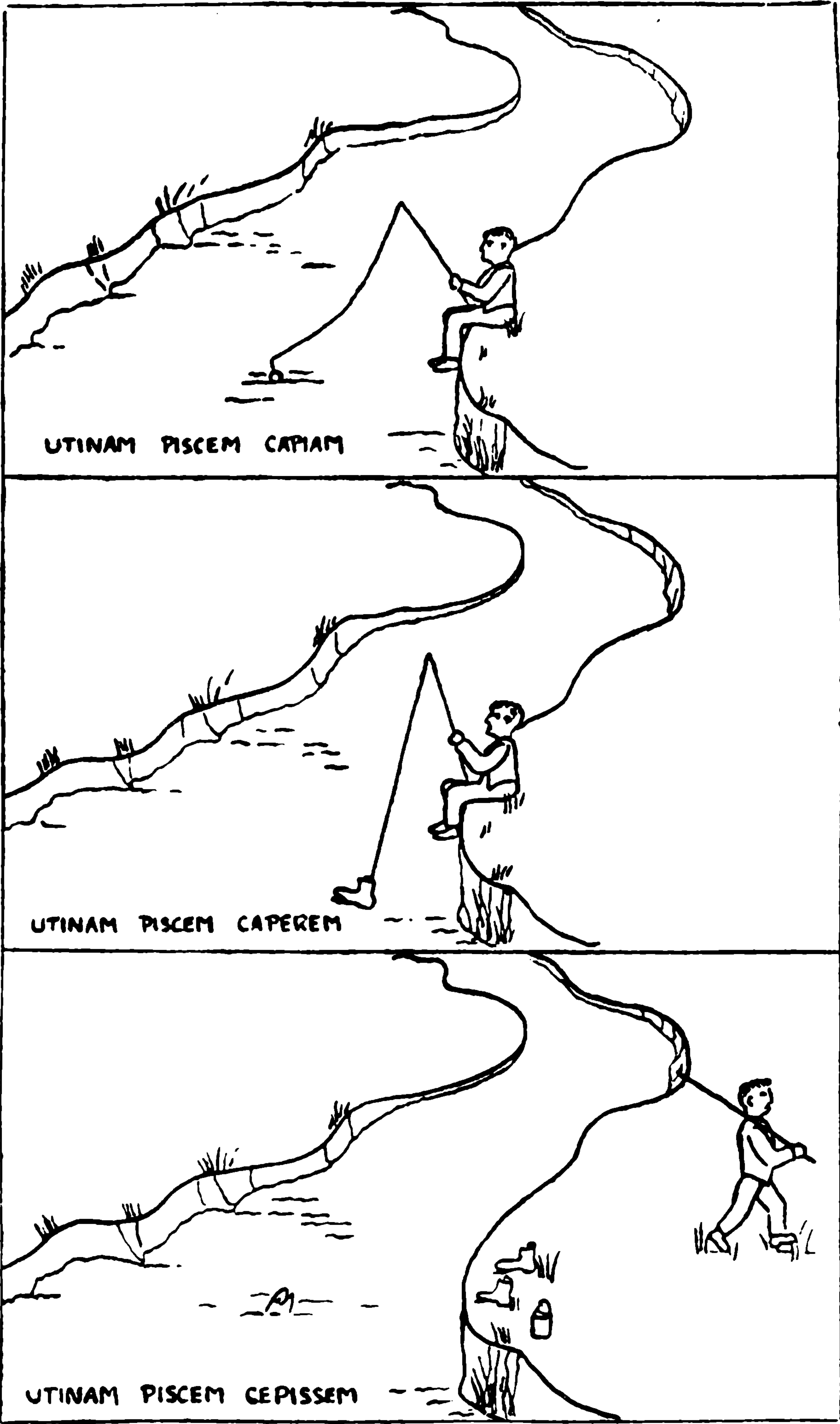
Marcus : Utinam piscēs vidēre potu . . .

Quintus : Sed nōn potuistī.

Sextus :

Marcus : Sī . . . . ., piscēs cēp . . .

Quintus : Sed nōn potuistī.



Marcus : Utinam piscēs cēp . . . .

Quintus : Sed nōn cēpistī.

Sextus :

Marcus : Sī . . . . ., dītior factus essem

Quintus : Sed nōn cēpistī.

### **Exercitātiō B**

Marcus : Utinam dives essem.

Quintus : Sed nōn es.

Sextus : Quid facerēs, sī dives essēs?

Marcus : Sī dives essem, rēte habērem.

Quintus : Sed nōn es.

Marcus : Utinam rēte habērem.

Quintus : Sed nōn habēs.

Sextus : Quid facerēs, sī rēte habērēs?

Marcus : Sī . . . . ., manū ten . . .

Quintus :

Marcus : Utinam rēte manū ten . . .

Quintus : Sed nōn tenēs.

Sextus :

Marcus : Sī . . . . ., in ripā sed . . .

Quintus :

Marcus : Utinam in ripā sed . . .

Quintus :

Sextus :

Marcus : Sī . . . . ., piscēs vidēre poss . . .

Quintus :

Marcus : Utinam piscēs vidēre poss . . .

Quintus :

Sextus :

Marcus : Sī . . . . ., piscēs cap . . .

Quintus :



Marcus : Utinam piscēs cap . . .

Quintus :

Sextus :

Marcus : Sī . . . . ., dītior fierem

Quintus :

### **Exercitātiō C**

Marcus : Utinam dīves sim.

Quintus : Sed nōn eris.

Sextus : Quid faciās, sī dīves sīs.

Marcus : Sī dīves sim, rēte habeam.

Quintus : Sed nōn eris.

Marcus : Utinam rēte habeam.

Quintus : Sed nōn habēbis.

Sextus :

Marcus : Sī . . . . ., manū ten . . .

Quintus :

Marcus : Utinam rēte manū ten . . .

Quintus :

Sextus :

Marcus : Sī . . . . ., in rīpā sed . .

Quintus :

Marcus : Utinam in rīpā sed . . .

Quintus :

Sextus :

Marcus : Sī . . . . ., piscēs vidēre poss . . .

Quintus :

Marcus : Utinam piscēs vidēre poss . . .

Quintus :

Sextus :

Marcus : Sī . . . . ., piscēs cap . . .

Quintus :

Marcus : Utinam piscēs cap . . .

Quintus :

Sextus :

Marcus : Sī . . . . ., dītior fiam.

Quintus :

### 35. DE PSEUDOLO ET COLLIBUS

Olim Pseudolus noster iter per Alpēs cum amicō quōdam faciēbat et multī collēs eīs ascendendī dēscendendique erant. Amicus Pseudolī, dum collēs ascendit, lacrimābat, sed cum collēs ascendisset et iam dēscenderet, ut mōs est hominibus, rīdēbat. Pseudolus autem,—mirābile dictū!—dum collēs ascendit, rīdēbat, sed cum collem ascendisset et iam dēscenderet, contrā mōrem hominum, lacrimābat.

Amicus tandem, cum collem quemdam ascendisset, summō in colle, “O Pseudole,” inquit, “sī ego tū fuisset (quod nōn eram), cum collem ascenderēmus, lacrimāvissem; et nunc, dum in eō est ut dēscendāmus, sī ego tū essem (quod nōn sum), nunc rīdērem.”

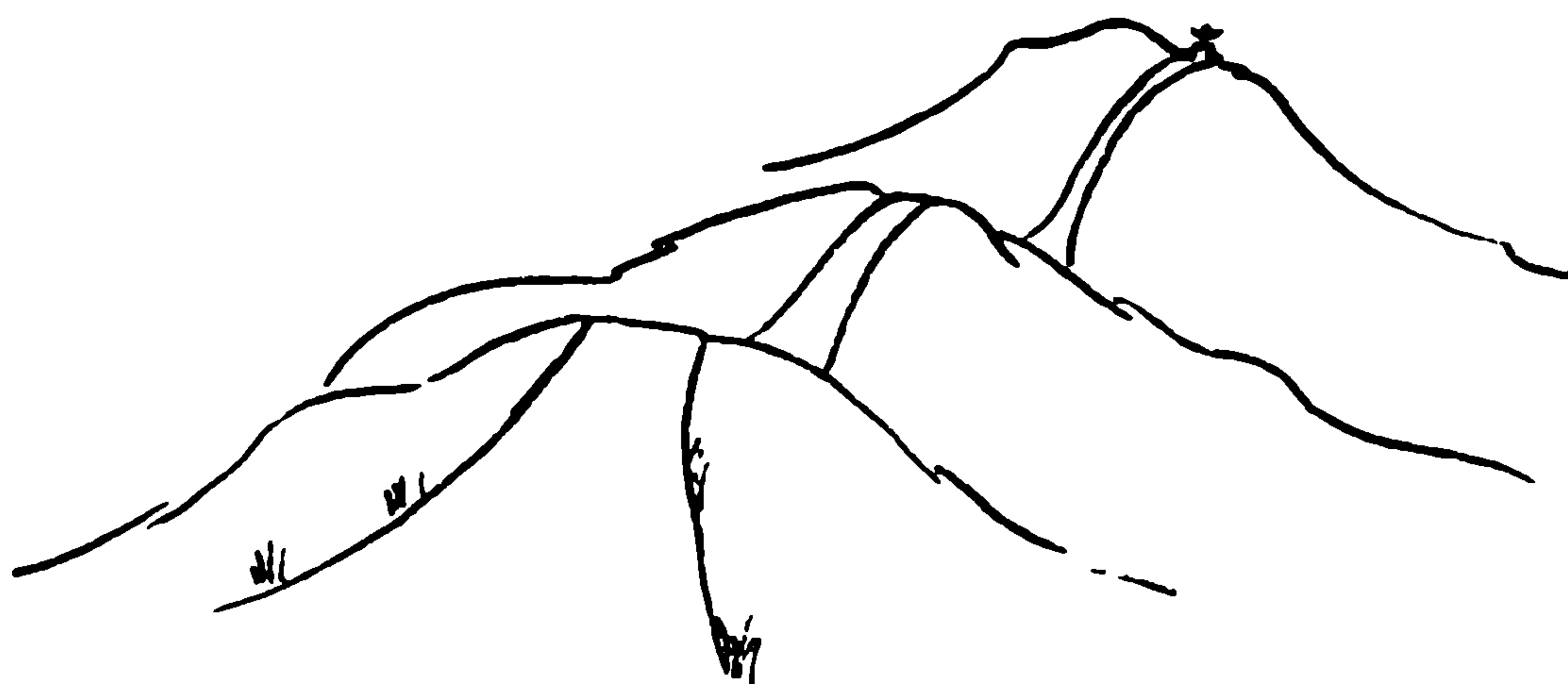
Quibus auditis, Pseudolus, “Vereor,” respondit, “nē insānus sis. Namque sī tū ego fuissēs (et dīs grātiās agō quod nōn erās), cum collem ascenderēmus, tū idem fēcissēs quod ego fēcī; et nunc, dum in eō est ut dēscendāmus, sī tū ego essēs (et dīs grātiās agō quod nōn es), tū idem facerēs quod ego faciō.” Quibus dictis, Pseudolus quam cōpiōsissimē lacrimāre coepit.

Cuī amicus, “Dīc mihi igitur,” inquit, “cūr lacrimēs.” “Rīdeō,” respondit Pseudolus, “dum ascendō, quia putō alterum collis clivum mox mihi dēscendendum fore, et lacrimō, dum dēscendō, quia alium collem videō, quem mox mē ascendere oportēbit.”

Quibus dictis, iter perrēxit, et rīdēs collēs ascendēbat lacrimānsque dēscendēbat usque ad infinitum; nam tam cōpiōsē rīdēbat lacrimābatque ut viam perderet. Nēmō igitur eum posteā vīdit, neque dubium est quīn in Alpibus mortuus sub colle quōdam sepultus sit. Sunt autem quī dīcant eum



etiam nunc collēs ascendere et dēscendere. Et praetereā, si tū in Alpēs iter faciās (et spērō tē ōlim in Alpēs iter factūrum esse), intempestā nocte risūs alicūius collem ascendentis singultūsque dēscendentis audire possis.



## 36. JULIUS CAESAR

### SCAENA PRIMA

*(Intempestā nocte. In villā vātis cūiusdam.)*

Vātēs : Quam tenēbricōsa est nox ! Tālis est tempestās ut animae ex sepulcris surgere possint.

*(Audītur tonitrus. Intrat servus.)*

Servus : Salvē, domine. Multa prōdigia vidī.

Vātēs : Dic mihi igitur quae videris.

Servus : Ignem ē caelō cadentem vidī.

Vātēs : Nōn dubium est quīn deī irāscantur.

*(Iterum audītur tonitrus. Intrat servus secundus.)*

Servus Secundus : Salvē, domine. Plūra prōdigia vidī.

Vātēs : Dic mihi igitur quae videris.

Servus Secundus : Leōnem vidī in Capitōliō vagantem, quī omnēs fugābat. Equum album vidī in Tiberi natantem.

*(Iterum audītur tonitrus. Intrat servus tertius.)*

Servus Tertius : Salvē, domine. Plūrima prōdigia vidī. Animās vidī in viīs volantēs. Virōs in caelō vidī, quī ita inter sē pugnābant ut sanguine in Capitōlium plueret. Comētam maximum vidī, quī tōtam urbem illustrābat.

Vātēs : Pauperibus morientibus comētae nōn lūcent. In eō est igitur ut nōbilis quīdam moriātur. Iam victimam sacrificāvi. Extā eius mihi inspicienda sunt, ut videam quis sit hīc nōbilis. Ecce, cor animālis invenire nōn possum. Haud dubium est quīn Caesar ipse moritūrus sit. Quindecim lapidēs in ventre invēnī. Haec significant, ut mihi vidētur, Caesarem Idibus Martiis interfectum irī. Oportet mē eum monēre ut caveat. Nihil mihi obstābit quōminus Caesarem moneam.



## SCAENA SECUNDA

(*In hortō Brūtī. Māne ante lūcem.*)

Brūtus : (*sēcum loquitur.*) Quota est vigilia? Intellegere nōn possum quandō ventūra sit Aurōra. Caesar, ut mihi vidētur, rex fieri vult. Equidem nōn flocci faciō. Nam amicus mihi est, quem amō. Populus autem rēgēs semper ōdit. Sed quō modō eum prohibēbō? Num morte? Num amicus mihi interficiendus est? (*Intrat Cassius.*)

Cassius : Salvē, Brūte. Cūr mediā nocte in hortō ambulās?

Brūtus : Mēns mihi maximē turbātur.

Cassius : Nescis, Brūte, quālis sis. Nam omnēs dicunt tē tālem esse quālis rempublicam servāre possis, omnēs scīlicet nisi superbus ille Caesar.

Brūtus : Timeō nē Caesar rex fieri velit.

Cassius : Timēsne? Fortasse igitur eum rēgem fieri nōn vis?

Brūtus : Quamquam amicus mihi est, nōlō.

Cassius : Neque ego volō. Nōs omnēs haud minus liberī nātī sumus quam ille. Cūr igitur ab eō regēmur? Neque plūs neque minus quam nōs potest. Mortālis nātus est, sicut nōs. Ubi dis placuerit, sicut nōs moriētur.

Brūtus : Num tū quoque dē morte eius cōgitās?

Cassius : Quidnī? Haud dubium est quīn Caesar nōbīs interficiendus sit. Ecce adsunt quī nōbīs auxilium dent.

(*Intrant Metellus, Casca, Cinna.*)

Salvēte, amici.

Metellus, Casca, Cinna : Coniūrāvimus nōs Caesarem interfectūrōs esse.

Metellus : Idibus Martiis Caesarem interficiēmus.

Cassius : Ubi eum interficiēmus?



- Casca : In Capitōliō, prope statuatn Pompēiī. Hic enim supplicēs audire solet.
- Brūtus : (*sēcum*) Quis est hic Caesar, qui supplicēs audit, sicut rex?
- Cassius : Ubi tū stābis, Cinna ?
- Cinna : A sinistrā Caesaris stābō.
- Casca : Et ego ā dextrā.
- Cassius : Et quid erit signum necis ēius ?
- Metellus : Ego supplex Caesarem precābor ut frātrem meum, quem in exsilium expulit, revocet.
- Brūtus : Sed quid dē vulgō, quod Caesarem amat ?
- Cassius : Mōbile est vulgus. Sī Pompēium apud eōs laudāverimus, Caesaris celeriter obliviscentur.
- Brūtus : Et quid sī quis eum monuerit ?
- Cassius : Nēmō eum monēre potest ; namque nēmō dē coniūrātiōne nostrā audivit, nisi tū, Brūte. Et tū, quid crās faciēs ?
- Brūtus : Ego ? Ego vulnus mortiferum tyrannō inferam.

## SCAENA TERTIA

*(Idibus Martiīs. In Capitōliō, prope statuatn Pompēiī. Adsunt vātēs et vulgus maximum. Intrat Cassius.)*

- Cassius : (*cīvī cuiādam*) Salvē, amice. Quis es ?
- Cīvis Primus : Pistor sum.
- Cassius : Et tū, amice ?
- Cīvis Secundus : Medicus sum.
- Cassius : Medicumne dicis ? Quid hic facitis ?
- Cīvis Secundus : Nōlī irāscī, optime. Hūc advēnimus, ut Caesarem spectāre possēmus.
- Cassius : O lapidēs, qui nihil sentire potestis ! Cūr Caesarem spectāre vultis ? Num Caesar vōs amat ? Num Caesar vōbis umquam beneficium praebuit ? Quid dē Pompēiō illō, quem ōlim

tōtum diem expectābātis? Et nunc Caesarem spectāre vultis, quī Pompēium interfēcit.

*(Intrant Caesar, Brūtus, Metellus, Casca, Cinna, Senātōrēs.)*

Vātēs : Caesar ! Cavē, Caesar !

Caesar : Tacēte, omnēs. Quis mē vocat ?

Vātēs : Ego tē vocō. Adsunt Idūs Martiae, Caesar. Cavē, igitur.

Caesar : Quis es tū, senex ?

Vātēs : Vātēs sum, quī futūra videō.

Caesar : At ego Caesar sum, quī futūra faciō. Abdūcite senem, militēs. *(In sellā sedet prope statuam Pompēiī.)* Quis mē aliquid rogāre vult ?

Metellus : O Caesar optime maxime, mē ad pedēs tuōs iaciō.

Caesar : Nōlī, Metelle, sic mē precārī. Nōn sum deus.

Metellus : Precor tē, Caesar, ut frātre meum revocēs.

Brūtus : Ego quoque tē precor.

Cassius : Et ego.

Cinna : O Caesar . . .

*(Omnēs Caesarem gladiīs percutiunt. Ultimus percutit Brūtus.)*

Caesar : Et tū, Brūte !

Cinna : Liberātī sumus, amīcī ! Tyrannus mortuus est.

Cīvis Secundus : Ad arma, amīcī. Coniūrātī Caesarem nostrum necāvērunt.

*(In eō est ut bellum cīvile oriātur. Intrat Antōnius.)*

Antōnius : Tacēte, omnēs. Gladiōs repōnite. Sed quid videō? Num Caesarem mortuum? Quis ei tot vulnera intulit ?

Cīvis Primus : Brūtus.

Cīvis Secundus : Cassius.

Vulgus : Coniūrātī. Necēmus eōs omnēs ad ūnum.

Antōnius : Tacēte, Quiritēs. Caesar ipse mortuus vōs ut taceātis precātur. Fortasse, Brūte, tū quī tam



honestus es, Caesare necātō mē quoque interficere vīs. Fortasse autem, tot cīvibus praesentibus, mē interficere nōn audēs.

*(Exeunt coniūrātī.)*

Abite domum, amici. Postea apud vōs orātiōnem habēbō ; nunc autem cum Caesare sōlō, quamquam mortuō, loquī volō.

*(Exit vulgus.)*

O Caesar, veniam mihi dā, quī tam sērō advēnī. Hīc cecidit nōbilissimus homō quī umquam vixit. Sed aliī quoque cadent. Nam tantum bellum cīvile oriētur, tantum sanguinis effluet ut etiam mātres infantibus suis necātis rideant.

*(Intrant servi, quī cadāver Caesaris ē Capitōliō portant.)*

Sic mortis Caesaris coniūrātōs ulcīscar.



**PARS SECUNDA**  
**CARMINA LATINA**

## CARMINA LATINA

### ā Gāiō Valeriō Catullō scripta

Gāius Valerius Catullus ante Christum annō octōgēsimō quartō Verōnae nātus est. Pater ēius dīves erat, et Catullus, postquam togam virilem sumpsit, Rōmam migrāvit, ut inter iuvenēs quōsdam divitēs viveret. Hic vitam laetam et sēcūram agēbat, et inter amicōs Cicerōnem, Caesarem, Fabulum, Lesbiam numerābat. Mox autem frāter ēius mortuus est, Lesbia, quam vehementer amābat, eum dēseruit, ipse fortasse omnem pecūniam perdidit. Maestus igitur et pauper ad Bithŷniam prōvinciam abivit, ubi frātris sepulcrum vīdit, sed pauperior Rōmam rediit. Multa et pulchra et lepida carmina scripsit. Annō ante Christum quinquāgēsimō quartō mortuus est.

### 1

Cēnābis bene, mī Fabulle, apud mē  
 paucis, sī tibi dī favent, diēbus,  
 sī tēcum attuleris bonam atque magnam  
 cēnam, nōn sine candidā puellā  
 6 et vinō et sale et omnibus cachinnīs.  
 haec sī, inquam, attuleris, venuste noster,  
 cēnābis bene : nam tuī Catullī  
 plēnus sacculus est arāneārum.  
 sed contrā accipiēs merōs amōrēs  
 10 seu quid suāviūs ēlegantiusve est :  
 nam unguentum dabo, quod meae puellae  
 dōnārunt Venerēs Cupīdinēsque,  
 quod tū cum olfaciēs, deōs rogābis,  
 tōtum ut tē faciant, Fabulle, nāsum.

*Notā:* 2. “ favent tibi ” significat “ amant tē.”

4. “ candida ” significat “ pulchra.”

5. “ sal-salis (m) ” : In maris aquā salem invenimus sed nōn in aquā flūminum. Sī salem in cibum pōnis, cibus bene sapit ; sī salem, ut ita dicāmus, cum verbis miscēs, verba lepida et iocōsa fiunt.

“ cachinnus-ī (m) ” : Sī cachinnum tollis, magnā vōce rīdēs.

6. “ venustus-a-um ” significat “ is quī rēs pulchrās et lepidās amat.”

8. “ sacculus-ī (m) ” est parvus saccus, in quō pecūniam custōdimus.

“ arānea -ae (f) ” est quasi villa, quam parvum animal in angulis ex filis tenuissimis aedificat, ut muscās capiat.

9. “ merus-a-um ” : Vinum merum aquam nōn continet ; amor merus odium nōn continet. Catullus tam pauper est ut vinum merum amicis dare nōn possit. Dabit igitur merōs amōrēs.

10. “ suavis-is-e ” significat “ dulcis.”

11. “ unguentum-ī (n) ” : Rōmānī unguentum in corpus pōnēbant, quō bene olērent, nōs in capillōs.

12. “ dōnō-āre-āvi-ātus-ātūrus ” significat “ dō.”

“ dōnārunt ” significat “ dōnāvērunt.”

“ Venus ” erat dea amōris et “ Cupīdō ” filius ēius. “ Venerēs Cupīdinēsque ” significat “ omnēs deī amōris.”



## 2

Lūgēte, ō Venerēs Cupīdinēsque,  
 passer mortuus est meae puellae,  
 passer, dēliciae meae puellae,  
 quem plūs illa oculis suis amābat :  
 5 nam mellitus erat suamque nōrat  
 ipsam tam bene quam puella mātrem.  
 nec sēsē ā gremiō illius movēbat,  
 sed circumsiliēns modo hūc modo illūc  
 ad sōlam dominam usque pīpilābat.  
 10 quī nunc it per iter tenēbricōsum  
 illūc, unde negant redīre quemquam.  
 at vōbīs male sit, malae tenebrae  
 Orcī, quae omnia bella dēvorātis :  
 tam bellum mihi passerem abstulistis.  
 15 vae factum male ! vae miselle passer !  
 tuā nunc operā meae puellae  
 flendō turgidulī rubent ocellī.

- Notā :*
1. “ lūgēō-ēre-lūxī- — - — ” est contrārium  
“ rīdeō.”
  2. “ passer-eris (m) ” est parva avis, quae in urbibus  
habitat.
  5. “ mellitus-a-um ” significat “ dulcis, sicut mel.”  
“ nōrat ” est “ nōverat”, quod significat “ cog-  
nōverat.”
  6. “ suam ipsam ” significat “ dominam suam.”
  7. “ gremium-iī (n) ” : Puerulīs in māttris gremiō  
sedēre placet.
  8. “ circumsiliō-ire ” significat “ saliō circum.”  
“ modo hūc modo illūc ” significat “ nunc ad hunc  
locum, nunc ad illum.”
  9. “ usque ” hīc significat “ semper.”  
“ pīpilō-āre-āvī ” : Homō loquitur, passer pīpilat.

11. “ nōn quisquam ” significat “ nēmō.” Quid dicit poēta ille noster? Nōne “ that undiscovered country from whose bourn no traveller returns ”?
12. “ male sit vōbis ” : “ Utinam aliquid malī vōbis accidat.”
13. “ Orcus-ī (m) ” est locus ubi habitant mortuī.  
“ bellus-a-um ” significat “ pulcher”, sicut Gallicē.
15. “ vae ” significat “ ēheu ! ”  
“ misellus-a-um ” significat “ miser et parvus.”
16. “ tuā operā ” : Tū effēcistī ut rubērent ocelli.
17. “ fleō-ēre-flēvī-flētus-flētūrus ” significat “ lacrimō.”  
“ turgidulus-a-um ” significat “ turgidus et parvus.” Frōns, sī lapide pulsātur, turgidus fit.  
Oculi turgidī fiunt sī nimis lacrimāmus.  
“ rubeō-ēre-rubui- — ” significat “ ruber fiō.”  
Eheu ! omnia, ut vidētur, et passer et puella et oculi parvī sunt.

## 3

Disertissime Rōmulī nepōtum,  
quot sunt quotque fuēre, Marce Tullī,  
quotque post aliīs erunt in annīs,  
grātiās tibi maximās Catullus  
5 agit, pessimus omnium poēta,  
tantō pessimus omnium poēta  
quantō tū optīnus omnium patrōnus.

- Notā :* 1. “ disertus-a-um ” significat “ ēloquēns ” vel “ is quī bonās et longās ōrātiōnēs habet.”  
“ nepōtēs ” est contrārium “ māiōrēs.” Rōmulus erat primus rex Rōmānōrum. Itaque Rōmulī nepōtēs sunt Rōmānī.
2. “ fuēre ” : “ fuērunt ”, ut saepe dicunt poētae.  
“ Marce Tullī ” : Marcus Tullius Cicerō ōrātor.
  7. “ patrōnus-ī (m) ” : Is, quī lēgēs bene scit et causās apud praetōrem dīcit, patrōnus est.



## 4

Multās per gentēs et multa per aequora vectus  
 adveniō hās miserās, frāter, ad inferiās,  
 ut tē postrēmō dōnārem mūnere mortis  
 et mūtā nēquiquam alloquerer cinerem.  
 5 quandoquidem fortūna mihi tētē abstulit ipsum,  
 heu miser indignē frāter adempte mihi,  
 nunc tamen intereā haec priscō quae mōre parentum  
 trādita sunt tristī mūnere ad inferiās,  
 accipe frāternō multum mānantia flētū,  
 10 atque in perpetuum, frāter, avē atque valē.

- Notā :*
1. “ gēns-gentis (f) ” significat “ populus.”  
 “ aequor-oris (n) ” significat “ mare.”
  2. “ inferiae-ārum (f) ” : Inferiās alicuī damus ubi  
 cadāver eius sepelimus.
  3. “ mūnus-eris (n) ” hīc significat “ dōnum.”  
 “ dōnō tē mūnere ” significat “ dō tibi mūnus.”
  4. “ mūtus-a-um ” est is, quī loquī nōn potest.  
 “ cinis-cineris (f) ” : Id, quod relictum est postquam  
 ignem exstinximus, cinis est.
  5. “ quandoquidem ” significat “ quia ” vel “ cum.”
  6. “ adimō - ere - adēmī - ademetus - ūrus ” significat  
 “ auferō.”  
 “ indignē ” : Frāter indignē ademptus est quia  
 Catullus nōn meruit ut frāter auferretur.
  7. “ priscus-a-um ” significat “ antīquus.”
  8. “ trādō-ere-trādidī-trāditus-trāditūrus ” : Māiōrēs  
 nostrī bona et mōrēs suōs nōbīs trādidērunt.  
 “ mūnus ” in hōc versū significat nōn “ dōnum ” sed  
 “ id quod oportet nōs facere.”
  9. “ frāternus-a-um ” est adiectivum cūius nōmen est  
 “ frāter.”  
 “ mānō-āre-āvī ” : Lacrimae ex oculis lentē mānant.  
 “ flētus-ūs (m) ” significat “ lacrimae.”
  10. “ in perpetuum ” significat “ ad infīnitum.”  
 “ avē ” significat “ salvē.” Rōmānī sic mortuōs  
 salūtāre solēbant.



## 5

- Chommoda dicēbat, sī quandō commoda vellet  
dicere, et insidiās Arrius hīnsidiās,  
et tum mīrificē spērābat sē esse locūtum,  
cum quantum poterat dīxerat hīnsidiās.  
5 crēdō, sīc māter, sīc Līber avunculus ēius,  
sīc māternus avus dīxerat atque avia.  
hōc missō in Syriam requiērant omnibus aurēs :  
audībant eadem haec lēniter et leviter,  
nec sibi postillā metuēbant tālia verba,  
10 cum subitō adfertur nuntius horribilis,  
Ioniōs fluctūs, postquam illūc Arrius isset,  
iam nōn Ioniōs esse, sed Hioniōs.

- Notā :* 1. “ commodum-ī (n) ” est id quod mihi placet et ūtile est.  
“ sī quandō ” significat “ quāndocumque.”  
2. “ insidiae-ārum (f) ” : Hostēs in insidiis sē cēlant, ut nōs ex imprōvisō adgrediantur.  
3. “ mīrificē ” significat “ mīrābiliter.”  
4. “ quantum poterat dīxerat ” significat “ quam maximā vōce dīxerat.”  
5. “ avunculus-ī (m) ” est “ mātris frāter.”  
6. “ māternus avus ” est “ mātris pater.”  
“ avia-ae (f) ” est “ mātris vel patris māter.”  
7. “ requiēscō-ere-requiēvi- — -requiētūrus ” est contrārium “ expergīscor.” Quid significant litterae illae R.I.P. in sepulcris scriptae?  
“ omnibus aurēs ” significat “ omnium aurēs.”  
8. “ lēniter et leviter ” : parvā vōce et sine *h*.  
9. “ postillā ” significat “ postea.”  
“ metuō-ere-metui ” significat “ timeō.”  
10. “ nuntius-ī (m) ” significat “ is quī nōbīs expōnit quae in aliis locis acciderint.” In hōc versū, ut saepe, significat “ ea quae nuntiat.”  
“ horribilis-is-e ” : Sī quid horribile vidēmus, ita timēmus ut capillī in capite ērectī stent. Hīc autem nuntius aliō modō *h*-orribilis est.

## CARMINA LATINA

### ā Marcō Valeriō Martiāli scripta

Marcus Valerius Martiālis in Hispāniā annō post Christum quadrāgēsimō tertiō nātus est. Rōmam migrāvit ubi trīgintā quinque annōs manēbat. Satis dīves erat et imperātōrēs Rōmānī ei multōs honōrēs dedērunt. Plūrima carmina scripsit, quae omnia et parva et lepida sunt : nōnnulla multum salem continent. Haec carmina Epigrammata nōminantur. Tandem Rōmā in Hispāniam rediit ubi mortem obīvit.

#### 1

Nōn amo tē, Sabidī, nec possum dīcere quārē :  
hoc tantum possum dīcere : nōn amo tē.

#### 2

Iūrat capillōs esse, quōs ēmit, suōs  
Fabulla : numquid illa, Paule, pēierat ?

*Notā :* 1. “ iūrō-āre ” significat “ per deōs immortālēs dīcō.”  
2. “ numquid ” significat “ -ne? ”  
“ pēierō-āre ” significat “ iūrō id quod falsum est  
vērū esse.”

#### 3

Thāis habet nigrōs, niveōs Laecānia dentēs.  
Quae ratiō est ? Emptōs haec habet, illa suōs.

*Notā :* 1. “ niveus-a-um ” significat “ albus, sicut nix.”  
2. “ quae ratiō est? ” significat “ cūr? ”



## 4

- Issa est passere nēquior Catullī,  
 Issa est pūrior ōsculō columbae,  
 Issa est blandior omnibus puellis,  
 Issa est cārior Indicis lapillis,  
 5 Issa est dēliciae catella Publi.  
 hanc tū, sī queritur, loquī putābis ;  
 sentit tristitiamque gaudiumque,  
 collō nixa cubat capitque somnōs,  
 ut suspīria nulla sentiantur.  
 10 hanc, nē lux rapiat suprēma tōtam,  
 pictā Publius exprimit tabellā,  
 in quā tam similem vidēbis Issam,  
 ut sit tam similis sibī nec ipsa.  
 Issam dēnique pōne cum tabellā :  
 15 aut utramque putābis esse vērā,  
 aut utramque putābis esse pictā.

- Notā :* 1. “ nēquam-nēquam-nēquam ” significat “ malus.”  
 Comparātivus et Superlātivus modus—  
 “ nēquior-nēquissimus.”
2. “ columba-ae (f) ” est avis pācis, quae rārum  
 olivae ōre portat.
3. “ blandus-a-um ” : Blanda puella est ea, quae  
 efficit ut nōs eam amēmus.
4. “ cārus-a-um ” est contrārium “ vīlis.”  
 “ Indicī lapillī ” : Hī sunt parvī lapidēs et rubrī,  
 quī in Indiā inveniuntur. Cārissimī sunt.
5. “ catella-ae (f) ” significat “ parva canis.”
6. “ queror-ī-questus sum ” : Sī cēna mihi nōn placet,  
 mātī queror. Sī quid in dēversōriō mihi nōn  
 placet, caupōnī queror.
7. “ sentiō-īre-sēnsī-sēnsus-sēnsūrus ” significat “ in-  
 tellegō ea quae patior. Exemplī grātiā, sī quis  
 mē pulsat, dolōrem sentiō.  
 “ tristitia-ae (f) ” est nōmen cūius adiectivum est  
 “ tristis.”



- “ gaudium-ii (n) ” est contrarium “ tristitia.” Si gaudium sentiō, vel gaudeō, rideō. Quid faciō si tristitiam sentiō?
8. “ nitor-i-nixus sum ” : Senex, quī vix ambulāre potest, baculum portat, quō nītitur. Notā bene “ nitor ” cum Ablātivō Cāsū.
- “ cubō-āre-cubui- — -cubitūrus ” significat “ iaceō.” In cubiculō cubāmus.
9. “ suspīrium-ii (n) ” : Ubi tristī vōce dicimus “ ah ! ” suspīrium trahimus.
10. “ suprēmus-a-um ” significat “ ultimus.”  
“ suprēma lux ” hīc significat “ mors.”
11. “ pingō - ere - pinxi - pictus - pictūrus ” significat “ colōribus dēscribō.”  
“ tabella-ae (f) ” significat “ parva tabula.”  
“ pictā exprimō tabellā ” significat “ pingō.”
12. “ similis-is-e ” : Asinus equō similis est, sed longiōrēs habet aurēs. Nisi tū intellegis, tū asinō similis es.
13. Cui igitur similis est?
14. “ dēnique ” significat “ tandem.”

## 5

Cūr nōn mitto meōs tibi, Pontiliāne, libellōs ?  
Nē mihi tū mittās, Pontiliāne, tuōs.

## 6

Ohē, iam satis est, ohē, libelle,  
Iam pervēnimus usque ad umbilicōs . . .

*Notā :* 2. “ umbilicus-i (m) ” : Librī Rōmānī nōn similēs nostrīs erant, sed charta in baculō volvēbātur. Erat igitur volūmen. Hoc baculum umbilicus nōminātur. Rōmānus, dum legit, volūmen volvēbat, et ubi ad umbilicum vēnit librum iam perlēgit.

**PARS TERTIA**  
**EXERCITATIONES**





### Exercitātiōnēs 1 & 2

#### 1. Put into the Passive :—

- i. mittit, vēlō, tangitis, laudās, terrent, custōdimus, tollit, faciunt, capiō, sālās.
- ii. pulsābis, capient, mordēbō, iaciet, cruciābunt. reprehendet, caedētis, portābit, faciēmus, servābunt,
- iii. retinēbam, emēbant, omittēbās, liberābāmus, dētegēbat, vidēbātis, rapiēbant, vulnerābāmus, sepeliēbās, faciēbam.

#### 2. Give the Comparative and Superlative of :—

miser, facile, frigidus, multus, ferox, malus-lentus, magnopere, mirābilis, bene.

#### 3. Put into the Passive :—

- i. Discipulī magistrum nōn amant.
- ii. Pater mē saepe baculō longō pulsat.
- iii. Puerī librōs semper perdunt.
- iv. Magistri tē nōn pulsābunt.
- v. Cīvis nōs ad rēgem dūcet.
- vi. Num tria ōva cōsūmēs ?
- vii. Mūrum digitis sordidis tangēbant.
- viii. Vigil vōs ad carcerem mittēbat.
- ix. Medicus omnēs medicinā interficiēbat.
- x. Mediā nocte sōlem nōn vidēbis.

#### 4. Join the following sentences, using *antequam* :—

- i. Nāvem ascendit : Carthāginem nāvigāvit.
- ii. Mūs fūnem rōsit : fēlēs mūrem ēdit.
- iii. Decem ōva cōsumpsit : ex ventre labōrāvit.
- iv. Ad Circum Maximum ivērunt : Imperātōrem vidērunt.
- v. Tria mīlia passuum ambulāvērunt : fessī erant.

5. *Verte Latīnē* :—

we like eating, at five o'clock, to the ground, from Rome, the middle of the river, for ten miles, at length, nonetheless, to-day, on the right.

## 6. Give the Principal Parts of :—

tangō, iaciō, vulnerō, terreō, mittō, videō, sãnō, emō, aperiō, dō.

## 7. Give the Ablative Singular and the Accusative Plural of :—

ingēns animal, ille diēs, lux mǎior, dulce gaudium, manus sinistra, longus labor, canis saevus, deus immortālis, tristis nox, dolor maximus.

8. Put after *Videō* :—

- i. Rex in forō sedet.
- ii. Arborēs in silvā cadunt.
- iii. Capillī Marcī in capite crēscunt.
- iv. Flūmen inter ripās fluit.
- v. Lupus infantēs dēvorat.

### Exercitātiōnēs 3 & 4

## 1. Put into the Passive :—

- i. dēbuērunt, vulnerāvistī, sepelīvimus, laudāvī, tetigistis, custōdiit, cēpimus, fēcit, dēcerpsērunt, dedit.
- ii. numerāverimus, dederint, cōnsumpserit, dēcēperitis, perfēcerint, pulsāverō, ēmerit, expenderō, terruerimus, vendiderint.
- iii. frēgerat, sepelīverāmus, sustulerās, fēcera, cēperātis, exhauserat, perfēcera, sãnāverāmus, dēcēpera, tetigerātis.

## 2. Give the Present Infinitive Passive of :—

amō, mordeō, dūcō, videō, capiō, liberō, faciō, emō, audiō, caedō.



3. Put into the Passive :—

- i. Vigilēs fūrēs cēpērunt.
- ii. Cum canis mē viderit, mē mordēbit.
- iii. Antequam discipulum pulsāvit, magister eum cēperat.
- iv. Puerī lapidēs manibus sustulērunt.
- v. Marcus decem pōma cōsumpsit.
- vi. Caupō frūgēs ēmit.
- vii. Servus urnam ad magistrātum adportāvit.
- viii. Antequam gladiātor rētiārium necāvit, rētiārius gladiātōrem dēcēperat.
- ix. Baculum puerōs vehementer cecidit.
- x. Cum hunc librum recitāverō, aliam fābulam tibi narrābō.

4. Join the following sentences, using *cum* :—

- i. Ad lūdum veniēmus : pēnsu magistrō dabimus.
- ii. Iussa perficiam : in sellā sedēbō.
- iii. Pseudolus ad forum adveniet : cīvēs dēcipiet.
- iv. Cīvēs medicīnam bibent : nōn sānābuntur.
- v. Medicus ā cīvibus fugābitur : maestus erit.

5. *Verte Latīnē* :—

at once, recently, for ten hours, in the middle of the night, do not shout (pl.), behind the tree, partly, to what place ?, bravely, in fact.

6. Give the Principal Parts of :—

vulnerō, frangō, mordeō, dūcō, eō, tollō, iaceō, sepeliō, dicō, mittō.

7. Give the Genitive Singular and the Nominative Plural of :—

magister inimicus, dives quidam, clāmor horribilis, baculum breve, urbs nostra, māior pars, diēs longus, medicīna optima, pānis coctus, hoc dēversōrium.



*Aliter Latīnē :—*

- i. Oportet discipulōs magistris pārēre.
- ii. Sextus altior est quam Octāvus.
- iii. Haec medicīna mihi nōn placet.
- iv. Digitī tuī sordidiōrēs sunt quam digitī mei.
- v. Ad cubiculum ire pueris nōn placet.

### **Exercitātiōnēs 5**

1. Put into (*a*) the Future, (*b*) the Imperfect, and (*c*) the Perfect :—  
 opīnāris, sequitur, prōgrediuntur, suspicāmur, regrederis, expergīscor, comitāminī, proficīscuntur, mīror, colloqueris.
2. Give the other Degrees of Comparison of :—  
 longissimē, facilior, magis, optimus, malus, callidior, minus, multus, celeriter, dīves.
3. Put into the Passive :—  
  - i. Sī pater tē cēperit, tē baculō longō pulsābit.
  - ii. Cum vigilēs nōs viderint, nōs ad carcerem dūcent.
  - iii. Sī piscēs captāverimus, eōs domum comportābimus.
  - iv. Sī comitēs mē viderint, mē in flūmen iacent.
  - v. Antequam mē sepelivērunt, cadāver meum ad sepulcrum portāverant.
  - vi. Antequam porculum cēpī, porculum diū fugāveram.
  - vii. Leō duōs Christiānōs paene ēderat, antequam custōdēs eum interfēcērunt.
  - viii. Pseudolum nōn viderātis, antequam hunc librum accēpistis.
  - ix. Magister tē manibus rapuerat, antequam tē iugulāvit.
  - x. Cum hās sententiās scripserō, librum claudam.
4. Join the following sentences, using *quī-quae-quod* :—  
  - i. Pseudolus cōnsilia semper capit : Pseudolus aliōs dēcipere vult.

- ii. Pseudolus ad dēversōrium prōgressus est : in dēversōriō cōnsēdit.
- iii. Pseudolus duōs aliōs fūrēs comitābātur : ā fūribus mirābilia somnia vīsa sunt.
- iv. Medicus medicīnam cīvibus vendit : medicīnam mirantur.
- v. Pseudolus celeriter hinc profectus est : Pseudolum medicus secūtus erat.

5. *Verte Latīnē* :—

almost, not enough wine, the other, in the rear, for four nights, without doubt, in my opinion, as many as possible, near the bridge, by now.

6. Give the Principal Parts of :—

videor, cōsistō, expergiscor, interficiō, sum, occidō, comitor, iubeō, regredior, volō.

7. Give the Dative Singular and the Genitive Plural of :—

puer optimus, somnium mirābile, summus mōns, ille magistrātus, callidius cōnsilium, comes noster, magister stultissimus, senex benignus, ingēns bōs, omne litus.

8. *Quid est contrārium* ? :—

- pāreō, numquam, ultimus, lacrimō, niger, lentus, expergiscor, nox, mare, pater.

### Exercitātiōnēs 6

1. Put into (a) the Perfect, (b) the Future Perfect, and (c) the Pluperfect :—

- i. aedificās, cōgō, cognōscunt, discitis, condit, auferimus, exit, possunt, sonat, expōnō.
- ii. sequimur, mentiris, venditur, interficimini, franguntur, iūror, moritur, colliguntur, cēlāris, mittimini.



2. Give the Present Imperative Singular of :—

exeō, effundō, expergiscor, incipiō, comitor, parcō,  
regredior, iubeō, quaerō, trahō.

3. Put into the Active :—

- i. A mātrem meā semper fovēbar.
- ii. A quō magister noster interficiētur ?
- iii. Remus ā Rōmulō gladiō necātus est.
- iv. Gemini ā lupā lambēbantur.
- v. Numitor ab Amūliō ex agris suis expulsus erat.
- vi. Fructūs ā latrōne manibus dēcerpti sunt.
- vii. Omnis pecūnia ā fūre ablāta erat.
- viii. Cum omnis cibus ā nōbis cōsumptus erit, mūrēs edentur.
- ix. Postquam ovēs ā pāstōre coctae sunt, pāstor ā rēge reprehēnsus est.
- x. Sī captivus ā vōbis interfectus erit, haec vōbis ā mē dabuntur.

4. *Aliter Latīnē* :—

- i. Anulum capere nōlō.
- ii. Necesse est nōbis māne proficisci.
- iii. Hīc est liber Marcī et Marcī digitī sordidī sunt.
- iv. Cibus edam et ad cubiculum ibō.
- v. Carthāginem nāvigāvimus. Dēinde Rōmam regressi sumus.

5. *Verte Latīnē* :—

I need money, through the sky, at five o'clock, both old men, one by one, 22nd May, scarcely, surely not ?, at the same time, over my head.

6. Give the Principal Parts of :—

mentior, expōnō, fugō, agō, expellō, auferō, prōgredior,  
mорий, ēducō, inveniō.



7. Give the Accusative Singular and the Dative Plural of :—  
aliud prōdigium, magna vox, longum iter, pāstor  
pessimus, uxor mea, ovis nigra, dēns albus, frāter māior,  
locus dēsertus, breve tempus.
8. What do the following words come from ? :—  
sublātus, fierī, reprehēnsus, mūrō, volātis, eris, faciem, ī,  
experrectus, plūs.

### Exercitātiōnēs 7 & 8

1. Put into the Present Subjunctive :—  
surgunt, amās, dicit, capimus, potestis, vīs, abeunt, ōrō,  
facis, respondētis, venit, imperant, dūcimus, audīs,  
purgat, nōn vult, dēpōnimus, iacitis, sepelīmus, eō.
2. Put into the Imperfect Subjunctive :—  
tangō, cantant, frangitis, tacēs, tollimus, perdit,  
scribunt, sumus, expellis, volumus, facimus, iacētis,  
exclāmat, complent, dēbeō, quaeritis, invenit, agimus,  
sinitis, lavant.
3. *Aliter Latīnē* :—  
i. Pater filium tacēre iubet.  
ii. Pater filium tacēre iussit.  
iii. Servum urnam aquā complēre iubēbō.  
iv. Magister puerōs pēnsū scribere iussit.  
v. Frāter mē librum suum tangere vetat.  
vi. Magistri semper nōs festināre iubent.  
vii. Vigil fūrēs pecūniam dēpōnere iubēbit.  
viii. Māter mē domō exire vetat.  
ix. Imperātor milītēs fortiter pugnāre iussit.  
x. Senex puerōs saxa per fenestrās iacere vetuit.
4. Put into the Passive :—  
i. Tirō scūtum polit.  
ii. Pistor pānēm optimē coxit.  
iii. Puerī saxa in flūmen iaciēbant.

iv. Androclus leōnī auxilium dederat.

v. Quintus tunicam magistrī abstulit.

5. *Verte Latīnē* :—

on the ground, early, as big as possible, for ten years,  
I myself, 15th October, in the rear, a little money,  
across the river, for nothing.

6. Give the Principal Parts of :—

accipiō, irāscor, festinō, taceō, precor, abeō, mōnstrō,  
compleō, sinō, mīror.

7. Give the Genitive Singular and the Accusative Plural of :—

scūtum grave, dominus dives, venter ēsuriēns, pīlum  
longum, pistor stultissimus, villa minor, iuvenis  
callidus, ovis alba, genū dextrum, manus sordida.

8. Put into the Past :—

- i. Mīles cīvibus imperat ut domum redeant.
- ii. Servō imperābō ut tunicam meam lavet.
- iii. Canibus imperant ut prope foculum iaceant.
- iv. Dominus gubernātōrī imperat ut nāvem bene  
gubernet.
- v. Agricola servō imperat ut vaccās sequātur.

### Exercitātiōnēs 9 & 10

1. Put into (a) the Present and (b) the Imperfect Subjunctive:—

- i. nuntiās, iacent, sinitis, cōspiciō, cōservat, ineunt,  
adestis, māvult, comprehendimus, fit.
- ii. cōnantur, mittimur, laudāris, ēgrediminī, adipiscitur,  
reportor, colloquiminī, prōgrediuntur, reprehenderis,  
custōdimur.

2. Give the Infinitive Active and Passive of :—

expellō, videō, prōmittō, faciō, caedō.

3. Join the following sentences using *ut* or *nē* :—

- i. Magister baculum rapit : puerōs caedit.
- ii. Discipulus festināvit : sērō ad ludum nōn vēnit.



- iii. Agricolaē bovēs habent : bovēs arātrum trahunt.
- iv. Anus ad rēgem vēnit : librōs eī vendidit.
- v. Medicus civēs dēcipit : pecūniam adipiscitur.
- vi. Militēs scūta gerēbant : contrā pīla hostium sē dēfendēbant.
- vii. A magistrō in lūdō retentus es : pulsātus es.
- viii. Exercitus fortiter pugnat : ab hostibus nōn vincitur.
- ix. Māne proficiscēris : quam celerrimē Ostiam perveniēs.
- x. Pāstōrēs ovēs custōdiunt : latrōnēs eās nōn fūrantur.

4. Put into the Active :—

- i. Pistor ā Pseudolō facile dēceptus est.
- ii. Māior urbs ā Rōmulō et Remō condēbātur.
- iii. Hostēs ā militibus Rōmānīs gladiīs pīlisque vulnerātī sunt.
- iv. Rēgnū Numitōris ab Amūliō ablātum erat.
- v. Ambō fūrēs somniīs mirābilibus perterritī sunt.

5. *Verte Latīnē* :—

in silence, after he died, not long afterwards, in that place, 4th April, how wonderful !, at Carthage, in the third year, we need a plan, enough bread.

6. Give the Principal Parts of :—

liberō, exhaustiō, opīnor, cōspiciō, proficiscor, cognōscō, cōgō, dēpōnō, cōspiciō, trahō.

7. Give the Ablative Singular and the Genitive Plural of :—

rex superbus, mare profundum, lacus ingēns, cōnsilium callidius, senex quīdam, mēns sāna, miles audax, urbs clārissima, bōs ūtilis, haec rēs.

8. Put into the Past :—

- i. Rōmam iter faciō ut patrem videam.
- ii. Discipulī magistrum ōrant nē pēsum sibi det.
- iii. Dominus servīs imperat ut villam purgent.
- iv. Fugiunt nē ā feris interficiantur.
- v. Puerī tacent nē pater irāscātur.



## Exercitātiōnēs 11 & 12

1. Put into (a) the Present and (b) the Imperfect Subjunctive :—

- i. capit, pulsant, venitis, dās, accēdimus, placet, extrūdō, respīrat, vult, exīmus.
- ii. sequiminī, tanguntur, moreris, aperitur, velleris, trucidor, prōgreditur, fertur, vetāmur, fallitur.

2. Put into the Past :—

- i. Dominus servis imperat ut frūgēs adportent.
- ii. Fūrēs villam intrant, ut pecūniam auferant.
- iii. Iānitor iānuam aperit, ut discipulōs malōs extrūdat.
- iv. Servus puerum comitātur, nē puer in viīs lūdat.
- v. Oportet tē statim expergiscī, nē ad lūdum sērō perveniās.

3. *Aliter Latīnē* :—

- i. Agricola ad forum ivit, ut porcum emeret.
- ii. Magister ad lūdum venit, ut discipulōs doceat.
- iii. Poēta in tablinum ivit, ut carmina scriberet.
- iv. Sellam habēs, ut sedeās.
- v. Rōmam vēnimus, ut imperātōrem vidērēmus.
- vi. Quartā hōrā ē lūdō ēgrediēmur, ut respīrēmus.
- vii. Puerī saepenumērō mentiuntur, ut magistrōs fallant.
- viii. Miles scūtum fert, ut corpus dēfendat.
- ix. Quis mē ad Circum Maximum comitābitur, ut gladiātōrēs spectēmus?
- x. Edimus ut vivāmus ; nōn vivimus ut edāmus.

4. *Explicā Latīnē* :—

amicus, accēdō, pauper, vestibulum, carmen, mentior, quaerō, iānitor, fūr, piscis.

5. *Verte Latīnē* :—

often, a few years later, after that, however, in a hoarse voice, we believe you, the man himself, I don't care a brass button for schoolmasters, another book, the other door.

6. Give the Principal Parts of :—

fallō, tangō, mordeō, prōgredior, mittō, tollō, comitor, sinō, vetō, faciō.

7. Give the Dative Singular and Nominative Plural of :—

carmen lepidum, poēta clārus, vox rauca, tantus fragor, hostis crūdēlis, flūmen altius, alter magistrātus, servus impudēns, sinistrum cornū, comes fidēlis.

8. *Aliter Latīnē* :—

- i. Oportet puerōs pauca edere.
- ii. Māter mē iussit hoc mālum ad tē portāre.
- iii. Nōn placet magistrīs fragōrem audire.
- iv. Fraxinus altior est quam abiēs.
- v. Crās necesse erit mihi Ostiam ire.

### Exercitātiōnēs 13 & 14

1. Put into (a) the Future, (b) the Imperfect, (c) the Perfect, and (d) the Future Perfect Indicative Active :—

dēbet, compōnunt, dēlectāmus, fugis, āmittitis.

Put into (a) the Future, (b) the Imperfect, (c) the Perfect, and (d) the Pluperfect Indicative Passive :—

emit, dēmōnstrant, retrahō, rogātis, faciunt.

2. Put into the Past :—

- i. Imperātor militibus imperat ut impetum celerius faciant.
- ii. Dominus servis imperat nē sordidās vestēs gerant.
- iii. Marcus amicōs vocat, ut lepidum librum eis mōnstret.



iv. Senex baculum dextrā portat, nē in viīs cadat.

v. Agricola in agrum festinat vaccae mulgendae causā.

3. *Aliter Latīnē* (using the Gerundive) :—

i. Oportet sūtōrem calceōs suere.

ii. Necesse est mihi amicōs invenīre.

iii. Oportet puerōs pedēs lavāre.

iv. Nōn dēbēs librōs quaerere.

v. Dēbēmus celeriter ē lectō surgere.

vi. Nōn oportet discipulōs crētā iacere.

vii. Gladiātor scūtum polīre dēbet.

viii. Nōn oportet canēs ossa cōsūmere.

ix. Oportet cīvēs magistrātūs plaudere.

x. Necesse est exercitui ex urbe proficīscī.

4. *Explicā Latīnē* :—

timor, caupō, cārus, vetō, asinus, vehementer, pōmum,  
rē vērā, fragor, fallō.

5. *Verte Latīnē* :—

at Rome, while we were sleeping, at three o'clock,  
15th March, to Carthage, for four miles, do not talk,  
I like sitting down, you (pl.) do not want to eat, every  
boy.

6. Give the Principal Parts of :—

adipīscor, respondeō, indūcō, sinō, morior, nāscor,  
expellō, suspicor, tollō.

7. Give the Genitive Singular and the Dative Plural of :—

opus, is, ūnus, quaedam, diēs, alterum, bōs, exercitus,  
senex, pignus.

8. *Aliter Latīnē* :—

i. Vīnum bibō, quō timōrem expellam.

ii. Caupōnī pignus dare dēbēs.

iii. Calceī aptī mihi emendī sunt.

iv. Puellae cāriōrēs sunt puerīs.

v. Virum asinum pulsāre vetuī.



### Exercitātiōnēs 15

1. Put into (*a*) the Future, (*b*) the Imperfect, (*c*) the Perfect, and (*d*) the Pluperfect Indicative :—  
obsident, potest, vincō, vastāmus, audent, trānsitis, proficisceris, morior, patiuntur, suspicātur.
2. Put into (*a*) the Present, (*b*) the Imperfect Subjunctive :—  
i. tangit, conciliātis, volumus, iubeō, iacimus, iacēmus, frangis, stātis, claudit, turbō.  
ii. sequitur, expergiscimur, morimur, prōgredimini, comitor, adipisceris, precantur, ēgredimur, opīnāris, proficiscor.
3. Put into the Past :—  
i. Lictor cīvibus imperat nē clāmōrem faciant.  
ii. Cōsul scribam mittit, quī librum adportet.  
iii. Orō tē ut pācem cum hostibus compōnās.  
iv. Māter filiō frustrā imperat ut cibum celerius edat.  
v. Rōmam imus ut senātōrēs videamus.
4. *Aliter Latīnē* (using the Gerundive) :—  
i. Cōsul prope āram stābat, ut bovem sacrificāret.  
ii. Ordinēs servāmus, quō melius pugnēmus.  
iii. Necesse erit legiōnī castra dēfendere.  
iv. Nōn oportet tē urbem obsidēre.  
v. Dēbuimus equōs vendere, ut vaccam emerēmus.
5. *Verte Latīnē* :—  
in the middle of the night, I do not like swimming,  
21st June, at home, for ten miles, in vain, early in the  
morning, from what place ?, the top of the mountain,  
as soon as.
6. Give the Principal Parts of :—  
dēliberō, fallō, vetō, vellō, audeō, noceō, sonō, vendō,  
obstō, cadō.

7. Give the Ablative Singular and the Accusative Plural of :—

āra alta, magnum animal, anus nōbilis, longum iter,  
saevus canis, dextrum genū, hīc exercitus, minor  
clādēs, clārum cognōmen, rēgālis honōs.

8. *Aliter Latīnē* :—

- i. explōrābō, vetābis, iubēbit, mittētis, vidēbunt.
- ii. sacrificātūrī sumus, factūrus es, ventūrī sunt,  
abitūrus est, acceptūrus sum.

### Exercitātiōnēs 16 & 17

1. Put into (a) the Future, (b) the Imperfect, and (c) the Perfect :—

- i. exeunt, legō, servat, indūcimus, vis, accipitis,  
mittunt, tacēs, discimus, potest.
- ii. cōnāminī, pōnitur, vincimur, retinēris, inveniuntur,  
ūteris, morior, vastātur, obsidentur, expelleris.

2. Put into the Infinitive :—

eō, reveniam, cēpī, ferar, victus sum, tangor, retinēbō,  
possum, caedor, vulnerābor.

3. Put after (a) *Dīcit* or *Negat* and (b) *Dīxit* or *Negāvit* :—

- i. Marcus mātrem ōsculat.
- ii. Avus ēius omne aurum āmisit.
- iii. Magister nōs in lūdō aliquamdiū retinēbit.
- iv. Illō stilō nōn ūtar.
- v. Trēs librī ā Sibyllā in foculō ustī sunt.
- vi. Plūra carmina legere nōn possum.
- vii. Perseus virginēs pulcherrimās ē periculō servāvit.
- viii. In nāve Cūmis praeter Carthāginem nāvigābit.
- ix. Duodecim ōva tribus sestertiis emam.
- x. Porcum edere nōlō.



4. *Aliter Latīnē* :—

- i. Rōmānī vigilēs habēbant, ut fūrēs comprehenderent.
- ii. Dēbēmus pēnsū bene scribere.
- iii. Rex imperāvit servō nē peccāret.
- iv. Rōmam vēnērunt urbis explōrandae causā.
- v. Oportuit militēs fortiter pugnāre.

5. *Verte Latīnē* :—

for a short time, I have in mind, in the camp, 19th October, in my opinion, what sort of a book?, ten thousand soldiers, I have a pain in my head, while the old woman was sleeping, from home.

6. Give the Principal Parts of :—

peccō, caedō, auferō, crēdō, currō, putō, respondeō, fugiō, spērō, adipiscor.

7. Give the Dative Singular and the Genitive Plural of :—

populus liber, auris sinistra, imus mōns, senex fessus, habitus rēgālis, pondus grave, discipulus loquax, diēs tristis, bōs insānus, pēnsū difficile.

8. Put after *Spērō* :—

- i. Magister latebrās meās nōn inveniet.
- ii. Mūcius Scaevola regem interficiet.
- iii. Militēs hostēs gladiis necābunt.
- iv. Porcus multum cibum cōsūmet.
- v. Cōsulēs omnia populō Rōmānō nōn dabunt.

### Exercitātiōnēs 18 & 19

1. Put into (a) the Present and (b) the Imperfect Subjunctive :—

- i. dicunt, rogās, mordeō, absunt, docet, servāmus, perlegit, tacētis, auferō, nāvigās.
- ii. videor, pulsātur, franguntur, proficisceris, minor, caedimini, venditur, patimur, fit, sepelior.

2. Give (a) the Present and (b) the Perfect Infinitive Passive of :—

regō, vetō, mittō, faciō, teneō.



3. Put after (a) *Rogat* and (b) *Rogāvit* :—

- i. Quis librum nōn habet ?
- ii. Cūr mēcum ad tabernam nōn venīs ?
- iii. Quādo rēgem in forō sedentem vīdistī ?
- iv. Quō cōnsiliō surrēxistis ?
- v. Quot dēnāriōs adhūc sūtōrī dedistī ?
- vi. Narrābuntne fābulam dē viātōre ?
- vii. Quotā hōrā expergiscētur ?
- viii. Num ad Circum Maximum hodiē ambulābitis ?
- ix. Unde ad hanc urbem proficīscuntur ?
- x. Quālia onera in umeris portātis ?

4. *Verte in Orātiōnem Rectam* :—

- i. Marcus sē parentibus pecūniam datūrum esse dixit.
- ii. Negāmus centuriōnem nōbis stipendia distribuisse.
- iii. Hunc montem altissimum omnium esse opīnor.
- iv. Fēminae dicunt sē fortiōrēs esse quam puerōs.
- v. Scīmus Quintum dormiēndi causā domī mānsisse.

5. *Verte Latīnē* :—

to this place, not enough food, the bottom of the river, the Roman camp, each soldier, two miles, three years old, whatever I see, to what place ?, do not run.

## 6. Give the Principal Parts of :—

inveniō, tangō, coepī, prōgredior, emō, cōsūmō, cōnor, lūdō, accipiō, obstō.

## 7. Give the Ablative Singular and the Accusative Plural of :—

longum iter, rēs difficilis, puer importūnus, rāna celeris, ferox animal, dextrum genū, pater benignus, fābula tristior, ingēns mōns, scriba sēcūrus.

## 8. Put into the Past :—

- i. Festinō quō celerius in agrōs veniam.
- ii. Aliquis semper mē rogat cūr alveum portem.
- iii. Māter patrī imperat nē nimis vīnī bibat.
- iv. Frāter meus mē fidēlem esse putat.
- v. Miles māne expergiscitur montis ascendendi causā.

## Exercitātiōnēs 20 & 21

### 1. Put into the Passive :—

- i. audit, pulsābis, scripsērunt, custōdiētis, abstulerint, amāverāmus, vicērunt, arcessō, faciēbat, incendi.
- ii. emat, retinueris, frangerent, dīmittāmus, aperīret, excitāvissem, interficiāmus, monuerint, nōminēmus, tetigeritis.

### 2. Give the Present Imperative Singular and Plural of :—

tangō, nōlō, loquor, dīcō, eō.

### 3. Put after (a) *Dīcit* and (b) *Dīxit* :—

- i. Rex, quī irātus est, servōs necārī iubet.
- ii. Fīlius, quī cēnam nōn edit, a mātrem pulsātur.
- iii. Marcus, quī herī aberat, ex ventre labōrāvit.
- iv. Antequam cinerēs invēnērunt, villam sēcrētō incenderat.
- v. Poēta, quī carmina male scrībit, ā nullō amātur.
- vi. In ātrium ibō, ubi pater versiculōs suōs recitābit.
- vii. Vigil fūrem, quī pecūniam abstulerat, in carcerem dūxit.
- viii. Eī, quī interfectī sunt, hostēs erant.
- ix. Perseus, postquam galeam mirābilem induit, ēvānuīt.
- x. Quia nihil frūmentī in urbe inest, cīvēs cōsulēs pācem compōnere iubēbunt.

### 4. *Verte in Orātiōnem Rectam* :—

- i. Adfirmāvit sē multās hōrās natāvisse.
- ii. Negat Marcum, quī mortuus sit, sepeliendum esse.
- iii. Dixērunt exercitum, quem cōsul ē castris ēdūxisset, ab hostibus victum iri.
- iv. Rogābō num discipulī hanc fābulam lēgerint.
- v. Negāvit medicum, quī ipse aegrōtāret, aliōs aegrōtōs sārare posse.



5. *Verte Latīnē* :—

at what time ?, in the middle of the night, for a short while, 14th May, we are certain, at Carthage, twelve feet long, they must not talk, as quickly as possible, on the ground.

## 6. Give the Principal Parts of :—

cōnor, currō, concurrō, sum, ūrō, obeō, cōgō, compōnō, iubeō, precor.

## 7. Give the Genitive Singular and the Nominative Plural of :—

vīta brevis, corpus īsānābile, magister pessimus, ōs apertum, aurīga praeclārus, nauta laetior, cadāver ingēns, hostis crūdēlis, diēs longus, mīles celer.

8. *Quid est contrārium* ?

iubeō, bōs, senex, doceō, redeō, frāter, rīdeō, rex, summus-a-um, fugiō.

**Exercitātiōnēs 22**

## 1. Put into (a) the Present and (b) the Perfect Subjunctive Active :—

prōdit, movent, resistimus, serviō, sēcēdunt, clāmās, canit, saevītis, inrumpunt, reddō.

## 2. Put into (a) the Imperfect and (b) the Pluperfect Subjunctive Passive :—

servant, repellitis, creāmus, stringit, capiō, terrēmus, expugnat, claudit, cognōscō, cōgitis.

3. Put after (a) *Dīcit* or *Negat* and (b) *Dīxit* or *Negāvit* :—

- i. Plebs, quam nōn amō, sēcēdet.
- ii. Hostēs, quī penātēs abstulērunt, ultus sum.
- iii. Dux, quippe quī vir fidēlissimus esset, patriam nōn prōdidit.
- iv. Mulierēs, quia famē moriēbantur, clāmābant.
- v. Pīlum, quō ūtor, movēre nōn dēbēs.



4. *Alter Latīnē*, using *quī* for *ut* where possible :—

- i. Cōsul ōrātiōnem habēbat reipublicae servandae causā.
- ii. Virum quaerimus, cōsulis creandī causā.
- iii. Gladiōs strinxērunt hostium interficiendōrum causā.
- iv. Corpus ad rogum portāvērunt incendendī causā.
- v. In urbem inrumpimus ad cīvēs terrendōs.

5. *Verte Latīnē* :—

let him come, there is no doubt that she is mad, a few men, they made a speech, 7th April, look !, they don't like walking, only, not only . . . but also.

6. Give the Principal Parts of :—

servō, serviō, ulcīscor, ōdī, repellō, ērumpō, resistō, abscidō, caedō, cadō.

7. Give the Ablative Singular and the Dative Plural of :—

vir fortis, dux praeclārus, antīqua rēspública, plebs fidēlis, saeva famēs, mulier optima, ira gravis, ōrātiō pulchra, ferox impetus, alta arbor.

8. Use the following in sentences :—

cēna, bibō, collum, crēscō, dēfendō, dūrus, diū, fōns, prōditor, audācia.

### Exercitātiōnēs 23 & 24

1. Put into the Passive :—

- i. audīvit, induunt, dūxeris, inveniētis, convocāvērunt, viderāmus, colit, pulsāverint, interfēcistī, monet.
- ii. mordeam, distribuerent, necētis, iussissēmus, fēcerit, pōnerēs, abiēcisset, rogārēs, frēgerint, amem.

2. Give the Present Imperative Passive, Singular and Plural of :—

excitō, vertō, sepeliō, moneō, dūcō.

3. *Aliter Latīnē* (a) with *cum* and (b) with an Ablative Absolute :—

- i. Postquam hostēs vidērunt, militēs impetum fēcērunt.
- ii. Postquam cistam cēpit, fūr celeriter ē villā fūgit.
- iii. Postquam iānuam aperuit, magister discipulōs dīmisit.
- iv. Postquam castra hostium incendērunt, Rōmāni domum regressi sunt.
- v. Postquam iānitōrem excitāvi, villam intrāvi.
- vi. Postquam frātre mortuum salūtāvit, Catullus ex Asiā ad Italiam rediit.
- vii. Postquam cēnam cōsumpsī, nōn ēsuriēbam.
- viii. Postquam carmen scripsit, poēta hiāvit.
- ix. Postquam Gallōs vicit, Caesar flūmen Rubicōnem trānsiit.
- x. Postquam calceōs vendidit, sūtor tabernam clausit.

4. Put after *Certiōrēm mē fēcit* :—

- i. Omnēs divitēs opēs habent.
- ii. Senex, quī testāmentum scripsit, moriētur.
- iii. Marcus, quamquam frūgibus fruitur, ex ventre labōrābit.
- iv. Puer, quī librum magistri abstulit, ā magistrō pulsābitur.
- v. Oportet discipulōs domum reverti.

5. *Verte Latīnē* :—

without delay, against the enemy, how many are we ?, three hundred cities, nineteen years old, before midday, he is about to die, what sort of a book? the one . . . the other, they made me do this.

6. Give the Principal Parts of :—

maneō, tollō, revertor, fruor, audeō, sonō, vincō, morior, adsum, gerō.



7. Give the Dative Singular and the Genitive Plural of :—  
 magister sapiēns, gradus longus, puer pius, tōtum  
 corpus, vir audax, omnis rēspública, animal māius, bōs  
 ingēns, folium tenue, senex miser.
8. Give the Comparative and Superlative of :—  
 dulcis, parvus, audācter, celer, male.

### Exercitātiōnēs 25 & 26

1. Put into the Subjunctive :—  
 i. capit, redībant, vīdistī, lūgēbam, pulsātis, aperuērunt,  
 miserāmus, fuit, volēbās, aderātis.  
 ii. tenēris, ductī estis, moriēbar, prōgrediminī, cōn-  
 sumpta erant, numerātur, vidēbāmur, dēcipimur,  
 vectī sunt, agnōscimur.
2. Give the Present, Perfect, and Future Infinitives, Active  
 and Passive of :—  
 videō, impōnō, vincō, tangō, mōnstrō, immergō, ferō,  
 inveniō, faciō, mittō.
3. *Aliter Latīnē* :—  
 i. Dum fūrēs fūrtum faciunt, cīvēs dormiunt.  
 ii. Magistrō Marcum reprehendente, omnēs aliī discipulī  
 rident.  
 iii. Dum gladiātōrēs inter sē pugnant, spectātōrēs  
 exclāmant.  
 iv. Dum lūna lūcet, Pýramus et Thisbē conveniunt.  
 v. Magistrō discipulōs in fēriās dīmittente, Sērius  
 loquēbātur.  
 vi. Dum vigil villam custōdit, fūr appropinquāre nōn  
 potest.  
 vii. Fēle absente, mūrēs lūdunt.  
 viii. Dum legō, nōlī sonitum facere.



- ix. Dum pueri lūdunt, māter cibum coxit.  
 x. Hostibus appropinquantibus, cōsul exercitum col-  
 lēgit.
4. Put after (a) *Pater rogat* and (b) *Pater rogāvit* :—  
 i. Cūr sērō experrectī sumus ?  
 ii. Quandō cibum cōsūmēmus ?  
 iii. Quantā vī frātre pulāvisti ?  
 iv. Quālem raedam habet avunculus ?  
 v. Num manūs lavāvimus ?
5. *Verte Latīnē* :—  
 on the first of May, both up to the neck, the other  
 consul, whenever, he ran twenty miles, so many, from  
 what place ?, each boy, there is no doubt that he is  
 stupid.
6. Give the Principal Parts of :—  
 discō, cōnor, cadō, vetō, gaudeō, expellō, cōgō, rumpō,  
 dimittō, legō.
7. Give the Accusative Singular and the Ablative Plural of :—  
 summa vīs, breve tempus pēs dexter, exsilium longum,  
 māter nostra, diēs tōtus, iter difficile, rex libēns, exsul  
 quīdam, litus dēsertum.
8. *Quid est contrārium* ? :—  
 candidus, accipiō, postquam, nihil, amicus, dormiō, dicō,  
 brevī, ō mē miserum !, semper.

### Exercitātiōnēs 27 & 28

1. Put into (a) the Perfect and (b) the Pluperfect Subjunc-  
 tive :—  
 i. crēdunt, expellit, vidēs, sum, emitis, agnōscimus,  
 immergō, vult, respondēmus, colunt.  
 ii. sepelīminī, moritur, tangeris, iubeor, proficiscimur,  
 vagantur, adfertur, prōgrediminī, necantur, vincimur.

2. What do the following words come from ? :—

ii, rēgēs, nōminem, vīrium, ferri, gāvīsus sum, fit, coactus sum, morere, petitūrus.

3. *Aliter Latīnē* (using a Participle) :—

- i. Cum portam aperuissem, portam clausi.
- ii. Dum pueri in viis lūdunt, eōs vidī.
- iii. Cum castra cēpissent, Rōmāni ea incendērunt.
- iv. Vigil puerum cēpit, dum māchinam dispōnit.
- v. Gallinam interfēcimus et apud cēnam dēvorāvimus.
- vi. Cīvēs aedēs, quās nōn aedificāverunt, ēmērunt.
- vii. Caligās militis, qui necātus erat, abstulimus.
- viii. Cibum, quem māter coxit, ēdimus.
- ix. Dum leō rudit, Androclus ei auxilium dedit.
- x. Cum tria milia passuum prōgressi essent, hostēs cōspexērunt.

4. Put after (a) *Nēmō scit* and (b) *Nēmō sciēbat* :—

- i. Quō modō Pseudolus tālia cōnsilia init ?
- ii. Unde Pseudolus pecūniam abstulit ?
- iii. Quid est nōmen patris Pseudoli ?
- iv. Quot annōs Pseudolus nātus est ?
- v. Num vigilēs Pseudolum invenient ?

5. *Verte Latīnē* :—

without delay, into the sea, on the left, two thousand soldiers, to this place, 30th December, in many places, in the day time, near the city, each girl.

6. Give the Principal Parts of :—

colligō, mīror, abeō, conloquor, dispōnō, auferō, adferō, currō, vivō, comprehendō.

7. Give the Ablative Singular and the Genitive Plural of :—

puer minimus, mare extrēmum, haec rēs, breve iter, discipulus idem, puella lacrimāns, pānis lapidōsus, ingēns sonitus, pater vester, somnium mīrābile.



8. *Aliter Latīnē* :—

- i. Militēs ad rēgem mīsit, ut pecūniam peterent.
- ii. Oportuit eum stipendia merēre.
- iii. Cum leōnēs vidisset, valdē timuit.
- iv. “ Mox,” inquit, “ vōs interficiam.”
- v. Cīvēs ē villis ēgredi vetuit.

**Exercitātiōnēs 29**

## 1. Put into the Passive :—

- i. expōnēmus, agnōvit, āmovēbant, verteram, vicistis, opprimis, faciet, damnāvī, dabit, cēperimus.
- ii. amem, dīxisset, coleret, incendātis, dūcerēmus, gessissent, vulserit, reprehendās, vincerem, servet.

## 2. Give the Comparative and Superlative of :—

diligēns, fortis, male, iuvenis, audax, facilis, lentē, tristis, magnopere.

3. *Aliter Latīnē* :—

- i. Cicerōne ōrātiōnem habente, senātōrēs tacēbant.
- ii. Necesse est praetōrī māne proficisci.
- iii. Militēs urbis capiendae causā festināvērunt.
- iv. “ Catilīna,” inquit, “ quī semper mentitur, reipublicae nocēre vult.”
- v. Cōnsul militēs Catilīnam comprehendere iussit.
- vi. Cum plebs inter sē coniūrent, patriciī coniūrātiōnem timent.
- vii. Cēnsor militēs mīsit, ut prōditōrēs comprehenderent.
- viii. Ponte fractō, flūmen trānsire nōn potuērunt.
- ix. “ Quis,” rogāvit, “ librum meum abstulit ? ”
- x. Cum lēgem lēgisset, fūrtum cōfessus est.

4. Put after (a) *Quis dīcit?* and (b) *Quis dīxit?*

- i. Hostēs vulnera timent.
- ii. Magistrī patientiā nostrā abūtuntur.



- iii. Fructūs ā Pseudolō dēcerptī sunt.
- iv. Marcō veniam numquam dabō.
- v. Si segetēs crēscunt, agricolae gaudent.

5. *Verte Latīnē* :—

in the rear, recently, in the camp, a few, in my opinion,  
for how long ?, you need a book, as many as possible,  
for one mile, two hundred women.

6. Give the Principal Parts of :—

sentiō, indicō, coniūrō, reprehendō, ērumpō, perdō,  
dēcernō, mentior, intellegō, precor.

7. Give the Genitive Singular and the Accusative Plural of :—

tacita nox, illud somnium, hīc senātus, longius bellum,  
homō perditus, fēmina utraque, tōtus diēs, mōnstrum  
horribile, genū dextrum, ferox vultus.

8. Put into the Past :—

- i. Nē sērō ad cēnam veniat, celeriter currit.
- ii. Pater tibi imperat ut statim expergiscāris.
- iii. Negat eōs, quī canēs calcent, animālia amāre.
- iv. Dē salūte populī omnibus senātōribus dēcernendum  
est.
- v. Cōsul militibus imperat ut gladiōs stringant  
Catilinae interficiendī causā.

### Exercitātiōnēs 30 & 31

1. Put into (*a*) the Present and (*b*) the Imperfect Subjunctive :—

- i. dispōnunt, cēlat, habētis, inrēpimus, inveniō, cēnsēs,  
abitis, quaerimus, vult, potes.
- ii. patiminī, interficitur, populāris, audiuntur, relin-  
queris, morior, vocāmur, velluntur, expergisceris,  
fūrātur.

2. Give the Present, Perfect, and Future Infinitives, Active and Passive of :—

tangō, faciō, mittō, adferō, necō.

3. Join the following sentences :—

- i. Tam celeriter edunt : ē ventre labōrābunt.
- ii. Tanta erat urbs : hostēs capere nōn potuērunt.
- iii. Tribūnus tīrōnem adeō vehementer pulsāvit : eum interfēcit.
- iv. Ita rudunt leōnēs : spectātōrēs timent.
- v. Tullia tantum mellis dēvorāvit : dormire nōn poterat.
- vi. Tam saevus est canis : nēmō eum tangere vult.
- vii. Liber tuus tam sordidus est : novum librum emere dēbēs.
- viii. Ita exclāmāvērunt : omnēs sonitum audīvērunt.
- ix. Egnātius tālēs dentēs habēbat : semper ridēbat.
- x. Tam sērō vēnistis : sōlis occāsum nōn vidistis.

4. *Aliter Latīnē* :—

- i. Oportet mē edere ut vivam.
- ii. Māter puellās expergiscī iussit.
- iii. “ Quis,” rogāvit, “ mē Rōmam comitābitur ? ”
- iv. Mitte scrībās, quī stipendia mīlitibus distribuunt.
- v. “ Avus,” inquit, “ quī surdus est, semper librōs legit.”

5. *Verte Latīnē* :—

during the night, nevertheless, we wage war, 15th April, at Carthage, nothing will prevent me from coming, so many men, some . . . others, the middle of the road, I myself.

6. Give the Principal Parts of :—

trahō, exhauriō, fūror, agō, perlegō, dēcipiō, prōmittō, obstō, inveniō, cōgō.



7. Give the Dative Singular and the Nominative Plural of :—  
 māior mōtus, dextrum cornū, hīc diēs, alius puer, nostra  
 rēspública, rēs tristis, parva apis, avidus canis,  
 miles audax.
8. *Quid est contrārium ?* :—  
 quot ?, miles, vīta, minus, anus, rex, celeriter, primus,  
 imperō, miser.

### Exercitātiōnēs 32 & 33

1. Put into (a) the Future, (b) the Perfect, and (c) the Future Perfect :—
- i. tangimus, effugiunt, sonat, sedētis, audis, cēdit, ēvādō, natātis, fit, caedunt.
  - ii. verēminī, comitāris, prōgredimur, videntur, tollitur, franguntur, salūtāmur, morior, dīmitteris, impedior.
2. Put into the Indicative :—
- iactus sit, reveniam, paterēminī, velimus, dūxisset, irem, tenērētis, pāreant, iussī essent, abeat.
3. Put after (a) *Marcus timet* and (b) *Marcus timēbat* :—
- i. Amīcus nōn veniet.
  - ii. Vigil eum vīdit.
  - iii. Canis puellam mordēbit.
  - iv. Pater domum nōn vēnit.
  - v. Satis cibī nōn accipiet.
  - vi. Medicus medicīnam eī dabit.
  - vii. Sextus errōrem fēcit.
  - viii. Mox moriētur.
  - ix. Saxum caput senis pulsābit.
  - x. Mīlitēs spectāre nōn poterit.



4. *Aliter Latīnē* :—

- i. Ubi cibum ēderis, ad cubiculum ire tē oportēbit.
- ii. “ Quis,” rogavit, “ novōs calceōs mihi vendet ? ”
- iii. Dum puerī in viā lūdunt, matrēs domī inter sē conloquēbantur.
- iv. Currunt ut aurum inveniant.
- v. Senex, “ Dā mihi pecūniam,” viātōrem precātus est.

5. *Verte Latīnē* :—

at once, under the table, five hundred cows, at last, when he was walking, spoiling for a fight, without delay, right up to the wall, between the wars, each girl.

## 6. Give the Principal Parts of :—

dūcō, vetō, fruor, quaerō, comprehendō, exeō, patior, rideō, combūrō, necō.

## 7. Give the Accusative Singular and the Dative Plural of :—

īmus mōns, ulterior rīpa, iter longum, pars minima, arbor alta, rostrum aduncum, pēs sinister, animal māius, manus sordida.

## 8. What do the following words come from? :—

boum, parsūrus, ferri, perrēxistis, velle, vocem, victūrus, capite, mori, regis.

### Exercitātiōnēs 34 & 35

## 1. Put into the Passive :—

- i. sānat, gerēbant, vicērunt, mittēs, liberātis, reprehenderit, cruciābit, dēcēperint, faciēs, perterruērunt.
- ii. videant, cognōscerem, educāverimus, coēgissēs, exposuerint, det, trāxissētis, vulnerārēmus, sustuleris, faciant.

2. Give the other Degrees of Comparison :—

nātū maximus, melius, dītior, magnopere, celerrimus, facilius, tristissimus, paulum, plūrimus, pessimē.

3. Complete the following sentences :—

- i. Rōmam nōn vēnit : forum nōn vīdit, sed sī . . . . .
- ii. Frātre tuum nōn inveniam : librum eī nōn dabō, sed sī . . . . .
- iii. Hoc facere nōn possum : hoc nōn faciō, sed sī . . .
- iv. Hostēs urbem cēpērunt : cīvēs interfēcērunt, sed nisi . . . . .
- v. Marcus nōn adest : tēcum nōn loquitur, sed sī . . .
- vi. Etruscī nōn adgredientur : mīlītēs nostrī eīs nōn resistant, sed sī . . . . .
- vii. Rex nōn mortuus est : cīvēs nōn doluērunt, sed sī . . .
- viii. Hostēs appropinquant : hostēs timeō, sed nisi . . .
- ix. Pēnsū nōn perfēcī : nōn exiī, sed sī . . . . .
- x. Multam pecūniam nōn habeō : hortum nōn emō, sed sī . . . . .

4. *Aliter Latīnē* :—

- i. Infantibus vāgientibus, māter villam intrāvit.
- ii. In eō est ut collem ascendās.
- iii. “Castra,” inquit, “quae vidēre potestis, ā mīlitibus contrā hostēs dēfendentur.”
- iv. Mīlītēs mittam quī urbem adgrediantur.
- v. “Quandō,” rogāvit, “librum perdidistī ? ”

5. *Verte Latīnē* :—

for ten miles, in fact, the city of Rome, there was no doubt he killed the man, 31st December, on the ground, five hundred slaves, moreover, to the top of the mountain, if only I had seen him.

6. Give the Principal Parts of :—

reddō, mīror, maneō, ūtor, vetō, sequor, trahō, cognōscō, ūrō, nāscor.



7. Give the Dative Singular and the Genitive Plural of :—

hīc bōs, dextrum genū, crūs longius, vīta brevis, homō sapiēns, idem amicus, ingēns collis, vir gravissimus, optimus lector, māior exercitus.

8. *Quid est contrārium ?* :—

pauper, mare, expergīscor, male, primus, iuvenis, dēpōnō, sērō, inveniō, intempestā nocte.

### Exercitātiōnēs 36

1. Put into (a) the Imperfect Subjunctive and (b) the Perfect Subjunctive :—

- i. inspiciō, revocās, infert, percutiunt, repōnit, vidēmus, audēs, audīs, cōgitat, adveniunt.
- ii. oblivīscor, oritur, ulcīsceris, precāmur, expergiscimini, moriuntur, vidētur, irāsceris, vereor, loquimini.

2. *Explicā Latīnē* :—

vātēs, victima, tyrannus, frustrā, percutiō, intempestā nocte, in eō est ut dormiam, cor, tonitrus, adiuvō.

3. Put into *Orātiō Oblīqua* after “ *Dixi* ” :—

Coniūrātī adsunt. Nescītis quālēs sint. Abōminandī sunt omnēs. Stringite igitur gladiōs et eōs ad ūnum interficite. Si quis gladium nōn strinxerit, ego eum interficiam.

4. *Aliter Latīnē* :—

- i. Militibus signum dare dēbēmus.
- ii. “Vulgus,” inquit, “semper mōbile est, quia hominēs numquam eadem sentiunt.”
- iii. Vātēs advēnit, ut exta inspiceret.
- iv. Bellō cīvili ortō, multī cīvēs interfectī sunt.
- v. Postquam castra intrāvit, scribam necāvit.



5. *Verte Latīnē* :—

a fatal wound, a mortal man, every day, at the bottom of the river, on the 15th March, twenty-two miles, a thousand books, in vain, to the ground, during the night.

6. Give the Principal Parts of :—

possum, irāscor, moveō, soleō, cadō, caedō, lūceō, obstō, obliviscor, sentiō.

7. Give the Ablative Singular and the Genitive Plural of :—

bona tempestās, bellum cīvile, vulnus mortiferum, vir honestus, canis niger, iuvenis māior, diēs proximus, mōbile vulgus, tonitrus terribilis, mīles vetus.

8. Use the following in Latin Sentences :—

vigilia, statua, nex, potius, exspectō, cōgitō, ūtor, ulciscor, obliviscor, obstō.



**PARS QUARTA**  
**SENTENTIAE ANGLICAE**





## SENTENTIAE ANGLICAE

## 1 &amp; 2

## A

1. Marcus picks up a stick.
2. A stick is picked up by Marcus.
3. The stick breaks the windows.
4. The windows are broken by the stick.
5. The master beats Marcus with a long stick.
6. Marcus is beaten by the master with a long stick.
7. Girls do not like white mice.
8. White mice are not liked by girls.
9. Serius never reads a notice.
10. Notices are never read by Serius.

## B

1. The policeman will send you to prison.
2. You will be sent to prison by the policeman.
3. The crocodile will eat me.
4. I shall be eaten by the crocodile.
5. The lion will kill the spectators.
6. The spectators will be killed by the lion.
7. A sword will wound all the monsters.
8. All the monsters will be wounded by a sword.
9. This rope will hang the butcher.
10. The butcher will be hanged by this rope.

## C

1. The master used to scold the boys every day.
2. The boys used to be scolded by the master every day.
3. The boys were making a noise.
4. A noise was being made by the boys.
5. Schoolmasters were always keeping me in.
6. I was always being kept in by schoolmasters.
7. That cat used to catch mice.
8. Mice used to be caught by that cat.
9. Savage citizens used to torture slaves.
10. Slaves used to be tortured by savage citizens.

**3 & 4****A**

1. My father took me to school.
2. I was taken to school by my father.
3. Sextus read the orders aloud.
4. The orders were read aloud by Sextus.
5. The innkeeper hit you with a stick.
6. You were hit by the innkeeper with a stick.
7. The boys spent their money.
8. The money was spent by the boys.
9. The schoolboys killed the masters with swords.
10. The masters were killed by the schoolboys with swords.

**B**

1. When you have picked the fruit, your mother will cook it.
2. When the fruit has been picked by you, it will be cooked by your mother.
3. When we have killed a lion, we will send it to the king.
4. When a lion has been killed by us, it will be sent to the king.
5. When the magistrate has scolded you, he will set you free.
6. When you have been scolded by the magistrate, you will be set free.
7. If you kill the master, he will not give you homework.
8. If the master is killed by you, homework will not be given to you.
9. When you have eaten your dinner, you will collect the apples.
10. When your dinner has been eaten, the apples will be collected by you.



## C

1. Before the policeman caught the thief, he had taken the money.
2. Before the thief was caught by the policeman, the money had been taken.
3. Before the master beat him, he had thrown the apple.
4. Before he was beaten by the master, the apple had been thrown.
5. Before Perseus killed the monster, it had eaten many maidens.
6. Before the monster was killed by Perseus, many maidens had been eaten by it.
7. Before the king bought the books, the Sibyl had burnt six.
8. Before the books were bought by the king, six had been burnt by the Sibyl.
9. Before Pseudolus deceived the innkeeper, he had received three 'asses.'
10. Before the innkeeper was deceived by Pseudolus, three 'asses' had been received by Pseudolus.

## 5

## A

1. My friends always accompany me to school.
2. Suddenly one of the two thieves woke up.
3. We were setting out from Ostia.
4. The soldiers will advance for three miles.
5. You will return to Rome to-morrow.
6. The policemen followed the thief to the inn.
7. The master was angry because Marcus and Sextus were talking.
8. I am not amazed because I have heard that story before.
9. Set out from here as quickly as possible. Do not be afraid.
10. The general ordered the soldiers to retreat.

## B

1. You seem to me to be bigger than Octavus.
2. Why were you blamed by the innkeeper ? Did you drink too little wine ?
3. All the mice were killed by the cat.
4. The citizens followed the doctor into the market place.
5. Before he set out from Rome, my father accompanied me to the Circus Maximus.
6. I do not want to go back. I will go forward with you to your home.
7. This dog, which always follows me, is not mine.
8. If you are seen by the police, you will be taken to prison.
9. Before he woke up, he had seen many wonderful dreams.
10. I no longer need this book, in my opinion. Give it to your son.

## 6

## A

1. The master's voice was recognized by the boys.
2. Were you chased by the bull ?
3. These grapes are not picked by hand.
4. Follow him ! Don't be deceived by the thief.
5. To whom was the basket given by the king ?
6. If the centurion doesn't fight bravely, he will be expelled from the army.
7. That wine was poured out on to the table by me.
8. To-day you must accompany me to the market.
9. Fish are often caught by hooks.
10. If you don't wake up quickly, you will scarcely be able to eat your food.

## B

1. Children are always looked after by their parents.
2. A small house was built near the road by my sister.
3. Marcus was always lying, but Sextus always told the truth.



4. The prisoners, who were freed by my father, love him.
5. We must not steal things which are not ours.
6. Arms will be distributed to the soldiers by the centurion.
7. I was compelled by the master to write my home-work again.
8. This ring was found by a shepherd in a field.
9. When these young men have been killed with the sword, I shall not be afraid.
10. Unless my books are returned to-morrow, I will never give you another.

## 7 & 8

## A

1. I order you to open your books.
2. He ordered me to be quiet.
3. Order him not to take my javelin.
4. They ordered the old woman to give them the food for nothing.
5. The stern old woman ordered the soldiers not to make a noise.
6. I will never order you to kill your dog.
7. The general orders the centurion to find the enemy.
8. No one can order me to hurry.
9. Pseudolus asked the baker to give him bread.
10. Romulus ordered Remus not to jump over the wall.

## B

1. The general ordered his army to march to Rome.
2. The master orders the boys to be beaten.
3. They ordered them to set out at once.
4. Are you ordering me not to touch the dog ?
5. The policeman ordered the thief to follow him.
6. The baker will beg you not to remain in the shop.
7. I am asking you not to be angry.
8. The centurion ordered the recruit to polish his breastplate.



9. Go away ! I order you not to come to my house again.
10. The police told the old man to stay in prison for three days.

**9 & 10****A**

1. The farmer went to market to buy a fat pig.
2. Send him home to find the net.
3. Boys never hurry in order not to arrive late at school.
4. The Romans set out from Rome on 10th August to conquer the enemy.
5. A soldier carries a heavy sword in order to be able to defend himself.
6. We made a plan in order not to be caught by the police.
7. No one writes poems in order to become rich.
8. Pseudolus covered his head in order to deceive the doctor.
9. The old man sat on the bank of the river to catch fish.
10. The enemy fought bravely in order not to die.

**B**

1. He asked the doctor to give him enough medicine.
2. Doctors give us horrible medicine in order to cure us.
3. We allowed the young men to go forward to look for water.
4. Order the slaves to bring me some fresh wine at once.
5. Romulus built a high wall round Rome in order to defend the city against her enemies.
6. Cats run silently in order not to be chased by dogs.
7. The shepherd remained near the bushes to guard the sheep.
8. You ought not to sing in order to be praised.
9. The centurions will order the soldiers to put down their heavy arms.
10. Amulius expelled Numitor in order to get his kingdom.

**11 & 12****A**

1. Masters come to school to teach pupils.
2. My brother went to Rome to see the Circus.
3. Knock at the door in order to wake the doorkeeper.
4. Marcus went to his bedroom in order to sleep.
5. Poets write poems in order to delight their friends.
6. He told lies in order to deceive the policeman.
7. The soldier raised his sword to kill the enemy.
8. The old man went out into the hall in order to recite a poem.
9. He was carrying a net in order to catch fish.
10. We read books in order to learn.

**B**

1. Septimus went into the study in order to find his books.
2. You must open the door in order to go out.
3. The master shut the book in order to go to sleep.
4. Marcus ran to the river to swim.
5. We will go to Octavus' house to dine there.
6. The dog opened his mouth to show his teeth.
7. Give me money in order to buy food.
8. The enemy fought bravely to save their wives.
9. They ate even snails in order to live.
10. Sextus and Quintus climbed the tree to get the apples.

**13 & 14****A**

Using the Gerundive, put into Latin :—

1. You must open your book.
2. Boys must write poems.
3. We must always sing.
4. Slaves must carry jars.
5. Soldiers must fight bravely.
6. You must buy three eggs.
7. Boys must not eat sweets in school.



8. Old soldiers ought not to run away.
9. We must swim across the nearby river.
10. They had to walk for three days without food.

## B

1. You must not pull the dog's tail.
2. I had to send this book to my brother.
3. You ought not to catch fish in this river.
4. The old man had to carry a stick.
5. The girl will have to milk the cow.
6. Why must I swallow this medicine ?
7. Kind masters ought to drive away our fears.
8. You must not cry. You must laugh.
9. You must not take these apples.
10. As soon as you arrive at the shop you must buy a pair of shoes.

## 15

## A

1. They ordered the slaves to bring them food.
2. He asks you not to take away his horse.
3. The Etruscans besieged Rome in order to capture the city.
4. They begged me in vain to give them their wages.
5. We must always defend the camp.
6. The Senators used to sit in the Senate House to deliberate.
7. Poets must not compose bad verses.
8. Did you hear the bird singing in the field ?
9. This is the old man whose house I bought.
10. The consul ordered the legion to obstruct the enemy.

## B

1. That senator cannot run quickly because he is an old man.
2. If you dare to lay waste my country, I will make an example of you.
3. Why did you ask him to give you honours ?



4. The soldiers carried shields in order to defend themselves.
5. The lictor beat Marcus because he had stood in the way of the consul.
6. While the secretary was writing, the king was sacrificing.
7. Boys must not throw stones in order to injure animals.
8. If they are caught, they will be scolded.
9. My friends accompanied me to the inn in order to buy some cheap wine.
10. I beseech you not to leave me at home all day long.

**16 & 17****A**

1. We say that this homework is very difficult.
2. The baker says that this weight is not very heavy.
3. I know that Marcus is telling lies.
4. Who said that policemen drink much wine ?
5. Did you say that I was a fool, Sextus ?
6. Sextus says that he did not do wrong.
7. The girls said that they had seen my grandfather.
8. We know that we shall go away for a little while to-morrow.
9. The boys said that they would read the notice.
10. They replied that they had run past the house.

**B**

1. I think that you took the gold from my house.
2. The second policeman said that they ought to enter the inn.
3. Did you say that you had explored all the hiding places ?
4. They believe that he will use this pen.
5. Do you deny that you are a Roman citizen ?
6. The Romans hoped that they would soon capture the city.
7. Why did you say that you were not born at Patavium ?
8. Surely you did not believe that Pseudolus would be caught by the policemen ?
9. We all know that farmers have cows and pigs in their fields.
10. The master knows that Marcus is the worst of all boys.

**18 & 19****A**

1. Tell me how many books you have.
2. They asked how many books you had.
3. He told me why he had come late.
4. We know where we are going.
5. Don't ask me why he did it.
6. I know why you are asking me these things.
7. He told me yesterday what he would do.
8. The soldiers asked who were the enemy.
9. The general asked if they would win.
10. His parents asked what sort of shoes he wanted to buy.

**B**

1. The traveller asked who was willing to carry his load.
2. I am asking you if you will go to Rome with me to-morrow.
3. No one knows why he is staying at home to-day.
4. Tell me why you threatened me yesterday.
5. He will ask you at what time you set out from Ostia.
6. They began to ask him how old he was.
7. The king asked the general how he had been defeated by the enemy.
8. The consul asked how much corn there was left.
9. Herminius asked Mucius how he would enter the enemy's camp.
10. The philosopher asked the poet how many verses he had written.

**20 & 21****A**

1. This homework, which the master gave us, is very difficult.
2. We say that this homework, which the master gave us, is very difficult.
3. When he had drunk the wine, he went to sleep.



4. He said that, when he had drunk the wine, he went to sleep.
5. They did not come to Rome, because they were very ill.
6. They replied that they had not come to Rome, because they were very ill.
7. The soldiers carried swords, in order to kill the enemy.
8. The citizens knew that the soldiers carried swords, in order to kill the enemy.
9. I will ask you why you have not collected these ashes.
10. I say that I will ask you why you have not collected these ashes.

## B

1. The farmer pretended that he went to the market, where he bought a pig.
2. No one knows that the man, who was killed, was my brother.
3. Pseudolus thought that the doctor, who lived in the city, could not cure the sick.
4. He was certain that, although they were incurable, he would cure them.
5. We assure you that we do not like the food, which we eat in school.
6. He promised that he would give me the gold, which he had found in the forest.
7. Do you think that the cows, which are in my field, will be driven out ?
8. Who says that Sextus, who lost his book yesterday, will not find it again ?
9. I did not know that the camp, in which the soldiers were staying, had been captured.
10. We know that our army, which is led by the consul, will never be defeated by the enemy.



**22****A**

1. The centurion told his men to resist the enemy.
2. Tell me what sort of name the boys have given you.
3. The city was captured not by soldiers, but by hunger.
4. He made a speech in which he said that their leaders were traitors.
5. I am certain that this man will serve the state well.
6. Let them all come. I don't care a brass button.
7. There is no doubt that he betrayed the city.
8. We hate men who have too little courage.
9. Soldiers use shields to defend their bodies.
10. Let us drive back the legion in order to save the bridge.

**B**

1. The consul begged the common people not to betray the state.
2. Coriolanus was elected consul by the senators.
3. He says that the man, who made a speech, was a nobleman.
4. They said that they would never draw the swords, which they wore.
5. We told them why the woman had burst into the house.
6. Let us make a noise in order to make the old man angry.
7. Let the men take vengeance on the women.
8. He drank some wine in order to fight more bravely.
9. There was no doubt that the corpse had been placed on the pyre.
10. The senators hated him because he had been enraged against the consul.

**23 & 24****A**

Translate into Latin, using an Ablative Absolute :—

1. When he had read his will, the old man laughed.
2. When they had burnt the camp, the soldiers marched to the city.

3. When he had read the book, he bought another.
4. When she had finished her journey, the old woman slept.
5. When the bridge was broken, Horatius jumped into the river.
6. Did you run away, when you saw the enemy ?
7. When they had killed the lion, the hunters ate their meal.
8. After he had caught many fish, the boy went home.
9. When they had captured the port, the ships sailed to Carthage.
10. When their leader was dead, the enemy were frightened.

## B

Translate into Latin, using *cum* or an Ablative Absolute :—

1. When he heard the noise, the soldier was about to run away.
2. When he had found his sword, the soldier lost his shield.
3. When we had picked the fruit, we enjoyed the dinner.
4. When she had cooked the meal, mother lay down.
5. When he had killed Medusa, Perseus returned to the king.
6. When they had thrown away their weapons, the soldiers hurried home.
7. When he had summoned the citizens, the consul dismissed his army.
8. When he had conquered the Gauls, Caesar fought against Pompey.
9. When Hannibal had been driven out of Italy, the Romans rejoiced.
10. When he had distributed his wealth, grandfather made his sons go away.

## 25 &amp; 26

## A

Translate into Latin, using an Ablative Absolute :—

1. While the master is speaking, all the boys are silent.
2. While the horse was running, all the spectators were shouting.



3. While soldiers fight, women stay at home.
4. While Pseudolus was shouting, the citizens hurried to the market-place.
5. While the policeman was absent, the thief entered the house.
6. While the citizens were asleep, the enemy reached the city.
7. While the Senators were deliberating, the consuls were setting out.
8. While Marcus was riding in the cart, the other boys were walking.
9. While my brother was ill, I did not go out of the house.
10. While the girls were crying, the wolves were howling.

## B

Translate into Latin, using an Ablative Absolute :—

1. While the consul was making a speech, the people shouted with all their might.
2. While we were reading our books, someone knocked at the door.
3. While their mother was buying food, the boys looked at the shops.
4. As the travellers were walking to Rome, a prodigy appeared in the sky.
5. Since the moon was shining, they could read the notice.
6. I cannot write while you are singing.
7. While the merchants were sailing to Carthage, the steersman fell into the sea.
8. As the sun was setting, Pseudolus set out to steal the money.
9. With your help, we shall conquer the enemy.
10. At the general's command, all the soldiers jumped from the ships.



**27 & 28****A**

Translate into Latin, using a Participle :—

1. The senators heard the consul making a speech.
2. The boy threw away the book he had read.
3. The soldiers took the city and burnt it.
4. The spectators watched while the gladiators fought.
5. Marcus collected the threads, and arranged them on the table.
6. Don't touch the sword which is lying on the ground.
7. Octavus put on the shoes which had been cleaned.
8. Take your belt and put it round your shoulders.
9. Having been found in the wood, the boys were sent home.
10. The old man heard the cry of the boy swimming in the river.

**B**

1. While the sun is shining we can play in the fields.
2. When they had heard the speech, the senators went away.
3. When he had set out from Rome, he looked for a ship.
4. In the port which had recently been built there were many ships.
5. We have used all the money we collected.
6. When they had expelled the kings, they elected two consuls.
7. We can see the road while the moon is shining.
8. After the city had been captured, the citizens were put to death.
9. They took away the weapons of the prisoner they had captured.
10. When the soldiers had built their camp they ate a meal.

**29****A**

1. We must declare war as quickly as we can.
2. The boys watched the farmer tilling the fields.
3. The brothers walked five miles to see their father.
4. The king gave orders to his slaves to prepare a meal.
5. We all hope that we shall be rich.
6. Before the old woman died, she had lived a hundred years.
7. He asked his companion why he carried a stick.
8. Since his expression is so fierce I am afraid of him.
9. The soldiers said that they had fought in Catiline's army.
10. Don't be afraid of the judge. He will not condemn you.

**B**

1. When the cart is filled, we shall set out.
2. The general ordered the army to attack the enemy at once.
3. We must hurry. The emperor will have gone.
4. Give me the money you have taken.
5. Since they are conspiring, I will confess the truth.
6. On the 22nd January I will leave Rome.
7. We saw the house which had recently been built near the river.
8. Don't ask me why I misused the money.
9. You ought not to eat your food so quickly.
10. Tell me who your ancestors were.

**30 & 31****A**

1. He is so fat that he cannot touch his feet.
2. They walked so slowly that they arrived late.
3. The boy was so tired that he fell asleep in the shade of a tree.
4. Our soldiers are so brave that they cannot easily be defeated.
5. Marcus ate so many apples that he was ill for three days.



6. His mother was so afraid that she sent for the doctor.
7. This tree is so tall that he cannot climb it.
8. The farmer was so angry that he kicked the dog.
9. No reader is so stupid that he cannot understand that book.
10. Sextus slept so badly that he did not wake up in the morning.

## B

1. Pseudolus ran so quickly that no one caught him.
2. The journey is so long that we shall never arrive at Tarentum.
3. The king ruled so well that all the citizens praised him.
4. There is nothing to prevent you from going to Rome.
5. The meal is so big that we can never eat it all.
6. I have not sufficient money to give the innkeeper.
7. When the consul died, everyone wept.
8. There was no doubt that the thief stole the money.
9. We must send as many soldiers as possible to the general.
10. The lion was so afraid of the mouse that it ran away.

## 32 & 33

## A

1. I am afraid that Moxius will fall into the river again.
2. They were afraid that they would die in the war.
3. We are afraid that we may not be able to come to Rome on January 29th.
4. Many people are afraid that they will die.
5. The soldiers were afraid that they would be defeated by the enemy.
6. Don't be afraid that your sister will not arrive.
7. Pseudolus was afraid that the cobbler would catch him.



8. Are you afraid that I shall beat you with this long stick ?
9. We are afraid that he has already set out for Tarentum.
10. I was afraid that my money had been stolen by the thief.

## B

1. We ought not to be afraid that the city will be captured.
2. When the general had been killed the soldiers fled.
3. Don't ask me where the camp is. You must look for it yourself.
4. We know that Romulus killed Remus because he jumped over the wall.
5. They followed the old man in order to find his home.
6. Ask him not to make so many mistakes.
7. I am afraid that you may discover where I have hidden my money.
8. Did you ask if he had seen our friends in the market-place ?
9. This sentence is so difficult that I cannot write it.
10. They ran quickly through the streets in order not to be caught by the police.

## 34 &amp; 35

## A

1. If you were a friend, you would give me the apple.
2. If he had not sailed to Gades, he would not have died.
3. If they were to find the money, they would return it to you.
4. If he were my son, I would beat him.
5. Unless you had seen him, you would never have recognized him.
6. If we had not set out early, we should not have arrived at Rome before night.
7. If you were in camp to-day, you would be working hard.

8. What would have happened, if we had not defeated the enemy ?
9. If we were to kill the cows, we would not get any milk.
10. If I were you, I would not remain in the house.

## B

1. If you give me the money, I will buy a dog.
2. The soldiers fought so bravely that they quickly defeated the enemy.
3. We are afraid that he is about to tell a lie.
4. If I sit down by the road, I will fall asleep at once.
5. When he heard these sobs he awoke immediately.
6. If I had not seen Androclus and the lion, I would not have believed you.
7. If only you would leave the city to-day.
8. There was no doubt that Pseudolus stole the money.
9. Some people say that Romulus founded Rome.
10. If Romulus had not founded Rome, we should never have learnt Latin.

## 36

## A

1. If the conspirators had not killed Caesar, he would have been a tyrant.
2. He assures me that he has read through all this book.
3. Tell me which story pleased you most.
4. The mountain was so high that I could not climb it.
5. He was afraid that the statue would fall on him.
6. The innkeeper was about to go to market to buy some wine.
7. The lictor told the mob to keep quiet and not to shout.
8. We must fill this jar with milk.
9. While you were reading, I was writing.
10. When he had made his speech, Cicero went home.

## B

1. Would you give me some fish, if you were to catch any ?
2. There are some people who say that those soldiers did not fight bravely.
3. The night is so dark that I cannot see where I am.
4. If you do that again I will order the police to arrest you.
5. I am afraid that you will not find any corpses in this garden.
6. I know that the soldier, who has many wounds, has fought in many battles.
7. They must find out why he has forgotten his name.
8. They drew their swords to kill the enemy with them.
9. Since we have read this book we will burn it.
10. Nobody will prevent me from seeing Pseudolus again.



**PARS QUINTA**  
**VOCABULA**



## VOCABULA

## 1 &amp; 2

- |                             |                               |
|-----------------------------|-------------------------------|
| 1. callidus-a-um            | 15. obviam eō-īre-ivī (iī)    |
| 2. causa-ae (f)             | (+ <i>Dat.</i> )              |
| 3. cīvis-is (m <i>or</i> f) | 16. prōmittō-ere-prōmīsī      |
| 4. cōnsilium-iī (n)         | (+ <i>Dat.</i> )              |
| 5. cruciō-āre-āvī           | 17. reprehendō-ere-reprehendī |
| 6. deus-deī (m)             | 18. retineō-ēre-retinūī       |
| 7. dolor-ōris (m)           | 19. rē vērā                   |
| 8. forum-ī (n)              | 20. sānō-āre-āvī              |
| 9. immortalis-is-e          | 21. sānus-a-um                |
| 10. labor-ōris (m)          | 22. sepeliō-īre-sepelivī      |
| 11. liberō-āre-āvī          | 23. singulī-ae-a              |
| 12. meminī                  | 24. tollō-ere-sustulī         |
| 13. mittō-ere-mīsī          | 25. verbum-ī (n)              |
| 14. morbus-ī (m)            | 26. vulnerō-āre-āvī           |

## 3 &amp; 4

- |                                            |                        |
|--------------------------------------------|------------------------|
| 1. dēbeō - ēre - dēbui - dēbitus           | 6. illic               |
| 2. dēcipiō-ere-dēcēpī-dēceptus             | 7. inimicus-a-um       |
| 3. exhauriō - ire - exhausī -<br>exhaustus | 8. iussa-ōrum (n. pl.) |
| 4. frūgēs-frūgum (f. pl.)                  | 9. magistrātus-ūs (m)  |
| 5. hīc                                     | 10. nūper              |
|                                            | 11. quantus-a-um?      |



## VOCABULARY

### 1 & 2

- |                        |                      |
|------------------------|----------------------|
| 1. clever, cunning     | 15. I meet           |
| 2. cause, reason       | 16. I promise        |
| 3. citizen             | 17. I blame          |
| 4. plan                | 18. I keep back      |
| 5. I torture           | 19. really, in truth |
| 6. god                 | 20. I cure           |
| 7. pain                | 21. cured, well      |
| 8. forum, market-place | 22. I bury           |
| 9. immortal            | 23. one by one       |
| 10. toil, hard work    | 24. I raise, lift    |
| 11. I free, let go     | 25. word             |
| 12. I remember         | 26. I wound          |
| 13. I send             |                      |
| 14. disease, illness   |                      |

### 3 & 4

- |                        |                                 |
|------------------------|---------------------------------|
| 1. I owe, must         | 6. there, in that place         |
| 2. I deceive           | 7. unfriendly                   |
| 3. I drink up          | 8. orders, commands             |
| 4. fruits              | 9. magistrate                   |
| 5. here, in this place | 10. just now, freshly, recently |
|                        | 11. how much? how big?          |

## 5

- |                                                    |                                                     |
|----------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------|
| 1. alter-altera-alterum ( <i>Gen.</i><br>alterius) | 13. opīnor-ārī-opīnātus sum                         |
| 2. comes-comitis (m <i>or</i> f)                   | 14. opus-eris (n)<br>opus est mihi (+ <i>Abl.</i> ) |
| 3. comitor-ārī-comitātus sum                       | 15. paene                                           |
| 4. comportō-āre-āvī-ātus                           | 16. parum (+ <i>Gen.</i> )                          |
| 5. conloquor-ī-conlocūtus sum                      | 17. perterreō - ēre - perterrui -<br>perterritus    |
| 6. cōnsidō-ere-cōnsēdī- ———                        | 18. proficīscor-ī-profectus sum                     |
| 7. cōnsistō-ere-cōnstitī- ———                      | 19. prōgredior-ī-prōgressus sum                     |
| 8. expergīscor-ī-experrectus<br>sum                | 20. regredior-ī-regressus sum                       |
| 9. hinc                                            | 21. sequor-ī-secūtus sum                            |
| 10. mīror-ārī-mīrātus sum                          | 22. suspīcor-ārī-suspīcātus sum                     |
| 11. obdormiō-īre-obdormīvī- —                      | 23. videor-ērī-vīsus sum                            |
| 12. occidō-ere-occidī- ———                         |                                                     |

1. one (*or* the other) of two
2. companion
3. I go with, accompany
4. I carry off
5. I talk with
6. I sit down
7. I stop, halt
8. I wake up
9. from this place
10. I wonder at, am amazed
11. I fall asleep
12. I go down, sink, set
13. I suppose, think
14. task, work  
I need
15. almost
16. not enough, too little
17. I completely terrify
18. I set out
19. I go forward, advance
20. I go back, retreat
21. I follow
22. I suspect, am suspicious
23. I seem



## 6

- |                                                              |                                                 |
|--------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------|
| 1. aedificō-āre-āvi-ātus                                     | 17. Kalendae-ārum (f. pl.)                      |
| 2. ager-agrī (m)                                             | 18. latrō-ōnis (m)                              |
| 3. arma-ōrum (n. pl.)                                        | 19. lupa-ae (f)                                 |
| 4. auferō - auferre - abstulī -<br>ablātus                   | 20. mendax-ācis (m <i>or</i> f)                 |
| 5. captivus-ī (m)                                            | 21. mentior-irī-mentitus sum                    |
| 6. centuriō-ōnis (m)                                         | 22. morior-morī-mortuus sum                     |
| 7. cognōscō - ere - cognōvī -<br>cognitus                    | 23. nātus-ūs (m)                                |
| 8. cōgō-ere-coēgī-coactus                                    | 24. ovis-is (f)                                 |
| 9. condō-ere-condidī-conditus                                | 25. pāstor-ōris (m)                             |
| 10. dēserō - ere - dēseruī -<br>dēsertus                     | 26. populor - ārī - populātus<br>sum            |
| 11. ēducō-āre-āvi-ātus                                       | 27. quod                                        |
| 12. effundō-ere-effūdī-effūsus                               | 28. rēgnum-ī (n)                                |
| 13. expōnō - ere - exposuī -<br>expositus                    | 29. senex, (senior) nātū māior,<br>nātū maximus |
| 14. geminus-ī (m)                                            | 30. super (+ <i>Acc.</i> )                      |
| 15. impetus-ūs (m)<br>impetum faciō (+ in +<br><i>Acc.</i> ) | 31. tantus-a-um                                 |
| 16. incipiō-ere-(coepī)-(coeptus)                            | 32. templum-ī (n)                               |
|                                                              | 33. trahō-ere-trāxī-tractus                     |
|                                                              | 34. vetō-āre-vetuī-vetitus                      |

## 7 &amp; 8

- |                                                 |                            |
|-------------------------------------------------|----------------------------|
| 1. compleō - ēre - complēvī -<br>complētus      | 6. irāscor-ī-irātus sum    |
| 2. dēpōnō - ere - deposuī -<br>dēpositus        | 7. ōrō-āre-āvi-ātus        |
| 3. equidem                                      | 8. pilum-ī (n)             |
| 4. gravis-is-e                                  | 9. precor-ārī-precātus sum |
| 5. imperō - āre - āvi - ———<br>(+ <i>Dat.</i> ) | 10. sinō-ere-sivī- ———     |
|                                                 | 11. tīrō-ōnis (m)          |
|                                                 | 12. tribūnus-ī (m)         |
|                                                 | 13. umquam                 |

## 6

- |                              |                                 |
|------------------------------|---------------------------------|
| 1. I build                   | 17. Kalends, first of the month |
| 2. field                     | 18. robber, highwayman          |
| 3. weapons                   | 19. she-wolf                    |
| 4. I steal, take away        | 20. liar                        |
| 5. prisoner                  | 21. I tell lies                 |
| 6. centurion, sergeant-major | 22. I die                       |
| 7. I recognize               | 23. birth                       |
| 8. I force, compel           | 24. sheep                       |
| 9. I found                   | 25. shepherd                    |
| 10. I desert, abandon        | 26. I lay waste                 |
| 11. I bring up, educate      | 27. because                     |
| 12. I pour out               | 28. kingdom                     |
| 13. I put out, expose        | 29. old, older, oldest          |
| 14. twin                     | 30. over, above                 |
| 15. attack                   | 31. so big, such                |
| I attack, charge             | 32. temple                      |
| 16. I begin                  | 33. I drag                      |
|                              | 34. I forbid                    |

## 7 &amp; 8

- |                 |                         |
|-----------------|-------------------------|
| 1. I fill       | 6. I get angry          |
| 2. I put down   | 7. I beg, ask           |
| 3. I myself     | 8. javelin              |
| 4. stern, heavy | 9. I beg, pray          |
| 5. I command    | 10. I allow             |
|                 | 11. recruit             |
|                 | 12. tribune, lieutenant |
|                 | 13. ever                |

## 9 &amp; 10

- |                                                      |                            |
|------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------|
| 1. adipīscor-ī-adeptus sum                           | 10. ineō-īre- iniī- ——     |
| 2. comprehendō - ere - com-<br>prehendī-comprehēnsus | cōnsilium ineō             |
| 3. cōnor-ārī-cōnātus sum                             | 11. lacus-ūs (m)           |
| 4. cōservō-āre-āvi-ātus                              | 12. nuntiō-āre-āvi-ātus    |
| 5. cōspiciō-ere-cōspexī-cōn-<br>spectus              | 13. quō cōsiliō?           |
| 6. ēgredior-ī-ēgressus sum                           | 14. rēte-is (n)            |
| 7. haud                                              | 15. satis (+ <i>Gen.</i> ) |
| 8. haud multō post                                   | 16. silentium-iī (n)       |
| 9. ibi                                               | 17. superbus-a-um          |
|                                                      | 18. ūtilis-is-e            |
|                                                      | 19. valeō-ēre-valuī- ——    |

## 11 &amp; 12

- |                             |                                           |
|-----------------------------|-------------------------------------------|
| 1. accēdō-ere-accessī- ——   | 7. praeclārus-a-um                        |
| 2. fallō-ere-fefelli-falsus | 8. retrahō - ere - retrāxī -<br>retractus |
| 3. iānua-ae (f)             | 9. saepenumērō                            |
| 4. paucī-ae-a               |                                           |
| 5. paucīs post diēbus       |                                           |
| 6. poēta-ae (m)             |                                           |

## 13 &amp; 14

- |                                             |                                         |
|---------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------|
| 1. āmittō-ere-āmisi-āmissus                 | 8. nāscor-ī-nātus sum                   |
| 2. aptus-a-um                               | 9. pignus-oris (n)                      |
| 3. bini-ae-a                                | 10. propinquus-a-um                     |
| 4. cārus-a-um                               | 11. simulatque                          |
| 5. compōnō - ere - composui -<br>compositus | 12. taberna-ae (f)                      |
| 6. dēmōnstrō-āre-āvi-ātus                   | 13. timor-ōris (m)                      |
| 7. indūcō - ere - indūxī -<br>inductus      | 14. vetus-us-us ( <i>Gen. veteris</i> ) |



**9 & 10**

1. I get
2. I arrest, seize
3. I try
4. I preserve
5. I catch sight of
6. I go out
7. not
8. not long after
9. there, in that place

10. I go in, enter upon  
I form a plan
11. lake
12. I bring news of, announce
13. for what purpose? why?
14. net
15. enough
16. silence
17. proud
18. useful
19. I am well

**11 & 12**

1. I go to, approach
2. I trick, deceive
3. door
4. a few
5. a few days later
6. poet

7. famous
8. I drag back, withdraw
9. often

**13 & 14**

1. I lose
2. fitting, suitable
3. a pair
4. dear
5. I compose, make
6. I show, prove
7. I draw on, lead on

8. I am born
9. pledge, wager, security
10. neighbouring, nearby
11. as soon as
12. shop
13. fear
14. old

## 15

1. āra-ae (f)
2. audeō-ēre-ausus sum
3. castra-ōrum (n. pl.)
4. clādēs-is (f)
5. cognōmen-inis (n)
6. conciliō - āre - āvī - ātus -  
ātūrus
7. cōsul-cōsulis (m)
8. dēliberō - āre - āvī - ———  
ātūrus
9. exemplum-ī (n)
10. explōrō - āre - āvī - ātus -  
ātūrus
11. extrā (+ *Acc.*)
12. frustrā
13. honōs-ōris (m)
14. Idūs-uum (f. pl.)
15. legiō-ōnis (f)
16. liber-era-erum
17. lictor-ōris (m)
18. nōbilis-is-e
19. noceō - ēre - nocuī - ———  
-nocitūrus (+ *Dat.*)
20. obsideō - ēre - obsēdī -  
obsessus-obsessūrus
21. obstō - āre - obstiti - ———  
- ——— (+ *Dat.*)
22. ordō-ordinis (m)
23. pater cōscriptus-ī (m)
24. patior-ī-passus sum
25. patria-ae (f)
26. pax-pācis (f)  
pācem compōnō-ere
27. scriba-ae (m)
28. senātor-ōris (m)
29. soleō-ēre-solitus sum  
(+ *Infin.*)
30. trānseō - ire - trānsiī - ———  
-trānsitūrus
31. turbō - āre - āvī - ātus -  
ātūrus
32. vastō-āre-āvī-ātus-ātūrus
33. vel, vel . . . vel
34. vīlis-is-e

## 16 &amp; 17

1. animus-ī (m)
2. avus-ī (m)
3. difficilis-is-e
4. legō - ere - lēgī - lectus -  
lectūrus
5. negō-āre-āvī-ātus-ātūrus
6. peccō-āre-āvī- ——— -ātūrus
7. pondus-eris (n)
8. praeter (+ *Acc.*)
9. quippe quī (+ *Subjunctive*)
10. sententia-ae (f)
11. spērō-āre-āvī-ātus-ātūrus
12. ūtor-ī-ūsus sum (+ *Abl.*)

## 15

- |                                        |                                                 |
|----------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------|
| 1. altar                               | 19. I harm, injure                              |
| 2. I dare                              | 20. I besiege                                   |
| 3. camp                                | 21. I stand in the way of,<br>obstruct, prevent |
| 4. destruction, disaster               | 22. line, rank                                  |
| 5. surname                             | 23. senator                                     |
| 6. I placate, make friends<br>with     | 24. I suffer                                    |
| 7. consul, chief magistrate            | 25. native land                                 |
| 8. I deliberate, consider              | 26. peace<br>I make peace                       |
| 9. example                             | 27. secretary, clerk                            |
| 10. I explore, examine, consider       | 28. senator                                     |
| 11. outside                            | 29. I am accustomed,<br>I usually . . . .       |
| 12. in vain                            | 30. I go across                                 |
| 13. honour                             | 31. I disturb                                   |
| 14. Ides, 13th or 15th of the<br>month | 32. I devastate                                 |
| 15. legion, regiment                   | 33. or, either . . . or                         |
| 16. free                               | 34. cheap                                       |
| 17. lictor, consul's attendant         |                                                 |
| 18. noble, high-born                   |                                                 |

## 16 &amp; 17

- |                    |                   |
|--------------------|-------------------|
| 1. mind            | 7. weight, mass   |
| 2. grandfather     | 8. past, beyond   |
| 3. difficult       | 9. because, since |
| 4. I read          | 10. opinion       |
| 5. I deny, say not | 11. I hope        |
| 6. I do wrong, sin | 12. I use         |



## 18 &amp; 19

- |                                              |                                                       |
|----------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------|
| 1. adhūc                                     | 6. perlegō - ere - perlēgi -<br>perlectus-perlectūrus |
| 2. coepī - coepisse - coeptus -<br>coeptūrus | 7. quisquis-quicquid                                  |
| 3. minor-ārī-minātus sum                     | 8. sēcūrus-a-um                                       |
| 4. onus-oneris (n)                           | 9. unde                                               |
| 5. parēns-entis (m or f)                     | 10. utrum . . . necne                                 |

## 20 &amp; 21

- |                                                           |                                               |
|-----------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------|
| 1. adfirmō - āre - āvī - ātus -<br>ātūrus                 | 6. loquor-i-locūtus sum                       |
| 2. arcessō - ere - arcessivī -<br>arcessitus-arcessitūrus | 7. moneō - ēre - monuī -<br>monitus-monitūrus |
| 3. cēna-ae (f)                                            | 8. prō certō habeō-ēre                        |
| 4. cinis-eris (m)                                         | 9. sēcrētō                                    |
| 5. concurrō-ere-concurri- ———<br>-conkursūrus             | 10. simulō - āre- āvī - ātus -<br>ātūrus      |

**18 & 19**

- |                            |                                                                     |
|----------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 1. as yet, till now, still | 6. I read through                                                   |
| 2. I begin                 | 7. whoever, whatever                                                |
| 3. I threaten              | 8. carefree                                                         |
| 4. load, burden            | 9. from whom, from where?                                           |
| 5. parent                  | 10. whether . . . or not ( <i>in</i><br><i>Indirect Questions</i> ) |

**20 & 21**

- |                                       |                   |
|---------------------------------------|-------------------|
| 1. I assure                           | 6. I talk, speak  |
| 2. I send for, fetch                  | 7. I warn, advise |
| 3. dinner                             | 8. I am certain   |
| 4. ash                                | 9. secretly       |
| 5. I run in a crowd, rush<br>together | 10. I pretend     |

## 22

- |                                                    |                                                               |
|----------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------|
| 1. ac                                              | 17. prōdō - ere - prōdidi -<br>prōditus-prōditūrus            |
| 2. apud (+ <i>Acc.</i> )                           | 18. reddō - ere - reddidi -<br>redditus-redditūrus            |
| 3. audācia-ae (f)                                  | 19. repellō - ere - reppuli -<br>repulsus-repulsūrus          |
| 4. creō-āre-āvi-ātus-ātūrus                        | 20. resistō - ere - restiti - —<br>- ———(+ <i>Dat.</i> )      |
| 5. dux-ducis (m)                                   | 21. rēspública-reīpúblicae (f)                                |
| 6. expugnō - āre - āvi - ātus -<br>ātūrus          | 22. saeviō - īre - saevii - —<br>- ———                        |
| 7. famēs-is (f)                                    | 23. sēcēdō - ere - sēcēssi - —<br>-sēcēssūrus                 |
| 8. inrumpō - ere - inrūpi -<br>inruptus-inruptūrus | 24. serviō - īre - servii - —<br>-servitūrus (+ <i>Dat.</i> ) |
| 9. ira-ae (f)                                      | 25. stringō - ere - strinxī -<br>strictus-strictūrus          |
| 10. moveō - ēre - mōvi - mōtus -<br>mōtūrus        | 26. tribūnus-ī plēbis (m)                                     |
| 11. mulier-eris (f)                                | 27. ulcīscor-ī-ultus sum                                      |
| 12. ōdī-ōdisse                                     | 28. vir-virī (m)                                              |
| 13. ōrātiō-ōnis (f)<br>ōrātiōnem habeo             |                                                               |
| 14. penātēs-ium (m. pl.)                           |                                                               |
| 15. plebs-plēbis (f)                               |                                                               |
| 16. prōditor-ōris (m)                              |                                                               |

## 23 &amp; 24

- |                                                                             |                                                                           |
|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 1. abiciō - ere - abiēcī -<br>abiectus-abiectūrus                           | 6. efficiō - ere - effēcī - effec-<br>tus-effectūrus ut (+ <i>Subj.</i> ) |
| 2. certiōrem faciō - ere - fēcī -<br>factus-factūrus<br>certior fiō - fierī | 7. in eō est ut (+ <i>Subj.</i> )                                         |
| 3. colō - ere - colui - cultus -<br>cultūrus                                | 8. fruor-ī-fructus sum (+ <i>Abl.</i> )                                   |
| 4. contrā (+ <i>Acc.</i> )                                                  | 9. opēs-opum (f. pl.)                                                     |
| 5. convocō - āre - āvi - ātus -<br>-ātūrus                                  | 10. pius-a-um                                                             |
|                                                                             | 11. revertor-ī-reversus sum                                               |
|                                                                             | 12. tenuis-is-e                                                           |
|                                                                             | 13. testāmentum-ī (n)                                                     |



1. and
2. near, in the presence of
3. boldness, bravery
4. I make, create, appoint
5. leader
6. I storm (a city)
7. hunger
8. I burst into, rush into
9. anger
10. I move
11. woman
12. I hate
13. speech  
I make a speech
14. household gods
15. the common people
16. traitor

## 22

17. I betray
18. I make, turn, render
19. I drive back
20. I resist, withstand
21. the state
22. I am enraged
23. I go away, go on strike,  
secede, revolt
24. I serve, do a service
25. I draw (a sword)
26. tribune (magistrate) of the  
people
27. I take vengeance on
28. man

## 23 &amp; 24

- |                                              |                                  |
|----------------------------------------------|----------------------------------|
| 1. I throw away                              | 6. I cause                       |
| 2. I inform, tell<br>I am informed, told     | 7. I am about to                 |
| 3. I cultivate, till, look after,<br>worship | 8. I enjoy                       |
| 4. against                                   | 9. wealth                        |
| 5. I call together, assemble                 | 10. dutiful, loyal, affectionate |
|                                              | 11. I go back, return            |
|                                              | 12. thin                         |
|                                              | 13. will                         |

## 25 &amp; 26

- |                                                      |                                             |
|------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------|
| 1. agnōscō - ere - agnōvi-<br>agnitus-agnitūrus      | 8. libēns-ēns-ēns (libentis)                |
| 2. avunculus-ī (m)                                   | 9. lūgeō-ēre-lūxī - ——— - ———               |
| 3. candidus-a-um                                     | 10. quandōcumque                            |
| 4. exsilium-ī (n)                                    | 11. quondam                                 |
| 5. exsul-exsulis (m or f)                            | 12. usque ad (+ <i>Acc.</i> )               |
| 6. fūrtum-ī (n)                                      | 13. vehō - ere - vexī - vectus-<br>vectūrus |
| 7. impōnō - ere - imposui -<br>impositus-impositūrus | vehor-ī-vectus sum                          |
|                                                      | 14. vis, vim, vī, virēs . . . (f)           |

## 27 &amp; 28

- |                                                          |                                                      |
|----------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------|
| 1. addūcō - ere - addūxī -<br>adductus-adductūrus        | 9. māchina-ae (f)                                    |
| 2. adferō - adferre - attulī -<br>allātus-allātūrus      | 10. mereō-ēre-meruī-meritus-<br>meritūrus            |
| 3. aedēs-ium (f. pl.)                                    | 11. passim                                           |
| 4. circumdō - dare - dedī -<br>datus-datūrus             | 12. petō - ere - petīvī - petitus -<br>petitūrus     |
| 5. condiciō-iōnis (f)                                    | 13. reiciō - ere - reiēcī - reiectus -<br>reiectūrus |
| 6. dispōnō - ere - disposui -<br>dispositus-dispositūrus | 14. rostrum-ī (n)                                    |
| 7. extrēmus-a-um                                         | 15. vagor-ārī-vagātus sum                            |
| 8. interdiū                                              | 16. valdē                                            |

**25 & 26**

- |                       |                      |
|-----------------------|----------------------|
| 1. I recognize        | 8. willing           |
| 2. uncle              | 9. I grieve, am sad  |
| 3. white              | 10. whenever         |
| 4. exile              | 11. once upon a time |
| 5. exile, outlaw      | 12. right up to      |
| 6. theft              | 13. I carry          |
| 7. I put in, put upon | I ride               |
|                       | 14. strength, force  |

**27 & 28**

- |                           |                                |
|---------------------------|--------------------------------|
| 1. I lead to, bring to    | 9. engine, device, trap        |
| 2. I bring, carry to      | 10. I earn, deserve            |
| 3. house                  | 11. in many places, everywhere |
| 4. I put round, surround  | 12. I go after, seek, ask for  |
| 5. term, condition        | 13. I throw back               |
| 6. I arrange, place       | 14. beak                       |
| 7. furthest, extreme, end | 15. I wander                   |
| 8. in the daytime         | 16. very much                  |



## 29

- |                                                        |                                                         |
|--------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------|
| 1. agō-ere-ēgī-actus-actūrus                           | 14. lex-lēgis (f)                                       |
| 2. aliquot                                             | 15. māiōrēs-um (m. pl.)                                 |
| 3. bellum-ī (n)<br>bellum indicō -ere (+ <i>Dat.</i> ) | 16. opprimō - ere - oppressī -<br>oppressus-oppressūrus |
| 4. cēnsor-ōris (m)                                     | 17. patientia-ae (f)                                    |
| 5. cōnfiteor-ērī-cōnfessus sum                         | 18. praetor-ōris (m)                                    |
| 6. coniūrātiō-ōnis (f)                                 | 19. salūs-ūtis (f)                                      |
| 7. coniūrō-āre-āvi-ātus-ātūrus                         | 20. seges-etis (f)                                      |
| 8. damnō-āre-āvi-ātus-ātūrus                           | 21. senātus-ūs (m)                                      |
| 9. dēcernō - ere - dēcrēvi -<br>dēcrētus-dēcrētūrus    | 22. sentiō - ire - sēnsī - sēnsus -<br>sēnsūrus         |
| 10. dētrimentum-ī (n)                                  | 23. tacitus-a-um                                        |
| 11. diligēns-ēns-ēns (-entis)                          | 24. uterque-utraq-ue-utrumque                           |
| 12. gubernō - āre - āvi - ātus -<br>ātūrus             | 25. venia-ae (f)                                        |
| 13. labōrō - āre - āvi - ———<br>-ātūrus                | 26. vulnus-eris (n)                                     |
|                                                        | 27. vultus-ūs (m)                                       |

## 30 &amp; 31

- |                                         |                                                            |
|-----------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------|
| 1. adeō                                 | 9. occāsus-ūs sōlis (m)                                    |
| 2. apis-is (f)                          | 10. praebeō-ēre-praebuī-<br>praebitus-praebitūrus          |
| 3. ardor-ōris (m)                       | 11. prohibeō - ēre - prohibuī -<br>prohibitus-prohibitūrus |
| 4. avidus-a-um                          | 12. tot                                                    |
| 5. cēseō-ēre-cēnsuī-cēnsus-<br>cēnsūrus | 13. umbra-ae (f)                                           |
| 6. lector-ōris (m)                      | 14. vacuus-a-um                                            |
| 7. mōtus-ūs (m)                         |                                                            |
| 8. nātūra-ae (f)<br>nātūra locī         |                                                            |

1. I drive
2. a few
3. war  
    I declare war
4. censor
5. I confess, admit
6. conspiracy
7. I conspire
8. I condemn
9. I decide, decree
10. loss, damage, harm
11. diligent, careful
12. I steer, control
13. I work

14. law
15. ancestors
16. I oppress
17. patience, endurance
18. praetor, judge
19. safety
20. crop
21. senate
22. I feel
23. silent
24. both
25. pardon
26. wound
27. face, expression

## 30 &amp; 31

1. so
2. bee
3. heat
4. greedy
5. I think
6. reader
7. movement, motion
8. nature  
    countryside

9. sunset
10. I give, provide, display,  
    show
11. I prevent, hinder
12. so many
13. shade, shadow
14. empty

**32 & 33**

- |                                                       |                                             |
|-------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------|
| 1. cēdō - ere - cessī - ——<br>-cessūrus               | 6. posterior - ior - ius (pos-<br>teriōris) |
| 2. cupidus-a-um                                       | 7. tenebrae-ārum (f. pl.)                   |
| 3. error-ōris (m)                                     | 8. ulterior-ior-ius (ulteriōris)            |
| 4. ēvādō - ere - ēvāsī - ——<br>-ēvāsūrus              | 9. vereor-ērī-veritus sum                   |
| 5. impediō - ire - impedīi -<br>impeditus-impeditūrus |                                             |

**34 & 35**

- |                                                   |                 |
|---------------------------------------------------|-----------------|
| 1. collis-is (m)                                  | 4. praetereā    |
| 2. dēscendō - ere - dēscendī -<br>—— -dēscēnsūrus | 5. rīsus-ūs (m) |
| 3. intempestā nocte                               | 6. utinam       |

**36**

- |                                                          |                                                       |
|----------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------|
| 1. cōgitō-āre-āvi-ātus-ātūrus                            | 12. potius                                            |
| 2. coniūrātus-ī (m)                                      | 13. repōnō - ere - reposuī -<br>repositus-repositūrus |
| 3. expectō - āre - āvi - ātus -<br>ātūrus                | 14. revocō - āre - āvi - ātus -<br>ātūrus             |
| 4. honestus-a-um                                         | 15. signum-ī (n)                                      |
| 5. mōbilis-is-e                                          | 16. statua-ae (f)                                     |
| 6. mortālis-is-e                                         | 17. supplex-supplicis                                 |
| 7. mortifer-era-erum                                     | 18. tempestās-ātis (f)                                |
| 8. nex-necis (f)                                         | 19. tyrannus-ī (m)                                    |
| 9. oblivīscor-ī-oblitus sum<br>(+ <i>Gen.</i> )          | 20. vātēs-is (m)                                      |
| 10. orior - irī - ortus sum<br>-oritūrus                 | 21. vigilia-ae (f)                                    |
| 11. percutiō - ere - percussī -<br>percussus-percussūrus | 22. vulgus-ī (n)                                      |



**32 & 33**

1. I walk, go
2. eager, desirous
3. mistake
4. I go out, get out
5. I hinder

6. behind the other
7. shade, darkness
8. further
9. I am afraid, fear

**34 & 35**

1. hill
2. I descend, go down
3. at dead of night

4. moreover, what is more
5. laughter
6. if only

**36**

1. I think, ponder
2. conspirator
3. I wait for
4. honourable
5. fickle, unstable
6. mortal, human
7. fatal
8. murder
9. I forget
10. I arise
11. I hit, strike

12. rather
13. I put back
14. I recall
15. signal, sign
16. statue
17. petitioner, penitent
18. time, weather
19. tyrant
20. prophet, soothsayer
21. watch, time of night
22. mob, common people

**PARS SEXTA**  
**ARS GRAMMATICA**

I. NOUNS

First Declension

	<b>porta-ae (f), door, gate</b>	
	<i>Singular</i>	<i>Plural</i>
<i>Nominative</i>	porta	portae
<i>Vocative</i>	porta	portae
<i>Accusative</i>	portam	portās
<i>Genitive</i>	portae	portārum
<i>Dative</i>	portae	portis
<i>Ablative</i>	portā	portis

Second Declension

	<b>libellus-i (m), notebook</b>		<b>puer-pueri (m), boy</b>	
	<i>Singular</i>	<i>Plural</i>	<i>Singular</i>	<i>Plural</i>
<i>Nominative</i>	libellus	libelli	puer	puerī
<i>Vocative</i>	libelle	libelli	puer	puerī
<i>Accusative</i>	libellum	libellōs	puerum	puerōs
<i>Genitive</i>	libelli	libellōrum	puerī	puerōrum
<i>Dative</i>	libellō	libellis	puerō	puerīs
<i>Ablative</i>	libellō	libellis	puerō	puerīs

	<b>magister-stri (m), master</b>		<b>baculum-i (n), stick</b>	
	<i>Singular</i>	<i>Plural</i>	<i>Singular</i>	<i>Plural</i>
<i>Nominative</i>	magister	magistri	baculum	bacula
<i>Vocative</i>	magister	magistri	baculum	bacula
<i>Accusative</i>	magistrum	magistrōs	baculum	bacula
<i>Genitive</i>	magistri	magistrōrum	baculi	baculōrum
<i>Dative</i>	magistrō	magistrīs	baculō	baculis
<i>Ablative</i>	magistrō	magistrīs	baculō	baculis



	<b>vir-virī (m), man</b>			<b>deus-deī (m), god</b>	
	<i>Singular</i>	<i>Plural</i>		<i>Singular</i>	<i>Plural</i>
<i>Nominative</i>	vir	virī		deus	dī (deī)
<i>Vocative</i>	vir	virī		deus	dī (deī)
<i>Accusative</i>	virum	virōs		deum	deōs
<i>Genitive</i>	virī	virōrum (virum)		deī	deōrum (deum)
<i>Dative</i>	virō	virīs		deō	dīs (deīs)
<i>Ablative</i>	virō	virīs		deō	dīs (deīs)

**Third Declension**

(a)	<b>pēs-pedis (m), foot</b>			<b>corpus-corporis (n), body</b>	
	<i>Singular</i>	<i>Plural</i>		<i>Singular</i>	<i>Plural</i>
<i>Nominative</i>	pēs	pedēs		corpus	corpora
<i>Vocative</i>	pēs	pedēs		corpus	corpora
<i>Accusative</i>	pedem	pedēs		corpus	corpora
<i>Genitive</i>	pedis	pedum		corporis	corporum
<i>Dative</i>	pedī	pedibus		corporī	corporibus
<i>Ablative</i>	pede	pedibus		corpore	corporibus

	<b>pater-patris (m), father</b>			<b>senex-senis (m), old man</b>	
	<i>Singular</i>	<i>Plural</i>		<i>Singular</i>	<i>Plural</i>
<i>Nominative</i>	pater	patrēs		senex	senēs
<i>Vocative</i>	pater	patrēs		senex	senēs
<i>Accusative</i>	patrem	patrēs		senem	senēs
<i>Genitive</i>	patris	patrum		senis	senum
<i>Dative</i>	patri	patribus		senī	senibus
<i>Ablative</i>	patre	patribus		sene	senibus

(b)	auris-auris (f), <i>ear</i>		pōns-pontis (m), <i>bridge</i>	
	<i>Singular</i>	<i>Plural</i>	<i>Singular</i>	<i>Plural</i>
<i>Nominative</i>	auris	aurēs	pōns	pontēs
<i>Vocative</i>	auris	aurēs	pōns	pontēs
<i>Accusative</i>	aurem	aurēs	pontem	pontēs
<i>Genitive</i>	auris	aurium	pontis	pontium
<i>Dative</i>	aurī	auribus	pontī	pontibus
<i>Ablative</i>	aure	auribus	ponte	pontibus

	animal-animālis (n), <i>animal</i>		mare-maris (n), <i>sea</i>	
	<i>Singular</i>	<i>Plural</i>	<i>Singular</i>	<i>Plural</i>
<i>Nominative</i>	animal	animālia	mare	maria
<i>Vocative</i>	animal	animālia	mare	maria
<i>Accusative</i>	animal	animālia	mare	maria
<i>Genitive</i>	animālis	animālium	maris	marium
<i>Dative</i>	animālī	animālibus	marī	maribus
<i>Ablative</i>	animālī	animālibus	marī	maribus

	vis (f), <i>force</i>		bōs-bovis (m), <i>bull</i>	
	<i>Singular</i>	<i>Plural</i>	<i>Singular</i>	<i>Plural</i>
<i>Nominative</i>	vis	virēs	bōs	bovēs
<i>Vocative</i>	vis	virēs	bōs	bovēs
<i>Accusative</i>	vim	virēs	bovem	bovēs
<i>Genitive</i>	—	virium	bovis	boum
<i>Dative</i>	—	viribus	bovī	bōbus
<i>Ablative</i>	vī	viribus	bove	bōbus

**Fourth Declension**

	<b>manus-ūs (f), hand</b>		<b>genū-ūs (n), knee</b>	
	<i>Singular</i>	<i>Plural</i>	<i>Singular</i>	<i>Plural</i>
<i>Nominative</i>	manus	manūs	genū	genua
<i>Vocative</i>	manus	manūs	genū	genua
<i>Accusative</i>	manum	manūs	genū	genua
<i>Genitive</i>	manūs	manuum	genūs	genuum
<i>Dative</i>	manuī	manibus	genū	genibus
<i>Ablative</i>	manū	manibus	genū	genibus

	<b>domus-ūs (f), house, home</b>	
	<i>Singular</i>	<i>Plural</i>
<i>Nominative</i>	domus	domūs
<i>Vocative</i>	domus	domūs
<i>Accusative</i>	domum	domūs or domōs
<i>Genitive</i>	domūs	domuum or domōrum
<i>Dative</i>	domuī	domibus
<i>Ablative</i>	domō	domibus

*Note : Locative domī, at hōme.*

**Fifth Declension**

	<b>diēs-diēī (m), day</b>		<b>rēs-reī (f), thing</b>	
	<i>Singular</i>	<i>Plural</i>	<i>Singular</i>	<i>Plural</i>
<i>Nominative</i>	diēs	diēs	rēs	rēs
<i>Vocative</i>	diēs	diēs	rēs	rēs
<i>Accusative</i>	diem	diēs	rem	rēs
<i>Genitive</i>	diēī	diērum	reī	rērum
<i>Dative</i>	diēī	diēbus	reī	rēbus
<i>Ablative</i>	diē	diēbus	rē	rēbus



II. ADJECTIVES

First and Second Declension

	longus-a-um, <i>long</i>		
<i>Singular</i>	(m)	(f)	(n)
<i>Nominative</i>	longus	longa	longum
<i>Vocative</i>	longe	longa	longum
<i>Accusative</i>	longum	longam	longum
<i>Genitive</i>	longī	longae	longī
<i>Dative</i>	longō	longae	longō
<i>Ablative</i>	longō	longā	longō
<i>Plural</i>			
<i>Nominative</i>	longī	longae	longa
<i>Vocative</i>	longi	longae	longa
<i>Accusative</i>	longōs	longās	longa
<i>Genitive</i>	longōrum	longārum	longōrum
<i>Dative</i>	longīs	longīs	longīs
<i>Ablative</i>	longīs	longīs	longīs

miser-misera-miserum, *wretched*

<i>Singular</i>			
<i>Nominative</i>	miser	misera	miserum
<i>Vocative</i>	miser	misera	miserum
<i>Accusative</i>	miserum	miseram	miserum
<i>Genitive</i>	miserī	miserae	miserī
<i>Dative</i>	miserō	miserae	miserō
<i>Ablative</i>	miserō	miserā	miserō
<i>Plural</i>			
<i>Nominative</i>	miserī	miserae	misera
<i>Vocative</i>	miserī	miserae	misera
<i>Accusative</i>	miserōs	miserās	misera
<i>Genitive</i>	miserōrum	miserārum	miserōrum
<i>Dative</i>	miserīs	miserīs	miserīs
<i>Ablative</i>	miserīs	miserīs	miserīs

**pulcher-pulchra-pulchrum, beautiful**

<i>Singular</i>	(m)	(f)	(n)
<i>Nominative</i>	pulcher	pulchra	pulchrum
<i>Vocative</i>	pulcher	pulchra	pulchrum
<i>Accusative</i>	pulchrum	pulchram	pulchrum
<i>Genitive</i>	pulchrī	pulchrae	pulchrī
<i>Dative</i>	pulchrō	pulchrae	pulchrō
<i>Ablative</i>	pulchrō	pulchrā	pulchrō
<i>Plural</i>			
<i>Nominative</i>	pulchrī	pulchrae	pulchra
<i>Vocative</i>	pulchrī	pulchrae	pulchra
<i>Accusative</i>	pulchrōs	pulchrās	pulchra
<i>Genitive</i>	pulchrōrum	pulchrārum	pulchrōrum
<i>Dative</i>	pulchris	pulchris	pulchris
<i>Ablative</i>	pulchris	pulchris	pulchris

**Third Declension**

**brevis-brevis-breve, short**

<i>Singular</i>			
<i>Nominative</i>	brevis	brevis	breve
<i>Vocative</i>	brevis	brevis	breve
<i>Accusative</i>	brevem	brevem	breve
<i>Genitive</i>	brevis	brevis	brevis
<i>Dative</i>	brevī	brevī	brevī
<i>Ablative</i>	brevī	brevī	brevī
<i>Plural</i>			
<i>Nominative</i>	brevēs	brevēs	brevia
<i>Vocative</i>	brevēs	brevēs	brevia
<i>Accusative</i>	brevēs	brevēs	brevia
<i>Genitive</i>	brevium	brevium	brevium
<i>Dative</i>	brevibus	brevibus	brevibus
<i>Ablative</i>	brevibus	brevibus	brevibus



**vetus-vetus-vetus, old.**

<i>Singular</i>	(m)	(f)	(n)
<i>Nominative</i>	vetus	vetus	vetus
<i>Vocative</i>	vetus	vetus	vetus
<i>Accusative</i>	veterem	veterem	vetus
<i>Genitive</i>	veteris	veteris	veteris
<i>Dative</i>	veterī	veterī	veterī
<i>Ablative</i>	vetere	vetere	vetere
<i>Plural</i>			
<i>Nominative</i>	veterēs	veterēs	vetera
<i>Vocative</i>	veterēs	veterēs	vetera
<i>Accusative</i>	veterēs	veterēs	vetera
<i>Genitive</i>	veterum	veterum	veterum
<i>Dative</i>	veteribus	veteribus	veteribus
<i>Ablative</i>	veteribus	veteribus	veteribus

**audax-audax-audax, bold**

<i>Singular</i>			
<i>Nominative</i>	audax	audax	audax
<i>Vocative</i>	audax	audax	audax
<i>Accusative</i>	audācem	audācem	audax
<i>Genitive</i>	audācis	audācis	audācis
<i>Dative</i>	audācī	audācī	audācī
<i>Ablative</i>	audācī	audācī	audācī
<i>Plural</i>			
<i>Nominative</i>	audācēs	audācēs	audācia
<i>Vocative</i>	audācēs	audācēs	audācia
<i>Accusative</i>	audācēs	audācēs	audācia
<i>Genitive</i>	audācium	audācium	audācium
<i>Dative</i>	audācibus	audācibus	audācibus
<i>Ablative</i>	audācibus	audācibus	audācibus



**celer-celeris-celere, quick**

<i>Singular</i>	(m)	(f)	(n)
<i>Nominative</i>	celer	celeris	celere
<i>Vocative</i>	celer	celeris	celere
<i>Accusative</i>	celerem	celerem	celere
<i>Genitive</i>	celeris	celeris	celeris
<i>Dative</i>	celerī	celerī	celerī
<i>Ablative</i>	celerī	celerī	celerī

<i>Plural</i>			
<i>Nominative</i>	celerēs	celerēs	celeria
<i>Vocative</i>	celerēs	celerēs	celeria
<i>Accusative</i>	celerēs	celerēs	celeria
<i>Genitive</i>	celerium	celerium	celerium
<i>Dative</i>	celeribus	celeribus	celeribus
<i>Ablative</i>	celeribus	celeribus	celeribus

**ingēns-ingēns-ingēns, huge**

<i>Singular</i>			
<i>Nominative</i>	ingēns	ingēns	ingēns
<i>Vocative</i>	ingēns	ingēns	ingēns
<i>Accusative</i>	ingentem	ingentem	ingēns
<i>Genitive</i>	ingentis	ingentis	ingentis
<i>Dative</i>	ingenti	ingenti	ingenti
<i>Ablative</i>	ingenti	ingenti	ingenti

<i>Plural</i>			
<i>Nominative</i>	ingentēs	ingentēs	ingentia
<i>Vocative</i>	ingentēs	ingentēs	ingentia
<i>Accusative</i>	ingentēs	ingentēs	ingentia
<i>Genitive</i>	ingentium	ingentium	ingentium
<i>Dative</i>	ingentibus	ingentibus	ingentibus
<i>Ablative</i>	ingentibus	ingentibus	ingentibus

**Present Participle****ambulāns-ambulāns-ambulāns, *walking***

<i>Singular</i>	(m)	(f)	(n)
<i>Nominative</i>	ambulāns	ambulāns	ambulāns
<i>Vocative</i>	ambulāns	ambulāns	ambulāns
<i>Accusative</i>	ambulantem	ambulantem	ambulāns
<i>Genitive</i>	ambulantis	ambulantis	ambulantis
<i>Dative</i>	ambulantī	ambulantī	ambulantī
<i>Ablative</i>	ambulante (ī)	ambulante (ī)	ambulante (ī)
<i>Plural</i>			
<i>Nominative</i>	ambulantēs	ambulantēs	ambulantia
<i>Vocative</i>	ambulantēs	ambulantēs	ambulantia
<i>Accusative</i>	ambulantēs	ambulantēs	ambulantia
<i>Genitive</i>	ambulantium	ambulantium	ambulantium
<i>Dative</i>	ambulantibus	ambulantibus	ambulantibus
<i>Ablative</i>	ambulantibus	ambulantibus	ambulantibus

**Comparative****longior-longior-longius-*longer***

<i>Singular</i>			
<i>Nominative</i>	longior	longior	longius
<i>Vocative</i>	longior	longior	longius
<i>Accusative</i>	longiōrem	longiōrem	longius
<i>Genitive</i>	longiōris	longiōris	longiōris
<i>Dative</i>	longiōrī	longiōrī	longiōrī
<i>Ablative</i>	longiōre	longiōre	longiōre
<i>Plural</i>			
<i>Nominative</i>	longiōrēs	longiōrēs	longiōra
<i>Vocative</i>	longiōrēs	longiōrēs	longiōra
<i>Accusative</i>	longiōrēs	longiōrēs	longiōra
<i>Genitive</i>	longiōrum	longiōrum	longiōrum
<i>Dative</i>	longiōribus	longiōribus	longiōribus
<i>Ablative</i>	longiōribus	longiōribus	longiōribus

### III. COMPARISON

#### Adjectives

<i>Positive</i>	<i>Comparative</i>	<i>Superlative</i>	
(a) longus brevis	longior brevior	longissimus brevissimus	<i>long</i> <i>short</i>
(b) miser pulcher celer	miserior pulchrior celerior	miserrimus pulcherrimus celerrimus	<i>wretched</i> <i>beautiful</i> <i>quick</i>
(c) facilis difficilis	facilior difficilior	facillimus difficillimus	<i>easy</i> <i>difficult</i>
(d) bonus malus magnus parvus multus senex iuvenis dives vetus	melior pēior māior minor plūs nātū māior nātū minor dītior vetustior	optimus pessimus maximus minimus plūrimus nātū maximus nātū minimus dītissimus veterrimus	<i>good</i> <i>bad</i> <i>big</i> <i>small</i> <i>much</i> (pl. <i>many</i> ) <i>old</i> <i>young</i> <i>rich</i> <i>old</i>



Adverbs

<i>Positive</i>	<i>Comparative</i>	<i>Superlative</i>	
(a) longē breviter audācter	longius brevius audācius	longissimē brevissimē audācissimē	<i>lengthily</i> <i>briefly</i> <i>boldly</i>
(b) miserē pulchrē celeriter	miserius pulchrius celerius	miserrimē pulcherrimē celerrimē	<i>wretchedly</i> <i>beautifully</i> <i>quickly</i>
(c) facile difficulter	facilius difficilius	facillimē difficillimē	<i>easily</i> <i>with difficulty</i>
(d) bene male magnopere paulum multum diū	melius pēius magis minus plūs diūtius	optimē pessimē maximē minimē plūrimum diūtissimē	<i>well</i> <i>badly</i> <i>greatly</i> <i>little</i> <i>much</i> <i>long</i>

## IV. NUMBERS

	<b>quot ?</b> <i>how many</i>	<b>quotus-a-um ?</b> <i>what number</i>
I	ūnus-a-um	primus-a-um
II	duo-duae-duo	secundus-a-um
III	trēs-trēs-tria	tertius-a-um
IV	quattuor	quartus-a-um
V	quinque	quintus-a-um
VI	sex	sextus-a-um
VII	septem	septimus-a-um
VIII	octō	octāvus-a-um
IX	novem	nōnus-a-um
X	decem	decimus-a-um
XI	ūndecim	ūndecimus-a-um
XII	duodecim	duodecimus-a-um
XIII	trēdecim	tertius decimus-a-um
XIV	quattuordecim	quartus decimus-a-um
XV	quindecim	quintus decimus-a-um
XVI	sēdecim	sextus decimus-a-um
XVII	septemdecim	septimus decimus-a-um
XVIII	duodēvigintī	duodēvicēsimus-a-um
XIX	ūndēvigintī	ūndēvicēsimus-a-um
XX	vigintī	vicēsimus-a-um
XXX	trigintā	tricēsimus-a-um
XL	quadrāgintā	quadrāgēsimus-a-um
L	quinquāgintā	quinquāgēsimus-a-um
LX	sexāgintā	sexāgēsimus-a-um
LXX	septuāgintā	septuāgēsimus-a-um
LXXX	octōgintā	octōgēsimus-a-um
XC	nōnāgintā	nonāgēsimus-a-um
C	centum	centēsimus-a-um
M	mille (pl. milia)	millēsimus-a-um

	<b>ūnus-a-um, <i>one</i></b>			<b>duo-duae-duo, <i>two</i></b>		
<i>Nominative</i>	ūnus	ūna	ūnum	duo	duae	duo
<i>Accusative</i>	ūnum	ūnam	ūnum	duōs	duās	duo
<i>Genitive</i>	ūnīus	ūnīus	ūnīus	duōrum	duārum	duōrum
<i>Dative</i>	ūnī	ūnī	ūnī	duōbus	duābus	duōbūs
<i>Ablative</i>	ūnō	ūnā	ūnō	duōbus	duābus	duōbus

**trēs-trēs-tria, *three***

<i>Nominative</i>	trēs	trēs	tria
<i>Accusative</i>	trēs	trēs	tria
<i>Genitive</i>	trium	trium	trium
<i>Dative</i>	tribus	tribus	tribus
<i>Ablative</i>	tribus	tribus	tribus

*Note* : ambō-ae-ambō, *both*, is declined like duo.

## V. DATES

**Mēnsis-is (m), *month*.**

Iānuārius-a-um	Iulius-a-um (Quintīlis-is-e)
Februārius-a-um	Augustus-a-um (Sextīlis-is-e)
Martius-a-um	September-bris-bre
Aprīlis-is-e	Octōber-bris-bre
Māius-a-um	November-bris-bre
Iūnius-a-um	December-bris-bre

**Diēs-eī (m), *day***

Kalendae-ārum (f)	<i>1st of the month.</i>
Nōnae-ārum (f)	<i>5th or 7th of the month.</i>
Idūs-uum (f)	<i>13th or 15th of the month.</i>



VI. PRONOUNS

	ego, <i>I</i>	tū, <i>you</i>	sē, <i>himself, herself</i>
<i>Nominative</i>	ego	tū	—
<i>Accusative</i>	mē	tē	sē
<i>Genitive</i>	meī	tuī	sui
<i>Dative</i>	mihi	tibi	sibi
<i>Ablative</i>	mē	tē	sē

	nōs, <i>we</i>	vōs, <i>you</i>	sē, <i>themselves</i>
<i>Nominative</i>	nōs	vōs	—
<i>Accusative</i>	nōs	vōs	sē
<i>Genitive</i>	nostrum	vestrum	sui
<i>Dative</i>	nōbis	vōbis	sibi
<i>Ablative</i>	nōbis	vōbis	sē

**hic-haec-hoc, *this***

*Singular*

<i>Nominative</i>	hic	haec	hoc
<i>Accusative</i>	hunc	hanc	hoc
<i>Genitive</i>	hūius	hūius	hūius
<i>Dative</i>	huic	huic	huic
<i>Ablative</i>	hōc	hāc	hōc

*Plural*

<i>Nominative</i>	hī	hae	haec
<i>Accusative</i>	hōs	hās	haec
<i>Genitive</i>	hōrum	hārum	hōrum
<i>Dative</i>	his	his	his
<i>Ablative</i>	his	his	his

**ille-illa-illud, that**

*Singular*

<i>Nominative</i>	ille	illa	illud
<i>Accusative</i>	illum	illam	illud
<i>Genitive</i>	illius	illius	illius
<i>Dative</i>	illī	illī	illī
<i>Ablative</i>	illō	illā	illō

*Plural*

<i>Nominative</i>	illī	illae	illa
<i>Accusative</i>	illōs	illās	illa
<i>Genitive</i>	illōrum	illārum	illōrum
<i>Dative</i>	illis	illis	illis
<i>Ablative</i>	illis	illis	illis

**is-ea-id, he, she, it**

*Singular*

<i>Nominative</i>	is	ea	id
<i>Accusative</i>	eum	eam	id
<i>Genitive</i>	ēius	ēius	ēius
<i>Dative</i>	eī	eī	eī
<i>Ablative</i>	eō	eā	eō

*Plural*

<i>Nominative</i>	eī	eae	ea
<i>Accusative</i>	eōs	eās	ea
<i>Genitive</i>	eōrum	eārum	eōrum
<i>Dative</i>	eīs	eīs	eīs
<i>Ablative</i>	eīs	eīs	eīs

**idem-eadem-idem, the same**

*Singular*

<i>Nominative</i>	idem	eadem	idem
<i>Accusative</i>	eundem	eandem	idem
<i>Genitive</i>	ēiusdem	ēiusdem	ēiusdem
<i>Dative</i>	eīdem	eīdem	eīdem
<i>Ablative</i>	eōdem	eādem	eōdem

*Plural*

<i>Nominative</i>	eīdem	eaedem	eadem
<i>Accusative</i>	eōsdem	eāsdem	eadem
<i>Genitive</i>	eōrundem	eārundem	eōrundem
<i>Dative</i>	eīsdem	eīsdem	eīsdem
<i>Ablative</i>	eīsdem	eīsdem	eīsdem

**ipse-ipsa-ipsum, self**

*Singular*

<i>Nominative</i>	ipse	ipsa	ipsum
<i>Accusative</i>	ipsum	ipsam	ipsum
<i>Genitive</i>	ipsius	ipsius	ipsius
<i>Dative</i>	ipsī	ipsī	ipsī
<i>Ablative</i>	ipsō	ipsā	ipsō

*Plural*

<i>Nominative</i>	ipsī	ipsae	ipsa
<i>Accusative</i>	ipsōs	ipsās	ipsa
<i>Genitive</i>	ipsōrum	ipsārum	ipsōrum
<i>Dative</i>	ipsis	ipsis	ipsis
<i>Ablative</i>	ipsis	ipsis	ipsis



**qui-quae-quod, who, which, that**  
*Singular*

<i>Nominative</i>	quī	quae	quod
<i>Accusative</i>	quem	quam	quod
<i>Genitive</i>	cūius	cūius	cūius
<i>Dative</i>	cui	cui	cui
<i>Ablative</i>	quō	quā	quō

*Plural*

<i>Nominative</i>	quī	quae	quae
<i>Accusative</i>	quōs	quās	quae
<i>Genitive</i>	quōrum	quārum	quōrum
<i>Dative</i>	quibus	quibus	quibus
<i>Ablative</i>	quibus	quibus	quibus

*Note : quīdam-quaedam-quoddam, a, is declined like qui-quae-quod.*

**quis-quis-quid ? who, what ?**  
*Singular*

<i>Nominative</i>	quis	quis	quid
<i>Accusative</i>	quem	quam	quid
<i>Genitive</i>	cūius	cūius	cūius
<i>Dative</i>	cui	cui	cui
<i>Ablative</i>	quō	quā	quō

*Plural*

<i>Nominative</i>	quī	quae	quae
<i>Accusative</i>	quōs	quās	quae
<i>Genitive</i>	quōrum	quārum	quōrum
<i>Dative</i>	quibus	quibus	quibus
<i>Ablative</i>	quibus	quibus	quibus

*Note : aliquis-aliquis-aliquid, someone, something, is declined like quis-quis-quid.*

**nullus-nulla-nullum, none, no***Singular*

<i>Nominative</i>	nullus	nulla	nullum
<i>Accusative</i>	nullum	nullam	nullum
<i>Genitive</i>	nullius	nullius	nullius
<i>Dative</i>	nulli	nulli	nulli
<i>Ablative</i>	nullō	nullā	nullō

*Plural*

<i>Nominative</i>	nulli	nullae	nulla
<i>Accusative</i>	nullōs	nullās	nulla
<i>Genitive</i>	nullōrum	nullārum	nullōrum
<i>Dative</i>	nullis	nullis	nullis
<i>Ablative</i>	nullis	nullis	nullis

*Note* : alius-alia-aliud, *another* ; alter-altera-alterum, *a second, the other* ; sōlus-a-um, *alone* ; tōtus-tōta-tōtum, *whole* ; neuter-neutra-neutrum, *neither* ; uterque-utrumque, *both*, are declined like nullus-a-um.

**nēmō, no one**

<i>Nominative</i>	nēmō
<i>Accusative</i>	nēminem
<i>Genitive</i>	(nullius)
<i>Dative</i>	nēmini
<i>Ablative</i>	(nullō)

## VII. VERBS

pulsō-āre-āvi-ātus-ātūrus, *I strike*

## ACTIVE

*Indicative :*      *Subjunctive :**Present :*

pulsō	pulsem
pulsās	pulsēs
pulsat	pulset
pulsāmus	pulsēmus
pulsātis	pulsētis
pulsant	pulsent

*Imperative :*pulsā  
pulsāte*Future :*pulsābō  
pulsābis  
pulsābit  
pulsābimus  
pulsābitis  
pulsābunt*Infinitives :**Present :* pulsāre*Perfect :* pulsāvisse*Future :* pulsātūrus esse*Imperfect :*

pulsābam	pulsārem
pulsābās	pulsārēs
pulsābat	pulsāret
pulsābāmus	pulsārēmus
pulsābātis	pulsārētis
pulsābant	pulsārent



## ACTIVE

*Indicative : Subjunctive:**Perfect :*

pulsāvi	pulsāverim
pulsāvisti	pulsāveris
pulsāvit	pulsāverit
pulsāvimus	pulsāverimus
pulsāvistis	pulsāveritis
pulsāvērunt	pulsāverint

*Future Perfect :*

pulsāverō
pulsāveris
pulsāverit
pulsāverimus
pulsāveritis
pulsāverint

*Participles :**Present : pulsāns-āns-āns**Future : pulsātūrus-a-um**Pluperfect :*

pulsāveram	pulsāvissem
pulsāverās	pulsāvissēs
pulsāverat	pulsāvisset
pulsāverāmus	pulsāvissēmus
pulsāverātis	pulsāvissētis
pulsāverant	pulsāvissent

**pulsō-āre-āvi-ātus-ātūrus, I strike****PASSIVE*****Indicative :***      ***Subjunctive :******Present :***

pulsor	pulser
pulsāris	pulsēris
pulsātur	pulsētur
pulsāmur	pulsēmur
pulsāmini	pulsēmini
pulsantur	pulsentur

***Future :***

pulsābor
pulsāberis
pulsābitur
pulsābimur
pulsābimini
pulsābuntur

***Imperative :***

pulsāre
pulsāmini

***Infinitives :******Imperfect :***

pulsābar	pulsārer
pulsābāris	pulsārēris
pulsābātur	pulsārētur
pulsābāmur	pulsārēmur
pulsābāmini	pulsārēmini
pulsābantur	pulsārentur

***Present :*** pulsārī***Perfect :*** pulsātus esse***Future :*** pulsātum irī

## PASSIVE

*Indicative :**Subjunctive :**Perfect :*

pulsātus sum	pulsātus sim
pulsātus es	pulsātus sis
pulsātus est	pulsātus sit
pulsāti sumus	pulsāti simus
pulsāti estis	pulsāti sitis
pulsāti sunt	pulsāti sint

*Future Perfect :*

pulsātus erō
pulsātus eris
pulsātus erit
pulsāti erimus
pulsāti eritis
pulsāti erunt

*Gerundive :*

pulsandus-a-um

*Participle :**Perfect :* pulsātus-a-um*Pluperfect :*

pulsātus eram	pulsātus essem
pulsātus erās	pulsātus essēs
pulsātus erat	pulsātus esset
pulsāti erāmus	pulsāti essēmus
pulsāti erātis	pulsāti essētis
pulsāti erant	pulsati essent



**retineō-ēre-retinui-retentus-retentūrus, *I hold back***

## ACTIVE

*Indicative :*      *Subjunctive :*

*Present :*

retineō	retineam
retinēs	retineās
retinet	retineat
retinēmus	retineāmus
retinētis	retineātis
retinent	retineant

*Imperative :*

retinē  
retinēte

*Future :*

retinēbō  
retinēbis  
retinēbit  
retinēbimus  
retinēbitis  
retinēbunt

*Infinitives :*

*Present :* retinēre

*Perfect :* retinuisse

*Future :* retentūrus esse

*Imperfect :*

retinēbam	retinērem
retinēbās	retinērēs
retinēbat	retinēret
retinēbāmus	retinērēmus
retinēbātis	retinērētis
retinēbant	retinērent

## ACTIVE

*Indicative :*      *Subjunctive :*

*Perfect :*

retinui	retinuerim
retinuisti	retinueris
retinuit	retinuerit
retinuimus	retinuerimus
retinuistis	retinueritis
retinuērunt	retinuerint

*Future Perfect :*

retinuerō
retinueris
retinuerit
retinuerimus
retinueritis
retinuerint

*Participles :*

*Present :* retinēns-ēns-ēns  
*Future :* retentūrus-a-um

*Pluperfect :*

retinueram	retinuissem
retinuerās	retinuissēs
retinuerat	retinuisset
retinuerāmus	retinuissēmus
retinuerātis	retinuissētis
retinuerant	retinuissent

**retineō-ēre-retinui-retentus-retenturus, I hold back**

## PASSIVE

*Indicative :*      *Subjunctive :*

*Present :*

retineor	retinear
retinēris	retineāris
retinētur	retineātur
retinēmur	retineāmur
retinēmini	retineāmini
retinentur	retineantur

*Future :*

retinēbor
retinēberis
retinēbitur
retinēbimur
retinēbimini
retinēbuntur

*Imperative :*

retinēre
retinēmini

*Infinitives :*

*Present :* retinēri

*Perfect :* retentus esse

*Future :* retentum iri

*Imperfect :*

retinēbar	retinērer
retinēbāris	retinērēris
retinēbātur	retinērētur
retinēbāmur	retinērēmur
retinēbāmini	retinērēmini
retinēbantur	retinērentur



## PASSIVE :

*Indicative :*      *Subjunctive :*

*Perfect :*

retentus sum	retentus sim
retentus es	retentus sis
retentus est	retentus sit
retenti sumus	retenti simus
retenti estis	retenti sitis
retenti sunt	retenti sint

*Future Perfect :*

retentus erō
retentus eris
retentus erit
retenti erimus
retenti eritis
retenti erunt

*Gerundive :*

retinendus-a-um

*Participle :*

*Perfect :* retentus-a-um

*Pluperfecti :*

retentus eram	retentus essem
retentus erās	retentus essēs
retentus erat	retentus esset
retenti erāmus	retenti essēmus
retenti erātis	retenti essētis
retenti erant	retenti essent

**tangō-ere-tetigi-tactus-tactūrus, I touch**

**ACTIVE**

*Indicative :*      *Subjunctive :*

*Present :*

tangō	tangam
tangis	tangās
tangit	tangat
tangimus	tangāmus
tangitis	tangātis
tangunt	tangant

*Imperative :*

tange  
tangite

*Future :*

tangam  
tangēs  
tanget  
tangēmus  
tangētis  
tangent

*Imperfect :*

tangēbam	tangerem
tangēbās	tangerēs
tangēbat	tangeret
tangēbāmus	tangerēmus
tangēbātis	tangerētis
tangēbant	tangerent

*Infinitives :*

*Present :* tangere  
*Perfect :* tetigisse  
*Future :* tactūrus esse

## ACTIVE

*Indicative :*      *Subjunctive :*

*Perfect :*

tetigī	tetigerim
tetigistī	tetigeris
tetigit	tetigerit
tetigimus	tetigerimus
tetigistis	tetigeritis
tetigērunt	tetigerint

*Future Perfect :*

tetigerō
tetigeris
tetigerit
tetigerimus
tetigeritis
tetigerint

*Participles :*

*Present :* tangēns-ēns-ēns

*Future :* tactūrus-a-um

*Pluperfect :*

tetigeram	tetigissem
tetigerās	tetigissēs
tetigerat	tetigisset
tetigerāmus	tetigissēmus
tetigerātis	tetigissētis
tetigerant	tetigissent



**tangō-ere-tetigi-tactus-tactūrus, I touch**

**PASSIVE**

*Indicative :*      *Subjunctive :*

*Present :*

tangor	tangar
tangeris	tangāris
tangitur	tangātur
tangimur	tangāmur
tangimini	tangāmini
tanguntur	tangantur

*Future :*

tangar
tangēris
tangētur
tangēmur
tangēmini
tangentur

*Imperative :*

tangere
tangimini

*Imperfect :*

tangēbar	tangerer
tangēbāris	tangerēris
tangēbātur	tangerētur
tangēbāmur	tangerēmur
tangēbāmini	tangerēmini
tangēbantur	tangerentur

*Infinitives :*

<i>Present :</i>	tangi
<i>Perfect :</i>	tactus esse
<i>Future :</i>	tactum iri

## PASSIVE

*Indicative :**Subjunctive :**Perfect :*

tactus sum

tactus sim

tactus es

tactus sis

tactus est

tactus sit

tacti sumus

tacti simus

tacti estis

tacti sitis

tacti sunt

tacti sint

*Future Perfect :*

tactus erō

tactus eris

tactus erit

tacti erimus

tacti eritis

tacti erunt

*Gerundive :*

tangendus-a-um

*Participle :**Perfect :* tactus-a-um*Pluperfect :*

tactus eram

tactus essem

tactus erās

tactus essēs

tactus erat

tactus esset

tacti erāmus

tacti essēmus

tacti erātis

tacti essētis

tacti erant

tacti essent

**capiō-ere-cēpi-captus captūrus, I take****ACTIVE***Indicative :*      *Subjunctive :**Present :*

capiō	capiam
capis	capiās
capit	capiat
capimus	capiāmus
capitis	capiātis
capiunt	capiant

*Imperative :*

cape  
capite

*Future :*

capiam  
capiēs  
capiet  
capiēmus  
capiētis  
capient

*Infinitives :**Present :* capere*Perfect :* cēpisse*Future :* captūrus esse*Imperfect :*

capiēbam	caperem
capiēbās	caperēs
capiēbat	caperet
capiēbāmus	caperēmus
capiēbātis	caperētis
capiēbant	caperent

*Participles :**Present :* capiēns-ēns-ēns*Future :* captūrus-a-um

Other tenses are regularly formed from the Perfect stem.



## PASSIVE

*Indicative :*      *Subjunctive :*

*Present :*

capior	capiar
caperis	capiāris
capitur	capiātur
capimur	capiāmur
capimini	capiāmini
capiuntur	capiantur

*Imperative :*

capere  
capimini

*Future :*

capiar  
capiēris  
capiētur  
capiēmur  
capiēmini  
capiēntur

*Infinitives :*

*Present :* capi  
*Perfect :* captus esse  
*Future :* captum iri

*Imperfect :*

capiēbar	caperer
capiēbāris	caperēris
capiēbātur	caperētur
capiēbāmur	caperēmur
capiēbāmini	caperēmini
capiēbantur	caperentur

*Gerundive :*

capendus-a-um

*Participle :*

*Perfect :* captus-a-um

Other tenses are regularly formed from the Perfect stem.

**sepeliō-fre-sepelivl-sepultus-sepultūrus, I bury**

## ACTIVE

*Indicative :*      *Subjunctive :*

*Present :*

sepeliō	sepeliam
sepelis	sepeliās
sepelit	sepeliat
sepelīmus	sepeliāmus
sepelītis	sepeliātis
sepeliunt	sepeliant

*Imperative :*

sepeli  
sepelite

*Future :*

sepeliam  
sepeliēs  
sepeliet  
sepeliēmus  
sepeliētis  
sepelient

*Infinitives :*

*Present :* sepelire

*Perfect :* sepelivisse

*Future :* sepultūrus esse

*Imperfect :*

sepeliēbam	sepelīrem
sepeliēbās	sepelīrēs
sepeliēbat	sepelīret
sepeliēbāmus	sepelīrēmus
sepeliēbātis	sepelīrētis
sepeliēbant	sepelīrent

## ACTIVE

*Indicative :*      *Subjunctive :*

*Perfect :*

Sepelīvi	sepeliverim
sepelivistī	sepeliveris
sepelivit	sepeliverit
sepelivimus	sepeliverimus
sepelivistis	sepeliveritis
sepelivērunt	sepeliverint

*Future Perfect :*

sepeliverō  
sepeliveris  
sepeliverit  
sepeliverimus  
sepeliveritis  
sepeliverint

*Participles :*

*Present ;* sepeliēns-ēns-ēns

*Future :* sepultūrus-a-um

*Pluperfect :*

sepeliveram	sepelivissem
sepeliverās	sepelivissēs
sepeliverat	sepelivisset
sepeliverāmus	sepelivissēmus
sepeliverātis	sepelivissētis
sepeliverant	sepelivissent



**sepeliō-ire-sepelīvi-sepultus-sepultūrus, I bury****PASSIVE***Indicative :*      *Subjunctive :**Present :*

sepelior	sepeliar
sepelīris	sepeliāris
sepelītur	sepeliātur
sepelīmur	sepeliāmur
sepelīmini	sepeliāmini
sepeliuntur	sepeliantur

*Future :*

sepeliar  
 sepeliēris  
 sepeliētur  
 sepeliēmur  
 sepeliēmini  
 sepelientur

*Imperative :*

sepelire  
 sepelīmini

*Imperfect :*

sepeliēbar	sepelīrer
sepeliēbāris	sepelīrēris
sepeliēbātur	sepelīrētur
sepeliēbāmur	sepelīrēmur
sepeliēbāmini	sepelīrēmini
sepeliēbantur	sepelīrentur

*Infinitives :**Present :* sepelīrī*Perfect :* sepultus esse*Future :* sepultum īrī

## PASSIVE

*Indicative :**Subjunctive :**Perfect :*

sepultus sum

sepultus sim

sepultus es

sepultus sis

sepultus est

sepultus sit

sepultī sumus

sepultī simus

sepultī estis

sepultī sītis

sepultī sunt

sepultī sint

*Future Perfect :**Gerundive :*

sepultus erō

sepeliendus-a-um

sepultus eris

sepultus erit

sepultī erimus

sepultī eritis

sepultī erunt

*Participle :**Perfect :* sepultus-a-um*Pluperfect :*

sepultus eram

sepultus essem

sepultus erās

sepultus essēs

sepultus erat

sepultus esset

sepultī erāmus

sepultī essēmus

sepultī erātis

sepultī essētis

sepultī erant

sepultī essent

**faciō-ere-fēcī-factus-factūrus, I do, make**

**ACTIVE**

*Indicative :*      *Subjunctive :*

*Present :*

faciō	faciam
facis	faciās
facit	faciat
facimus	faciāmus
facitis	faciātis
faciunt	faciant

*Imperative :*

fac  
facite

*Future :*

faciam  
faciēs  
faciet  
faciēmus  
faciētis  
facient

*Infinitives :*

*Present :* facere

*Perfect :* fēcisse

*Future :* factūrus esse

*Imperfect :*

faciēbam	facerem
faciēbās	facerēs
faciēbat	faceret
faciēbāmus	facerēmus
faciēbātis	facerētis
faciēbant	facerent



# ACTIVE

*Indicative :*      *Subjunctive :*  
*Perfect :*

fēcī	fēcerim
fēcistī	fēceris
fēcīt	fēcerit
fēcimus	fēcerimus
fēcistis	fēceritis
fēcērunt	fēcerint

*Future Perfect :*

fēcerō
fēceris
fēcerit
fēcerimus
fēceritis
fēcerint

*Participles :*

*Present :* faciēns-ēns-ēns  
*Future :* factūrus-a-um

*Pluperfect :*

fēceram	fēcissem
fēcerās	fēcissēs
fēcerat	fēcisset
fēcerāmus	fēcissēmus
fēcerātis	fēcissētis
fēcerant	fēcissent

**flō-fieri-factus sum, I am made, become**

PASSIVE

*Indicative :*      *Subjunctive :*

*Present :*

flō	fīam
fīs	fīās
fit	fīat
	fīāmus
	fīātis
fīunt	fīant

*Imperative :*

(fī)  
(fite)

*Future :*

fīam
fīēs
fīet
fīēmus
fīētis
fient

*Infinitives :*

*Present :* fierī  
*Perfect :* factus esse  
*Future :* factum irī

*Imperfect :*

fīēbam	fierem
fīēbās	fierēs
fīēbat	fieret
fīēbāmus	fierēmus
fīēbātis	fierētis
fīēbant	fierent

## PASSIVE

*Indicative :**Subjunctive :**Perfect :*

factus sum

factus sim

factus es

factus sis

factus est

factus sit

facti sumus

facti simus

facti estis

facti sitis

facti sunt

facti sint

*Future Perfect :*

factus erō

factus eris

factus erit

facti erimus

facti eritis

facti erunt

*Gerundive :*

faciendus-a-um

*Participle :**Perfect :* factus-a-um*Pluperfect :*

factus eram

factus essem

factus erās

factus essēs

factus erat

factus esset

facti erāmus

facti essēmus

facti erātis

facti essētis

facti erant

facti essent



**sum-esse-fui- ——— -futūrus, I am**

*Indicative :*

<i>Present :</i> sum	<i>Future :</i> erō	<i>Imperfect :</i> eram
es	eris	erās
est	erit	erat
sumus	erimus	erāmus
estis	eritis	erātis
sunt	erunt	erant

*Infinitives :*

<i>Present :</i> esse
<i>Perfect :</i> fuisse
<i>Future :</i> futūrus esse, fore

*Participles :*

<i>Present :</i> -sēns-sēns-sēns
<i>Future :</i> futūrus-a-um

*Subjunctive :*

<i>Present :</i> sim	<i>Imperfect :</i> essem
sīs	essēs
sit	esset
simus	essēmus
sītis	essētis
sint	essent

Other tenses are regularly formed from the Perfect stem.

*Note :* adsum-adesse-adfui- ——— -adfutūrus, *I am present :*  
 absum-abesse-āfui- ——— -āfutūrus, *I am away ;*  
 dēsum-dēsse-defui- ——— -dēfutūrus, *I am missing ;*  
 insum-inesse-infui- ——— -infutūrus, *I am in,*  
*are conjugated like sum.*

**possum-posse-potui- — - —, I can, am able**

*Indicative :*

<i>Present :</i>	possum	<i>Future :</i>	poterō	<i>Imperfect :</i>	poteram
	potes		poteris		poterās
	potest		poterit		poterat
	possumus		poterimus		poterāmus
	potestis		poteritis		poterātis
	possunt		poterunt		poterant

*Infinitives :*

<i>Present :</i>	posse
<i>Perfect :</i>	potuisse

*Subjunctive :*

<i>Present :</i>	possim	<i>Imperfect :</i>	possem
	possis		possēs
	possit		posset
	possimus		possēmus
	possitis		possētis
	possint		possent

Other tenses are regularly formed from the Perfect Stem.

**ferō-ferre-tuī-lātus-lātūrus, I carry, bear**

**ACTIVE**

*Indicative :*

<i>Present :</i> ferō	<i>Future :</i> feram	<i>Imperfect :</i> ferēbam
fers	ferēs	ferēbās
fert	feret	ferēbat
ferimus	ferēmus	ferēbāmus
fertis	ferētis	ferēbātis
ferunt	ferent	ferēbant

*Imperative :* fer  
ferte

*Infinitives :*

<i>Present :</i> ferre
<i>Perfect :</i> tulisse
<i>Future :</i> lātūrus esse

*Participles :*

<i>Present :</i> ferēns-ēns-ēns
<i>Future :</i> lātūrus-a-um

*Subjunctive :*

<i>Present :</i> feram	<i>Imperfect :</i> ferrem
ferās	ferrēs
ferat	ferret
ferāmus	ferrēmus
ferātis	ferrētis
ferant	ferrent



## PASSIVE

*Indicative :*

<i>Present :</i> feror	<i>Future :</i> ferar	<i>Imperfect :</i> ferēbar
ferris	ferēris	ferēbāris
fertur	ferētur	ferēbātur
ferimur	ferēmur	ferēbāmur
ferimini	ferēmini	ferēbāmini
feruntur	ferentur	ferēbantur

*Imperative :* ferre  
ferimini

*Infinitives :**Participle :**Present :* ferri*Perfect :* lātus esse*Perfect :* lātus-a-um*Future :* lātum iri*Gerundive :* ferendus-a-um*Subjunctive :*

<i>Present :</i> ferar	<i>Imperfect :</i> ferrer
ferāris	ferrēris
ferātur	ferrētur
ferāmur	ferrēmur
ferāmini	ferrēmini
ferantur	ferrentur

Other tenses are regularly formed from the Perfect Stem.

*Note :* adferō-adferre-attulī-allātus-allātūrus, *I bring* ; auferō-auferre-abstulī-ablātus-ablātūrus, *I take away*,  
*are conjugated like ferō.*

**eō-īre-ivī(iī)- ——— -itūrus, I go**

*Indicative :*

<i>Present :</i> eō	<i>Future :</i> ībō	<i>Imperfect :</i> ībam
īs	ībis	ībās
it	ībit	ībat
imus	ībimus	ībāmus
ītis	ībitis	ībātis
eunt	ībunt	ībant

*Imperative : ī*

ite

*Infinitives :*

*Present :* īre

*Perfect :* īvisse, iisse

*Future :* itūrus esse

*Participles :*

*Present :* -iēns-iēns-iēns  
(-euntis)

*Future :* itūrus

*Subjunctive :*

*Present :* eam

eās

eat

eāmus

eātis

eant

*Imperfect :* irem

irēs

iret

irēmus

irētis

irent

Other tenses are regularly formed from the Perfect Stem.

*Note :* abeō-abīre-abīī- ——— -abitūrus, *I go away* ; exeō-exīre-exīī- ——— exitūrus, *I go out* ; ineō-inīre-inīī- ——— initūrus, *I enter* ; adeō-adīre-adiī- ——— -aditūrus, *I approach* ; redeō-redīre-redīī- ——— -reditūrus, *I return* ; obeō-obīre-obīī- ——— obitūrus, *I meet*,  
*are conjugated like eō.*

**volō-velle-volui, - — - —, *I wish***

*Indicative :*

<i>Present :</i> volō	<i>Future :</i> volam	<i>Imperfect :</i> volēbam
vīs	volēs	volēbās
vult	volet	volēbat
volumus	volēmus	volēbāmus
vultis	volētis	volēbātis
volunt	volent	volēbant

*Infinitives :*

*Present :* velle

*Perfect :* voluisse

*Participle :*

*Present :* volēns-ēns-ēns

*Subjunctive :*

<i>Present :</i> velim	<i>Imperfect :</i> vellem
velis	vellēs
velit	vellet
velimus	vellēmus
velitis	vellētis
velint	vellent

Other tenses are regularly formed from the Perfect Stem.



**nōlō-nōlle-nōlui- ——— - ———, I do not wish**

*Indicative :*

<i>Present :</i> nōlō	<i>Future :</i> nōlam	<i>Imperfect :</i> nōlēbam
nōn vīs	nōlēs	nōlēbās
nōn vult	nōlet	nōlēbat
nōlumus	nōlēmus	nōlēbāmus
nōn vultis	nōlētis	nōlēbātis
nōlunt	nōlent	nōlēbant

*Infinitives :*

*Present :* nōlle

*Perfect :* nōluisse

*Participle :*

*Present :* nōlēns-ēns-ēns

*Subjunctive :*

<i>Present :</i> nōlim	<i>Imperfect :</i> nōllem
nōlīs	nōllēs
nōlit	nōllet
nōlīmus	nōllēmus
nōlītis	nōllētis
nōlint	nōllent

Other tenses are regularly formed from the Perfect Stem.

**mālō-mälle-mālui- — - —, I prefer**

*Indicative :*

<i>Present :</i> mālō	<i>Future :</i> mālam	<i>Imperfect :</i> mālēbam
māvis	mālēs	mālēbās
māvult	mālet	mālēbat
mālumus	mālēmus	mālēbāmus
māvultis	mālētis	mālēbātis
mālunt	mālent	mālēbant

*Infinitives :*

*Present :* mälle

*Perfect :* māluisse

*Subjunctive :*

<i>Present :</i> mālim	<i>Imperfect :</i> mällem
mālīs	mällēs
mālit	mället
mālimus	mällēmus
mālītis	mällētis
mālint	mällent

Other tenses are regularly formed from the Perfect Stem.

PRINCIPAL PARTS

I.

-ō

-āre

-āvi

-ātus

-āturus

Irregular

cubō	-āre	cubui	—	cubiturus	<i>I lie in bed</i>
dō	dare	dedi	datus	daturus	<i>I give</i>
circumdō	-are	circumdedi	circumdat	circumdaturus	<i>I put round</i>
iuvō	-āre	iūvi	iūtus	iuvāturus	<i>I help</i>
adiuvō	-āre	adiūvi	adiūtus	adiūturus	<i>I help</i>
lavō	-āre	lāvi, lavāvi	lautus	lavāturus	<i>I wash</i>
sonō	-āre	sonui	sonitus	sonāturus	<i>I sound</i>
stō	-āre	steti	—	stāturus	<i>I stand</i>
obstō	-āre	obsteti	—	—	<i>I obstruct</i>
praestō	-āre	praesteti	—	—	<i>I show</i>
vetō	-āre	vetui	vetitus	vetiturus	<i>I forbid</i>

Middle Verbs

comitor	-ārī	comitātus sum	<i>I accompany</i>
cōnor	-ārī	cōnātus sum	<i>I try</i>
minor	-ārī	minātus sum	<i>I threaten</i>
mīror	-ārī	mīrātus sum	<i>I wonder at</i>



opīnor	-āri	opīnātus sum	<i>I think</i>
populor	-āri	populātus sum	<i>I ravage</i>
precor	-āri	precātus sum	<i>I beseech</i>
suspīcor	-āri	suspīcātus sum	<i>I suspect</i>
vagor	-āri	vagātus sum	<i>I wander</i>

**II.            -eō            -ēre            -uī            -itus            -itūrus**

**Irregular**

ardeō	-ēre	arsī	—	arsūrus	<i>I blaze</i>
caveō	-ēre	cāvī	cautus	cautūrus	<i>I beware</i>
cēnseō	-ēre	cēnsuī	cēnsus	cēnsūrus	<i>I think</i>
compleō	-ēre	complēvī	complētus	complētūrus	<i>I fill</i>
haereō	-ēre	haesī	—	haesūrus	<i>I stick</i>
iubeō	-ēre	iussī	iussus	iussūrus	<i>I order</i>
lūceō	-ēre	lūxī	—	—	<i>I shine</i>
lūgeō	-ēre	lūxī	—	—	<i>I mourn</i>
maneō	-ēre	mānsī	—	mānsūrus	<i>I remain</i>
mordeō	-ēre	momordī	morsus	morsūrus	<i>I bite</i>
moveō	-ēre	mōvī	mōtus	mōtūrus	<i>I move</i>
mulgeō	-ēre	mulsi	—	—	<i>I milk</i>
pendeō	-ēre	pendi	—	—	<i>I hang</i>

rideō	-ēre	risi	—	risūrus	<i>I laugh</i>
sedeō	-ēre	sēdi	—	sessūrus	<i>I sit</i>
obsideō	-ēre	obsēdi	obsessus	obsessūrus	<i>I besiege</i>
spondeō	-ēre	spōndi	spōnsus	spōnsūrus	<i>I pledge</i>
respondeō	-ēre	respon-di	respōnsus	respōnsūrus	<i>I reply</i>
teneō	-ēre	tenui	—	—	<i>I hold</i>
retineō	-ēre	retinui	retentus	retentūrus	<i>I hold back</i>
torqueō	-ēre	torsi	tortus	tortūrus	<i>I twist</i>
videō	-ēre	vidi	visus	visūrus	<i>I see</i>

Middle Verbs

cōfiteor	-ērī	cōfessus sum	<i>I admit</i>
vereor	-ērī	veritus sum	<i>I am afraid</i>

Semi-Middle Verbs

audeō	-ēre	ausus sum	<i>I dare</i>
gaudeō	-ēre	gāvīsus sum	<i>I rejoice</i>
soleō	-ēre	solitus sum	<i>I am accustomed</i>

### III.

#### -ō      -ere      No regular Perfects

agnōscō	-ere	agnōvī	agnitus	agnitūrus	<i>I recognize</i>
cognōscō	-ere	cognōvī	cognitus	cognitūrus	<i>I recognize</i>
agō	-ere	ēgī	actus	actūrus	<i>I drive, do</i>
cōgō	-ere	coēgī	coactus	coactūrus	<i>I compel</i>
bibō	-ere	bibī	—	—	<i>I drink</i>
cadō	-ere	cecidī	—	cāsūrus	<i>I fall</i>
accidō	-ere	accidī	—	—	<i>I happen</i>
occidō	-ere	occidī	—	occāsūrus	<i>I sink, set</i>
caedō	-ere	cecidī	caesus	caesūrus	<i>I beat, cut, kill</i>
canō	-ere	cecinī	—	—	<i>I sing</i>
cēdō	-ere	cessī	—	cessūrus	<i>I yield</i>
accēdō	-ere	accessī	—	accessūrus	<i>I approach</i>
sēcēdō	-ere	sēcessī	—	sēcessūrus	<i>I withdraw</i>
colō	-ere	colui	cultus	cultūrus	<i>I cultivate</i>
comprehendō	-ere	comprehendī	comprehensus	comprehēnsūrus	<i>I grasp, arrest</i>
reprehendō	-ere	reprehendi	reprehensus	reprehēnsūrus	<i>I blame</i>
condō	-ere	condidī	conditus	conditūrus	<i>I found</i>
crēdō	-ere	crēdidī	—	crēditūrus	<i>I believe</i>
perdō	-ere	perdidī	perditus	perditūrus	<i>I lose</i>
prōdō	-ere	prōdidī	prōditus	prōditūrus	<i>I betray</i>



reddō	-ere	reddidī	redditus	redditūrus	<i>I give back</i>
vendō	-ere	vendidī	venditus	venditūrus	<i>I sell</i>
coniungō	-ere	coniunxī	coniunctus	coniunctūrus	<i>I join</i>
cōsīdō	-ere	cōsēdī	—	cōsessūrus	<i>I sit down</i>
cōsistō	-ere	cōstitī	—	—	<i>I halt</i>
resistō	-ere	restitī	—	—	<i>I resist</i>
cōsūmō	-ere	cōsumpsī	cōsumptus	cōsumptūrus	<i>I devour</i>
coquō	-ere	coxī	coctus	coctūrus	<i>I cook</i>
crēscō	-ere	crēvī	—	—	<i>I grow</i>
currō	-ere	cucurrī	—	cursūrus	<i>I run</i>
concurrō	-ere	concurrī	—	conkursūrus	<i>I run together</i>
incurrō	-ere	incurrī	—	incursūrus	<i>I run in</i>
dēcernō	-ere	dēcrēvī	dēcrētus	dēcrētūrus	<i>I decide</i>
dēfendō	-ere	dēfendī	defēnsus	dēfēnsūrus	<i>I defend</i>
offendō	-ere	offendī	offēnsus	offēnsūrus	<i>I strike against</i>
dēscendō	-ere	dēscendī	—	dēscēnsūrus	<i>I go down</i>
dēserō	-ere	dēseruī	dēsertus	dēsertūrus	<i>I abandon</i>
dīcō	-ere	dixī	dictus	dictūrus	<i>I say</i>
indicō	-ere	indixī	indictus	indictūrus	<i>I declare</i>
discō	-ere	didicī	—	—	<i>I learn</i>
distribuō	-ere	distribuī	distribūtus	distribūtūrus	<i>I give out</i>
dūcō	-ere	dūxi	ductus	ductūrus	<i>I lead</i>

addūcō	-ere	addūxī	adductus	adductūrus	<i>I lead to</i>
indūcō	-ere	indūxī	inductus	inductūrus	<i>I lead in</i>
edō	ēsse	ēdī	ēsus	ēsūrus	<i>I eat</i>
effundō	-ere	effūdī	effūsus	effūsūrus	<i>I pour out</i>
ēvādō	-ere	ēvāsī	—	ēvāsūrus	<i>I go out</i>
expellō	-ere	expulī	expulsus	expulsūrus	<i>I drive out</i>
repellō	-ere	reppulī	repulsus	repulsūrus	<i>I drive back</i>
exstinguō	-ere	exstinxī	exstinctus	exstinctūrus	<i>I put out</i>
exuō	-ere	exuī	exūtus	exūtūrus	<i>I take off</i>
flectō	-ere	flexī	flexus	flexūrus	<i>I bend, turn</i>
fluō	-ere	fluxī	—	—	<i>I flow</i>
frangō	-ere	frēgī	fractus	fractūrus	<i>I break</i>
gerō	-ere	gessī	gestus	gestūrus	<i>I bear, wear</i>
incendō	-ere	incendī	incēnsus	incēnsūrus	<i>I burn</i>
incumbō	-ere	incubui	—	incubitūrus	<i>I lean on</i>
induō	-ere	indui	indūtus	indūtūrus	<i>I put on</i>
legō	-ere	lēgī	lectus	lectūrus	<i>I read, choose</i>
colligō	-ere	collēgī	collectus	collectūrus	<i>I collect</i>
intellegō	-ere	intellēxī	intellectus	intellectūrus	<i>I understand</i>
perlegō	-ere	perlēgī	perlectus	perlectūrus	<i>I read through</i>
lūdō	-ere	lūsī	—	lūsūrus	<i>I play</i>



mittō	-ere	mīsi	missus	missūrus	<i>I send</i>
āmittō	-ere	āmisi	āmissus	āmissūrus	<i>I lose</i>
omittō	-ere	omisi	omissus	omissūrus	<i>I let go, drop</i>
prōmittō	-ere	prōmisi	prōmissus	prōmissūrus	<i>I promise</i>
offendō	-ere	offendī	offēnsus	offēnsūrus	<i>I knock against</i>
opprimō	-ere	oppressi	oppressus	oppressūrus	<i>I press upon</i>
parcō	-ere	pepercī	—	parsūrus	<i>I spare</i>
petō	-ere	petivi	petitus	petitūrus	<i>I seek</i>
pingō	-ere	pinxi	pictus	pictūrus	<i>I paint</i>
pōnō	-ere	posui	positus	positūrus	<i>I place</i>
compōnō	-ere	composui	compositus	compositūrus	<i>I settle, compose</i>
dēpōnō	-ere	dēposui	dēpositus	dēpositūrus	<i>I put down</i>
dispōnō	-ere	disposui	dispositus	dispositūrus	<i>I arrange</i>
expōnō	-ere	exposui	expositus	expositūrus	<i>I expose</i>
impōnō	-ere	imposui	impositus	impositūrus	<i>I put in, on</i>
repōnō	-ere	reposui	repositus	repositūrus	<i>I put back</i>
premō	-ere	pressi	pressus	pressūrus	<i>I press</i>
quaerō	-ere	quaesivi	quaesitus	quaesitūrus	<i>I seek</i>
regō	-ere	rēxi	rectus	rectūrus	<i>I rule</i>
pergō	-ere	perrēxi	—	perrectūrus	<i>I continue</i>
surgō	-ere	surrēxi	—	surrectūrus	<i>I stand up</i>



relinquō	-ere	reliqui	relictus	relictūrus	<i>I leave behind</i>
rumpō	-ere	rūpī	ruptus	ruptūrus	<i>I burst through</i>
ērumpō	-ere	ērūpī	ēruptus	ēruptūrus	<i>I burst out</i>
inrumpō	-ere	inrūpī	inruptus	inruptūrus	<i>I burst in</i>
scribō	-ere	scripsī	scriptus	scriptūrus	<i>I write</i>
sinō	-ere	sivī	—	sitūrus	<i>I allow</i>
stringō	-ere	strinxī	strictus	strictūrus	<i>I draw (a sword)</i>
tangō	-ere	tetigī	tactus	tactūrus	<i>I touch</i>
trahō	-ere	trāxī	tractus	tractūrus	<i>I draw</i>
retrahō	-ere	retrāxī	retractus	retractūrus	<i>I draw back</i>
trānsfigō	-ere	trānsfixī	trānsfixus	trānsfixūrus	<i>I pierce</i>
ūrō	-ere	ussī	ustus	ustūrus	<i>I burn</i>
combūrō	-ere	combussi	combustus	combustūrus	<i>I burn up</i>
vehō	-ere	vexī	vectus	vectūrus	<i>I carry</i>
vellō	-ere	vulsi	vulsus	vulsūrus	<i>I pull</i>
vertō	-ere	vertī	versus	versūrus	<i>I turn</i>
vincō	-ere	vīcī	victus	victūrus	<i>I defeat</i>
vīvō	-ere	vīxī	—	victūrus	<i>I live</i>

Middle Verbs

adipīscor	-ī	adeptus sum	fruitūrus	<i>I get</i>
expergīscor	-ī	experrectus sum		<i>I wake up</i>
fruor	-ī	fructus sum		<i>I enjoy</i>
irāscor	-ī	irātus sum		<i>I become angry</i>
loquor	-ī	locūtus sum		<i>I talk</i>
conloquor	-ī	conlocūtus sum		<i>I converse</i>
nāscor	-ī	nātus sum		<i>I am born</i>
nītor	-ī	nīxus sum		<i>I lean on</i>
oblīvīscor	-ī	oblītus sum		<i>I forget</i>
proficīscor	-ī	profectus sum		<i>I set out</i>
revertor	-ī	reversus sum		<i>I return</i>
sequor	-ī	secūtus sum		<i>I follow</i>
ulcīscor	-ī	ultus sum		<i>I avenge</i>
ūtor	-ī	ūsus sum		<i>I use</i>

No regular Perfects

-iō      -ere

capiō	-ere	cēpī	captus	captūrus	<i>I take</i>
accipiō	-ere	accēpī	acceptus	acceptūrus	<i>I receive</i>
dēcipiō	-ere	dēcēpī	dēceptus	dēceptūrus	<i>I deceive</i>
incipiō	-ere	coepī	coeptus	coeptūrus	<i>I begin</i>

circumspiciō	-ere	circumspexi	circumspectus	circumspectūrus	<i>I look around</i>
cōspiciō	-ere	cōspexi	cōspectus	cōspectūrus	<i>I catch sight of</i>
perspiciō	-ere	perspexi	perspectus	perspectūrus	<i>I perceive</i>
cupiō	-ere	cupivī	cupītus	cupītūrus	<i>I want</i>
excutiō	-ere	excussi	excussus	excussūrus	<i>I knock out</i>
percutiō	-ere	perussi	percussus	percussūrus	<i>I strike</i>
faciō	-ere	fēcī	factus	factūrus	<i>I make, do</i>
efficiō	-ere	effēcī	effectus	effectūrus	<i>I cause</i>
interficiō	-ere	interfēcī	interfectus	interfectūrus	<i>I kill</i>
fugīō	-ere	fūgī	—	fugitūrus	<i>I flee</i>
effugiō	-ere	effūgī	—	—	<i>I escape</i>
iaciō	-ere	iēcī	iactus	iactūrus	<i>I throw</i>
abiciō	-ere	abiēcī	abiectus	abiectūrus	<i>I throw away</i>
iniciō	-ere	iniēcī	iniectus	iniectūrus	<i>I throw in</i>
reiciō	-ere	reiēcī	reiectus	reiectūrus	<i>I throw back</i>
rapiō	-ere	rapui	raptus	raptūrus	<i>I snatch</i>
arripiō	-ere	arripui	arreptus	arreptūrus	<i>I snatch away</i>
corripīō	-ere	corripui	correptus	correptūrus	<i>I snatch up</i>



Middle Verbs

ēgredior	-ī	ēgressus sum		<i>I go out</i>
prōgredior	-ī	prōgressus sum		<i>I go forward</i>
regredior	-ī	regressus sum		<i>I retreat</i>
morior	-ī	mortuus sum	moritūrus	<i>I die</i>
patior	-ī	passus sum		<i>I suffer</i>

IV.

<b>-iō</b>	<b>-ire</b>	<b>-īvi(ū)</b>	<b>-itus</b>	<b>-itūrus</b>
------------	-------------	----------------	--------------	----------------

Irregular

aperiō	-ire	aperui	apertus	apertūrus	<i>I open</i>
exhauriō	-ire	exhausi	exhaustus	exhaustūrus	<i>I drink up</i>
sentīō	-ire	sēnsi	sēnsus	sēnsūrus	<i>I feel</i>
sepeliō	-ire	sepelivi	sepultus	sepultūrus	<i>I bury</i>
veniō	-ire	vēni	—	ventūrus	<i>I come</i>
adveniō	-ire	advēni	—	adventūrus	<i>I arrive</i>
conveniō	-ire	convēni	—	conventūrus	<i>I meet</i>
inveniō	-ire	invēni	inventus	inventūrus	<i>I find</i>
pervenīō	-ire	pervēni	—	perventūrus	<i>I arrive</i>
reveniō	-ire	revēni	—	reventūrus	<i>I come back</i>

# Middle Verbs

mentior	-īri	mentitus sum		<i>I lie</i>
orior	-īri	ortus sum	oritūrus	<i>I arise</i>

## V. Irregular

eō	-īre	īi	—	itūrus	<i>I go</i>
abeō	-īre	abiī	—	abitūrus	<i>I go away</i>
adeō	-īre	adiī	—	aditūrus	<i>I approach</i>
obeō	-īre	obiī	—	obitūrus	<i>I meet</i>
trānseō	-īre	trānsiī	—	trānsitūrus	<i>I cross</i>
ferō	ferre	tuli	lātus	lātūrus	<i>I carry</i>
adferō	-ferre	attuli	allātus	allātūrus	<i>I bring</i>
auferō	-ferre	abstuli	ablātus	ablātūrus	<i>I take away</i>
fiō	fieri	factus sum			<i>I become</i>
mālō	mālle	mālui	—	—	<i>I prefer</i>
nōlō	nōlle	nōlui	—	—	<i>I do not wish</i>
sum	esse	fui	—	futūrus	<i>I am</i>
possum	posse	potui	—	—	<i>I can</i>
tollō	-ere	sustuli	sublātus	sublātūrus	<i>I raise</i>
volō	velle	volui	—	—	<i>I wish</i>





**PARS SEPTIMA**  
**LATINE—ANGLICE**



## VOCABULA

## LATINE—ANGLICE.

**abavus-i** (m), great-great-grandfather  
**abdūcō-ere-dūxi-ductus-ductūrus**, I lead away  
**abeō-ire-iī- ——— -itūrus**, I go away  
**abi in malam crucem**, go to . . . !  
**abhorreō-ēre-ui-** ———, I shrink from  
**abiēs-etis** (f), fir tree  
**abiciō-ere-iēcī-iectus-iectūrus**, I throw away  
**abscidō-ere-abscidi-scissus-scissūrus**, I cut off  
**abūtor-i-ūsus sum** (+ *Abl.*), I misuse  
**ac**, and  
**accēdō-ere-accessi-** ——— **-accessūrus**, I go to  
**accidit-ere-accidit-** ——— **- ———**, it happens  
**accipiō-ere-cēpi-ceptus-ceptūrus**, I receive  
**addūcō-ere-dūxi-ductus-ductūrus**, I lead to, bring to  
**adeō-ire-iī- ——— -itūrus**, I go to, approach  
**adeō**, so  
**adferō-adferre-attuli-adlātus-adlātūrus**, I bring  
**adfirmō-āre-āvi-ātus-ātūrus**, I assure  
**adgredior-i-adgressus sum**, I attack  
**adhūc**, as yet, till now, still, so far  
**adimō-ere-ēmī-emptus-emptūrus**, I take away  
**adipiscor-i-adeptus sum**, I get  
**adiuvō-āre-ādiūvi-iūtus-iūtūrus**, I help  
**adligō-āre-āvi-ātus-ātūrus**, I tie to  
**adportō-āre-āvi-ātus-ātūrus**, I carry to, bring  
**adsum-esse-fui-** ——— **-futūrus**, I am present  
**adveniō-ire-vēni-** ——— **-ventūrus**, I arrive  
**adversus-a-um**, opposite, contrary  
**aedēs-ium** (f. pl.), house  
**aedificō-āre-āvi-ātus-ātūrus**, I build  
**aegrōtō-āre-āvi-** ——— **-ātūrus**, I am ill  
**aegrōtus-a-um**, sick, invalid  
**aequō-āre-āvi-ātus-ātūrus**, I equal  
**aequor-oris** (n), sea  
**ager-agrī** (m), field



**agitō-āre-āvi-ātus-ātūrus**, I stir up, arouse  
**agnōscō-ere-agnōvi-agnitus-tūrus**, I recognize  
**agō-ere-ēgi-actus-actūrus**, I drive  
**grātiās agō** (+ *Dat.*), I thank  
**vitam agō**, I spend my life  
**agricola-ae** (m), farmer  
**āla-ae** (f), wing  
**albus-a-um**, white  
**aliquamdiū**, for a little while  
**aliquantulus-a-um**, a little  
**aliquantus-a-um**, some  
**aliquis-quis-quid**, someone, something  
**aliquot**, a few  
**alius-alia-aliud**, other, another  
**alter-era-erum**, one (or the other) of two  
**altus-a-um**, high, deep, tall  
**alveus-i** (m), basket, beehive  
**amātor-ōris** (m), lover  
**ambō-ae-ō**, both  
**ambulō-āre-āvi- ——— -ātūrus**, I walk  
**amicus-i** (m), friend  
**āmittō-ere-misi-missus-missūrus**, I lose  
**amō-āre-āvi-ātus-ātūrus**, I love, like  
**āmoveō-ēre-āmōvi-āmōtus-āmōtūrus**, I remove  
**Anglicē**, in English  
**anguis-is** (m), snake  
**anima-ae** (f), soul, spirit, ghost  
**animal-ālis** (n), animal  
**animus-i** (m), mind  
**in animō est mihi**, I intend  
**annus-i** (m), year  
**ante** (+ *Acc.*), in front of, before  
**anteā**, beforehand, previously  
**antequam**, before  
**antiquus-a-um**, ancient  
**ānulus-i** (m), ring  
**anus-ūs** (f), old woman  
**aperiō-ire-ui-apertus-apertūrus**, I open  
**apis-is** (f), bee  
**appāreō-ēre-ui- ——— -itūrus**, I appear  
**appropinquō-āre-āvi- ——— -ātūrus**, I approach

**aptus-a-um**, fitting, suitable  
**apud** (+ *Acc.*), at, near, in the presence of  
**aqua-ae** (f), water  
**aquila-ae** (f), eagle  
**āra-ae** (f), altar  
**arānea-ae** (f), spider, spider's web  
**arātrum-i** (n), plough  
**arbor-oris** (f), tree  
**arcessō-ere-ivī-itūs-itūrus**, I send for, fetch  
**arcus-ūs** (m), bow  
**ardeō-ēre-arsī- ——— -arsūrus**, I am on fire, burn, blaze  
**ardor-ōris** (m), heat  
**arma-ōrum** (n. pl.), weapons  
**arripiō-ere-arripui-arreptus-arreptūrus**, I snatch away  
**asinus-i** (m), ass  
**as-assis** (m), as, a small coin  
**ascendō-ere-ascendi- ——— -ascēnsūrus**, I climb up, embark  
**at**, but  
**atavus-i** (m), great-great-great-grandfather  
**atque**, and  
**ātrium-iī** (n), atrium, hall  
**attonitus-a-um**, astonished  
**attrahō-ere-attrāxi-tractus-tractūrus**, I attract, drag towards  
**audācia-ae** (f), boldness, bravery  
**audax-ax-ax** (**audācis**), bold, brave  
**audeō-ēre-ausus sum**, I dare  
**audiō-ire-iī-itūs-itūrus**, I hear  
**auferō-auferre-abstuli-ablātus-lātūrus**, I take away, steal  
**auriga-ae** (m), charioteer  
**auris-is** (f), ear  
**aurum-i** (n), gold  
**aut** (**aut . . . aut**), or (either . . . or)  
**autem**, however  
**auxilium-iī** (n), help, auxiliary, allied troops  
**avē, avēte**, farewell  
**avidus-a-um**, greedy  
**avis-is** (f), bird  
**avunculus-i** (m), uncle, mother's brother  
**avus-i** (m), grandfather  
  
**baculum-i** (n), stick



**balteus-i** (m), belt  
**barbarus-a-um**, savage, foreign  
**beātus-a-um**, happy  
**bellum-i** (n), war  
     **bellum gerō-ere**, I wage war  
     **bellum indicō-ere**, I declare war  
     **bellum civile**, civil war  
**bellus-a-um**, beautiful  
**bene**, well  
**beneficium-iī** (n), kindness  
**benevolus-a-um**, kind, amiable  
**benignus-a-um**, kind, amiable  
**bibō-ere-bibī-** ——— - ———, I drink  
**bini-ae-a**, a pair, two each  
**blandus-a-um**, charming  
**bonus-a-um** (**melior**, **optimus**), good  
**bōs-bovis** (m), bull  
**brevis-is-e**, short

**cachinnus-i** (m), laughter  
**cadāver-eris** (n), corpse  
**cadō-ere-cecidī-** ——— -**cāsūrus**, I fall  
**caedō-ere-cecidī-caesus-caesūrus**, I beat, cut, kill  
**caelum-i** (n), sky  
**calceus-i** (m), boot, shoe  
**calidus-a-um**, hot  
**caliga-ae** (f), soldier's boot  
**callidus-a-um**, clever  
**campus-i** (m), plain  
**candidus-a-um**, white, shining  
**canis-is** (m or f), dog  
**canō-ere-cecini-** ——— - ———, I sing  
**cantō-āre-āvi-ātus-ātūrus**, I sing  
**capillus-i** (m), hair  
**capiō-ere-cēpi-captus-captūrus**, I take, catch  
**captivus-i** (m), prisoner  
**captō-āre-āvi-ātus-ātūrus**, I catch  
**caput-capitis** (n), head  
**carcer-eris** (m), prison  
**carmen-inis** (n), song, poem  
**cārus-a-um**, dear



**castra-ōrum** (n. pl.), camp  
**catella-ae** (f), puppy  
**cauda-ae** (f), tail  
**caupō-ōnis** (m), innkeeper  
**causa-ae** (f), cause, reason, lawsuit  
     **quam ob causam**, and so, therefore  
**caveō-ēre-cāvi-** ——— **-cautūrus**, I look out, beware  
**caverna-ae** (f), cave  
**cēdō-ere-cessi-** ——— **-cessūrus**, I walk, go, yield  
**celer-celeris-celere**, quick, swift  
**cella-ae** (f), room, storeroom  
**cēlō-āre-āvi-ātus-ātūrus**, I hide  
**cēna-ae** (f), dinner  
**cēnō-āre-āvi-ātus-ātūrus**, I dine  
**cēseō-ēre-ui-cēsus-cēnsūrus**, I think  
**cēnsor-ōris** (m), censor  
**centum**, hundred  
**centuriō-ōnis** (m), centurion, sergeant-major  
**certē**, certainly  
**certiōrem faciō-ere**, I inform, tell  
     **certior fiō-fieri**, I am informed  
     **pro certō habeō-ēre**, I am certain  
**cēteri-ae-a**, the rest  
**charta-ae** (f), sheet of papyrus  
**cibus-i** (m), food  
**cinis-eris** (m or f), ash  
**circum** (+ *Acc.*), round, around  
**circumdō-are-dedi-datus-datūrus**, I put round, surround  
**circumsiliō-ire**, I hop around  
**circumspiciō-ere-spexi-spectus-spectūrus**, I look round  
**circus-i** (m), circus  
**cista-ae** (f), box  
**civis-is** (m or f), citizen  
**clādēs-is** (f), disaster  
**clāmō-āre-āvi-ātus-ātūrus**, I shout  
**clāmor-ōris** (m), noise, shout  
**clārus-a-um**, bright, clear, famous  
**claudō-ere-clausi-clausus-clausūrus**, I shut  
**clivus-i** (m), slope  
**cochlea-ae** (f), snail  
**coepi-isse-coeptus-coeptūrus**, I begin

**cōgitō-āre-āvi-ātus-ātūrus**, I think, ponder  
**cognōmen-inis** (n), surname  
**cognōscō-ere-cognōvi-cognitus-cognitūrus**, I recognize, know  
**cōgō-ere-coēgi-coactus-coactūrus**, I force, compel  
**colligō-ere-collēgi-collectus-collectūrus**, I collect  
**collis-is** (m), hill  
**collum-i** (n), neck  
**colō-ere-colui-cultus-cultūrus**, I cultivate, till, worship  
**color-ōris** (m), colour  
**columba-ae** (f), dove  
**combūrō-ere-ussi-ustus-ustūrus**, I burn up  
**comes-itis** (m *or* f), companion  
**comitor-ārī-comitātus sum**, I accompany  
**commodus-a-um**, comfortable, advantageous  
**compleō-ēre-plēvi-plētus-plētūrus**, I fill  
**compōnō-ere-posui-positus-positūrus**, I compose, make  
**comportō-āre-āvi-ātus-ātūrus**, I carry off  
**comprehendō-ere-endi-ēnsus-ēnsūrus**, I arrest, seize  
**conciliō-āre-āvi-ātus-ātūrus**, I placate, make friends with  
**concurrō-ere-concurri- ——— -concursūrus**, I rush together  
**condiciō-iōnis** (f), term, condition  
**condō-ere-condidi-ditus-ditūrus**, I found (a city)  
**cōnfiteor-ēri-cōnfessus sum**, I confess, admit  
**coniungō-ere-iunxi-iunctus-iunctūrus**, I join together  
**coniūrātiō-iōnis** (f), conspiracy  
**coniūrātus-i** (m), conspirator  
**coniūrō-āre-āvi-ātus-ātūrus**, I conspire  
**conloquor-i-conlocūtus sum**, I converse, talk with  
**cōnor-ārī-cōnātus sum**, I try, attempt  
**cōnservō-āre-āvi-ātus-ātūrus**, I preserve  
**cōnsidō-ere-sēdi- ——— -sessūrus**, I sit down  
**cōnsilium-ii** (n), plan, purpose  
     **cōnsilium ineō-īre**, I make a plan  
     **quō cōnsiliō?** why? for what purpose?  
**cōnsistō-ere-stiti- ——— - ———**, I halt  
**cōnspiciō-ere-spexi-spectus-spectūrus**, I catch sight of  
**cōnsul-cōsulis** (m), consul, chief magistrate  
**cōnsūmō-ere-sumpsi-sumptus-sumptūrus**, I eat up, consume  
**contendō-ere-di- ——— -tūrus**, I strive, go quickly, march  
**contineō-ere-tinui-tentus-tentūrus**, I hold, contain  
**contrā** (+ *Acc.*), against



**contrārium-iī** (n), opposite  
**conveniō-ire-vēnī-** — **-ventūrus**, I meet  
**convocō-āre-āvi-ātus-ātūrus**, I call together, assemble  
**cōpia-ae** (f), large quantity, store  
**cōpiae-ārum** (f. pl.), forces  
**cōpiōsus-a-um**, copious, abundant  
**coquō-ere-coxi-coctus-coctūrus**, I cook  
**cor-cordis** (n), heart  
**corpus-oris** (n), body  
**corripiō-ere-ripui-reptus-reptūrus**, I snatch  
**cotidiē**, everyday, daily  
**crās**, to-morrow  
**crēdō-ere-crēdidi-** — **-tūrus** (+ *Dat.*), I believe  
**creō-āre-āvi-ātus-ātūrus**, I make, create, appoint  
**crēscō-ere-crēvi- crētus - crētūrus**, I grow  
**crinis-is** (m), hair  
**cruciō-āre-āvi-ātus-ātūrus**, I torture  
**crūdēlis-is-e**, cruel  
**crūs-crūris** (n), leg  
**cubiculum-i** (n), bedroom  
**cubō-āre-ui-** — **-cubitūrus**, I lie down  
**cum** (+ *Abl.*), together with  
**cum** (+ *Verb*), when, since  
**cupidus-a-um**, eager, desirous  
**cupiō-ere-cupivi-cupitus-cupitūrus**, I want, wish  
**cūra-ae** (f), care  
**currō-ere-cucurri-** — **-cursūrus**, I run  
**custodiō-ire-ii-itus-itūrus**, I guard  
**custōs-ōdis** (m), guard

**damnō-āre-āvi-ātus-ātūrus**, I condemn  
**dē** (+ *Abl.*), about, concerning  
**dea-ae** (f), goddess  
**dēbeō-ēre-ui-itus-itūrus**, I owe, ought, must  
**dēcernō-ere-crēvi-crētus-crētūrus**, I decide, decree  
**dēcerpō-ere-cerpsi-cerptus-cerptūrus**, I pick, pluck  
**dēcipiō-ere-cēpi-ceptus-ceptūrus**, I deceive  
**porta decumāna-ae** (f), rear gate of camp  
**dēfendō-ere-endi-ēnsus-ēnsūrus**, I defend  
**dēformis-is-e**, ugly  
**dēiciō-ere-iēcī-iectus-iectūrus**, I cast down, depress



**dēinde**, and then  
**dēliberō-āre-āvi-ātus-ātūrus**, I deliberate, consider  
**dēliciae-ārum** (f. pl.), darling  
**dēmōnstrō-āre-āvi-ātus-ātūrus**, I show, prove  
**dēnārius-ii** (m), denarius (coin)  
**dēnique**, finally  
**dēns-dentis** (m), tooth  
**dēnsus-a-um**, thick  
**dēpōnō-ere-posuī-positus-positūrus**, I put down  
**dēscendō-ere-endī- ——— -ēnsūrus**, I go down, descend  
**dēserō-ere-uī-dēsertus-tūrus**, I abandon  
**dēsertus-a-um**, deserted, lonely  
**dēscribō-ere-scripsi-scriptus-scriptūrus**, I draw  
**dētegō-ere-tēxi-tectus-tectūrus**, I uncover  
**dētrahō-ere-trāxi-tractus-tractūrus**, I drag down  
**dētrimentum-i** (n), loss, damage  
**deus-i** (m), god  
**dēversōrium-ii** (n), inn  
**dēvorō-āre-āvi-ātus-ātūrus**, I devour  
**dexter-dextra-dextrum**, right  
     **dextra-ae** (f), right hand  
**dicō-ere-dixi-dictus-dictūrus**, I say, speak  
**diēs-diēi** (m), day  
**difficilis-is-e**, difficult  
**digitus-i** (m), finger  
**diligēns-ēns-ēns (diligentis)**, diligent, careful  
**dimittō-ere-misi-missus-missūrus**, I send away, dismiss  
**discipulus-i** (m), pupil  
**discō-ere-didici- ——— - ———**, I learn  
**disertus-a-um**, eloquent  
**dispōnō-ere-posuī-positus-positūrus**, I arrange, place  
**distribuō-ere-uī-ūtus-ūtūrus**, I distribute  
**diū**, for a long time  
**dives-es-es (divitis)**, rich  
**dividō-ere-divisi-visus-visūrus**, I divide  
**dō-dare-dedi-datus-datūrus**, I give  
**doceō-ēre-docuī-doctus-doctūrus**, I teach  
**doleō-ēre-uī- ——— - ———**, I hurt, grieve  
**dolor-ōris** (m), pain  
**dolus-i** (m), trick  
**domina-ae** (f), mistress

**dominus-i** (m), master

**domus-ūs** (f), home, house

**dōnec**, until

**dōnō-āre-āvi-ātus-ātūrus**, I present, give

**dōnum-i** (n), gift

**dormiō-ire-ivī- ——— -itūrus**, I sleep

**dubium-iī** (n), doubt

**nōn dubium est quīn** (+ *Subj.*), there is no doubt that

**dūcō-ere-dūxi-ductus-ductūrus**, I lead

**dulcis-is-e**, sweet

**dum** (+ *Present Indic.*), while

**dūmētum-i** (n), bush

**dūrus-a-um**, hard

**dux-ducis** (m), leader

**ē, ex** (+ *Abl.*), out of

**ecce** ! look ! see !

**edō-esse-ēdi-ēsus-ēsūrus**, I eat

**ēducō-āre-āvi-ātus-ātūrus**, I bring up

**efficiō-ere-fēcī-fectus-fectūrus ut** (+ *Subj.*), I cause

**effugiō-ere-fūgi- ——— - ———**, I escape

**effundō-ere-fūdī-fūsus-fūsūrus**, I pour out

**ēgredior-i-ēgressus sum**, I go out

**ēheu** ! alas !

**ēiciō-ere-iēcī-iectus-iectūrus**, I throw out

**ēlegāns-āns-āns** (*ēlegantis*), elegant

**ēloquēns-ēns-ens** (*ēloquentis*), eloquent

**ēmeritus-a-um**, retired, demobilised

**emō-ere-ēmi-emptus-emptūrus**, I buy

**enim**, for

**eō-ire-ivī (iū)- ——— -itūrus**, I go

**eques-itis** (m), cavalryman

**equidem**, I myself

**equus-i** (m), horse

**ērectus-a-um**, aroused, erect

**ērēpō-ere-rēpsi- ——— -rēptūrus**, I creep out

**errō-āre-āvi- ——— -ātūrus**, I wander

**error-ōris** (m), mistake

**ērumpō-ere-rūpi-ruptus-ruptūrus**, I burst out

**ēsuriō-ire- ——— - ———**, I am hungry

**etiam**, even



**euge ! hurray !**

**ēvādō-ere-ēvāsī- ——— -ēvāsūrus**, I get out

**ēvertō-ere-verti-versus-versūrus**, I overturn

**ex (+ Abl.)**, out of

**excitō-āre-āvi-ātus-ātūrus**, I awaken, arouse

**exclāmō-āre-āvi- ——— -ātūrus**, I call out

**excōgitō-āre-āvi-ātus-ātūrus**, I think out, devise

**exemplum-i (n)**, example

**exeō-ire-ii- ——— -itūrus**, I go out

**exercitātiō-iōnis (f)**, exercise

**exercitus-ūs (m)**, army

**exhauriō-ire-hausi-haustus-haustūrus**, I drink up

**expellō-ere-puli-pulsus-pulsūrus**, I expel

**expendō-ere-endi-ēnsus-ēnsūrus**, I spend, use up

**expergiscor-i-experrectus sum**, I wake up

**explicō-āre-āvi-ātus-ātūrus**, I explain

**explorō-āre-āvi-ātus-ātūrus**, I explore, examine, consider

**expōnō-ere-posui-positus-positūrus**, I put out, expose, explain

**exprimō-ere-pressi-pressus-ūrus**, I express

**expugnō-āre-āvi-ātus-ātūrus**, I storm a city

**exsilium-ii (n)**, exile

**expectō-āre-āvi-ātus-ātūrus**, I wait for

**exstinguō-ere-exstinxi-exstinctus-exstinctūrus**, I put out, extinguish

**extraordinārius-a-um**, auxiliary

**exsul-exsulis (m)**, exile, outlaw

**exta-ōrum (n. pl.)**, entrails

**extendō-ere-extendi-tentus-tentūrus**, I stretch out, extend

**extrā (+ Acc.)**, outside

**extrahō-ere-trāxi-tractus-tractūrus**, I pull out

**extrēmus-a-um**, farthest, extreme, end

**extrūdō-ere-trūsi-trūsus-trūsūrus**, I push out

**exuō-ere-ui-ūtus-ūtūrus**, I take off

**fābula-ae (f)**, story

**faciēs-ēi (f)**, appearance, face

**facilis-is-e**, easy

**faciō-ere-fēcī-factus-factūrus**, I do, make

**fallō-ere-fefelli-falsus-falsūrus**, I trick, deceive

**falsus-a-um**, false

**famēs-is (f)**, hunger

**fātum-i (n)**, fate



**faucēs-ium** (f. pl.), narrow passage  
**faveō-ēre-fāvi-** ——— **-fautūrus**, I am well disposed, favour  
**fēlēs-is** (f), cat  
**fēlix-ix-ix** (**fēlicis**), happy, lucky  
**fēmina-ae** (f), woman  
**fenestra-ae** (f), window  
**fēriae-ārum** (f. pl.), holidays  
**ferō-ferre-tulī-lātus-lātūrus**, I carry  
**ferox-ox-ox** (**ferōcis**), fierce  
**ferrum-ī** (n), iron  
**fessus-a-um**, tired  
**festinō-āre-āvi-** ——— **-ātūrus**, I hurry  
**fidēlis-is-e**, faithful  
**fidēs-eī** (f), faith, trust  
**fidem praestō-āre**, I am faithful  
**filia-ae** (f), daughter  
**filius-iī** (m), son  
**filum-ī** (n), thread  
**finis-is** (m), end  
**fiō-fieri-factus sum**, I become  
**firmus-a-um**, firm, strong  
**flamma-ae** (f), flame  
**flectō-ere-flexi-flectus-flectūrus**, I bend  
**fleō-ēre-flēvi-flētus-flētūrus**, I weep  
**flētus-ūs** (m), grief, lamentation  
**flō-āre-āvi-** ——— **-ātūrus**, I blow  
**floci nōn faciō-ere**, I don't care a brass button for  
**flōs-flōris** (m), flower  
**fluctus-ūs** (m), wave  
**flūmen-inis** (n), river  
**fluō-ere-fluxi-** ——— - ———, I flow  
**foculus-ī** (m), hearth, fireplace  
**folium-iī** (n), leaf  
**fōns-fontis** (m), spring, water  
**forma-ae** (f), shape, beauty  
**fortasse**, perhaps  
**forte**, by chance, accidentally  
**fortis-is-e**, brave  
**fortūna-ae** (f), fortune, fate  
**forum-ī** (n), market-place, forum, open ground  
**fossa-ae** (f), ditch

**foveō-ēre-fōvi-fōtus-fōtūrus**, I look after  
**fragilis-is-e**, fragile  
**fragor-ōris** (m), crash  
**frangō-ere-frēgi-fractus-fractūrus**, I break  
**frāter-frātris** (m), brother  
**fraxinus-i** (f), ash-tree  
**frigidus-a-um**, cold  
**frōns-frontis** (f), forehead, front  
**fructus-ūs** (m), fruit  
**frūgēs-um** (f. pl.), fruit, crops  
**frūmentum-i** (n), corn  
**fruor-i-fructus sum-fruitūrus** (+ *Abl.*), I enjoy  
**frustrā**, in vain  
**fugiō-ere-fūgi- — -fugitūrus**, I run away  
**fugō-āre-āvi-ātus-ātūrus**, I chase  
**fūmus-i** (m), smoke  
**fūnis-is** (m), rope  
**fūr-fūris** (m), thief  
**fūror-āri-fūrātus sum**, I rob, steal  
**fūrtum-i** (n), theft

**galea-ae** (f), helmet  
**Gallicē**, in French  
**gallina-ae** (f), hen  
**gallus-i** (m), cockerel  
**gaudeō-ēre-gāvisus sum**, I rejoice  
**gaudium-iī** (n), joy  
**geminus-i** (m), twin  
**gēns-gentis** (f), race, tribe  
**genū-ūs** (n), knee  
**gerō-ere-gessi-gestus-gestūrus**, I bear, wear  
**bellum gerō**, I wage war  
**gladiātor-ōris** (m), gladiator  
**gladius -iī** (m), sword  
**gradus-ūs** (m), step, pace  
**gratiā**, for the sake of  
**grātiās tibi agō-ere**, I thank you  
**grātis**, free, for nothing  
**gravidus-a-um**, heavy  
**gravis-is-e**, stern, heavy  
**gremium-iī** (n), lap



**gubernātor-ōris** (m), steersman  
**gubernō-āre-āvi-ātus-ātūrus**, I steer, govern, rule  
**gustō-āre-āvi-ātus-ātūrus**, I taste

**habeō-ēre-ui-itus-itūrus**, I have  
**habitō-āre-āvi- ——— -ātūrus**, I live in, dwell  
**habitus-ūs** (m), clothing  
**haereō-ēre-haesi- ——— -haesūrus**, I stick, cling  
**hāmus-i** (m), hook  
**haud**, not

**haud multō post**, not long after  
**herba-ae** (f), grass, herb, plant  
**heri**, yesterday  
**hic-haec-hoc**, this  
**hic**, here, in this place  
**hinc**, from this place  
**hiō-āre-āvi- ——— -hiātūrus**, I yawn  
**hodiē**, to-day  
**homō-inis** (m), man, mortal  
**honestus-a-um**, honourable  
**honōs-ōris** (m), honour  
**hōra-ae** (f), hour  
**horrendus-a-um**, horrible, terrible  
**horribilis-is-e**, horrible  
**hortus-i** (m), garden  
**hostis-is** (m), an enemy  
**hūc**, to this place  
**humus-i** (f), ground

**iaceō-ēre-ui- ——— - ———**, I lie down  
**iaciō-ere-iēcī-iactus-iactūrus**, I throw  
**iactō-āre-āvi-ātus-ātūrus**, I toss  
**iam**, already, by now, now  
**iamdūdum**, for a long time now  
**iānitor-ōris** (m), doorkeeper  
**iānua-ae** (f), door  
**ibi**, there, in that place  
**idem-eadem-idem**, the same  
**Idūs-uum** (f. pl.), Ides, 13th or 15th of the month  
**iēiūnus-a-um**, hungry  
**igitur**, therefore



**ignis-is** (m), fire

**ille-illa-illud**, that, he, she

**illic**, there, in that place

**illūc**, to that place

**illustrō-āre-āvi-ātus-ātūrus**, I illuminate

**immergō-ere-mersi-mersus-mersūrus**, I immerse, sink

**immō vērō**, what is more

**immortālis-is-e**, immortal

**impediō-ire-ivi-itus-itūrus quōminus** (+ *Subj.*), I hinder from

**imperātor-ōris** (m), general, emperor

**imperō-āre-āvi- — -ātūrus** (+ *Dat.* + **ut** + *Subj.*), I command

**impetus-ūs** (m), attack

**impetum faciō in** (+ *Acc.*), I attack

**impluvium-iī** (n), rain tank

**impōnō-ere-posui-positus-positūrus**, I put in, put upon

**importūnus-a-um**, troublesome

**improbus-a-um**, wicked

**imprōvisus-a-um**, unexpected

**ex imprōvisō**, unexpectedly

**impudēns-ēns-ēns** (*impudentis*), rude

**impudicus-a-um**, shameless

**imus-a-um**, lowest, bottom

**in** (+ *Acc.*), into, on to

**—** (+ *Abl.*), in, on

**incendō-ere-endi-ēnsus-ēnsūrus**, I set on fire, burn

**incipiō-ere-(coepi-coeptus-coeptūrus)**, I begin

**incumbō-ere-cubui- — -cubitūrus**, I lean on

**incurrō-ere-incurri- — -cursūrus**, I run into

**indicō-ere-dixi-dictus-dictūrus bellum**, I declare war

**indignus-a-um**, unworthy

**indō-ere-didi-ditus-ditūrus nōmen**, I give a name, call

**indūcō-ere-dūxi-ductus-ductūrus**, I pull on

**induō-ere-ui-ūtus-ūtūrus**, I put on (clothes)

**ineō-ire-iī- — -itūrus**, I go in

**cōnsilium ineō**, I form a plan

**infāns-āns-āns** (*infantis*), infant, child

**infēlix-ix-ix** (*infēlicis*), unhappy, unlucky

**inferiae-ārum** (f. pl.), sacrifices to the dead

**inferior-ior-ius** (*inferiōris*), lower

**ad infinitum**, forever

**ingēns-ēns-ēns** (*ingentis*), huge

**iniciō-ere-iēcī-iectus-iectūrus**, I throw into  
**inimicus-a-um**, unfriendly, hostile  
**inquam, inquit**, I say, said, he says, said  
**inrēpō-ere-rēpsi- — - rēptūrus**, I creep into  
**inrumpō-ere-rūpi-ruptus-ruptūrus**, I burst into, rush into  
**insānābilis-is-e**, incurable  
**insānus-a-um**, mad  
**insidiae-ārum** (f. pl.), ambush, trap  
**inspiciō-ere-spexi-spectus-spectūrus**, I inspect  
**insula-ae** (f), island  
**insum-inesse-infui- — -futūrus**, I am in  
**intellegō-ere-lēxi-lectus-lectūrus**, I understand  
**intempestā nocte**, at dead of night  
**inter** (+ *Acc.*), between  
**interdiū**, in the daytime  
**interficiō-ere-fēcī-fectus-fectūrus**, I kill  
**intrō-āre-āvi- — -ātūrus**, I come in, enter  
**intrōducō-ere-dūxi-ductus-ductūrus**, I lead in  
**intus**, inside; within  
**inveniō-ire-vēni-ventus-ventūrus**, I find  
**iocōsus-a-um**, full of jokes, jesting  
**ipse-a-um**, self  
**ira-ae** (f), anger  
**irāscor-i-irātus sum**, I become angry  
**is-ea-id**, he, she, it  
**in eō est ut** (+ *Subj.*), I am about to  
**ita**, yes, so  
**ita enim vērō**, certainly, I quite agree  
**ita vērō**, yes, certainly  
**itaque**, and so, therefore  
**iter-itineris** (n), journey  
**iterum**, again  
**iubeō-ēre-iussi-iussus-iussūrus**, I order  
**iūrō-āre-āvi-ātus-ātūrus**, I swear  
**iussa-ōrum** (n. pl.), orders, commands  
**iuvenca-ae** (f), cow  
**iuvenis-is** (m), young man

**Kalendae-ārum** (f. pl.), Kalends, 1st of the month

**labor-ōris** (m), toil, labour, work



**labōrō-āre-āvi- ——— -ātūrus**, I toil, work hard, have a pain  
**lac-lactis** (n), milk  
**lacrima-ae** (f), tear  
**lacrimō-āre-āvi- ——— -ātūrus**, I cry  
**lacus-ūs** (m), lake  
**laetus-a-um**, happy  
**lambō-ere-lambī-lambitus-tūrus**, I lick  
**lapibōsus-a-um**, stony, hard  
**lapidulus-i** (m), small stone, gem  
**lapis-idis** (m), stone  
**latebr ae-ārum** (f. pl.), hiding place  
**lateō-lēre-latui- ——— - ———**, I am hidden  
**Latīnē**, in Latin  
**latrō-ōnis** (m), robber  
**lātus-a-um**, wide, broad  
**laudō-āre-āvi-ātus-ātūrus**, I praise  
**lavō-āre-lavāvi (lāvi)-lautus-lavātūrus**, I wash  
**lector-ōris** (m), reader  
**lectus-i** (m), bed  
**lēgātus-i** (m), lieutenant general, ambassador  
**legiō-iōnis** (f), legion, regiment  
**legiōnārius-a-um**, belonging to a legion  
**legō-ere-lēgi-lectus-lectūrus**, I read  
**lēnis-is-e**, smooth, gentle  
**lentus-a-um**, slow  
**leō-ōnis** (m), lion  
**lepidus-a-um**, charming, pretty  
**levis-is-e**, light  
**lex-lēgis** (f), law  
**libellus-i** (m), notebook  
**libēns-ēns-ēns (libentis)**, willing  
**liber-librī** (m), book  
**liber-libera-liberum**, free  
**liberō-āre-āvi-ātus-ātūrus**, I free  
**licet-ēre-licuit mihi**, I may  
**lictor-ōris** (m), lictor, consul's attendant  
**limus-i** (m), mud  
**lingua-ae** (f), tongue  
**litus-oris** (n), beach, shore  
**locus-i** (m), place  
**longus-a-um**, long



**loquax-ax-ax** (**loquācis**), talkative  
**loquor-i-locūtus sum**, I talk, speak  
**lōrica-ae** (f), breastplate  
**lūceō-ēre-lūxi-** ——— - ———, I shine  
**lūdō-ere-lūsi-** ——— - **lūsūrus**, I play  
**lūdus-i** (m), school  
**lūgeō-ere-lūxi-** ——— - ———, I grieve, am sad  
**lūna-ae** (f), moon  
**lupa-ae** (f), she-wolf  
**lupus-i** (m), wolf  
**lux-lūcis** (f), light

**macellum-i** (n), market  
**māchina-ae** (f), engine, device, trap, invention  
**maestus-a-um**, sad  
**magicus-a-um**, magic  
**magister-strī** (m), schoolmaster  
**magistrātus-ūs** (m), magistrate  
**magnopere** (**magis-maximē**), very  
**magnus-a-um** (**māior-maximus**), big, large  
**magus-i** (m), magician  
**māiōrēs-um** (m. pl.), ancestors  
**Māius-a-um**, May  
**mālum-i** (n), apple  
**mālō-mālle-mālui-** ———, I prefer  
**malus-a-um** (**pēior-pessimus**), bad  
**māne**, early  
**maneō-ēre-mānsi-** ——— - **mānsūrus**, I stay, remain  
**mānō-āre-āvi-** ——— - **ātūrus**, I trickle  
**manus-ūs** (f), hand  
**mare-is** (n), sea  
**māter-mātris** (f), mother  
**maximus-a-um**, biggest  
**medicīna-ae** (f), medicine  
**medicus-i** (m), doctor  
**medius-a-um**, middle  
**mel-mellis** (n), honey  
**mellitus-a-um**, honey-sweet  
**melior-ior-ius**, better  
**membrum-i** (n), limb  
**memini-isse**, I remember

**mendax-ax-ax** (**mendācis**), liar  
**mēns-mentis** (f), mind  
**mēnsa-ae** (f), table  
**mentior-iri-mentitus sum**, I tell lies  
**mercātor-ōris** (m), merchant  
**mereō-ēre-ui-itus-itūrus**, I earn, deserve  
**meridiēs-iēl** (m), mid-day, south  
**merus-a-um**, pure, unmixed  
**metuō-ere-ui-** ——— - ———, I fear  
**meus-a-um**, my  
**migrō-āre-āvi-** ——— -**ātūrus**, I migrate  
**miles-itis** (m), soldier  
**militāris-is-e**, military  
**mille** (pl. **mīlia**), thousand  
**minimē**, no  
**minimē vērō**, certainly not  
**minimus-a-um**, smallest, least  
**minor-minor-minus**, smaller  
**minor-āri-minātus sum**, I threaten  
**mirābilis-is-e**, wonderful  
**mirificus-a-um**, wonderful  
**miror-āri-mirātus sum**, I wonder at, am amazed  
**mirus-a-um**, strange, remarkable  
**misceō-ēre-miscui-mixtus-mixtūrus**, I mix  
**misellus-a-um**, unhappy little  
**miser-era-erum**, wretched, sad  
**mittō-ere-misi-missus-missūrus**, I send  
**mōbilis-is-e**, fickle, unstable  
**modo**, only  
**modo . . . modo**, now . . . now  
**modus-i** (m), way, manner  
**quō modō?** how?  
**molestus-a-um**, unpleasant  
**mollis-is-e**, soft  
**moneō-ēre-ui-itus-itūrus**, I warn, advise  
**mōns-montis** (m), hill, mountain  
**mōnstrō-āre-āvi-ātus-ātūrus**, I show  
**mōnstrum-i** (n), monster  
**mora-ae** (f), delay  
**morbus-i** (m), disease  
**mordeō-ēre-momordi-morsus-morsūrus**, I bite



**morior-i-mortuus sum-moritūrus**, I die  
**mors-mortis** (f), death  
**mortem obeō-īre**, I die  
**mortālis-is-e**, mortal, human  
**mortifer-era-erum**, fatal  
**mōs-mōris** (m), custom, habit  
**mōtus-ūs** (m), movement, motion  
**moveō-ēre-mōvi-mōtus-mōtūrus**, I move  
**mox**, soon  
**mulgeō-ēre-mulsi- ——— - ———**, I milk  
**mulier-eris** (f), woman  
**multitūdō-inis** (f), crowd  
**multus-a-um (plūs-plūrimus)**, much, many  
**mūnus-eris** (n), gift, duty  
**mūrus-i** (m), wall  
**mūs-mūris** (m), mouse  
**musca-ae** (f), fly  
**mūtus-a-um**, dumb

**nam, namque**, for  
**narrō-āre-āvi-ātus-ātūrus**, I tell (a story)  
**nāscor-i-nātus sum**, I am born  
**nāsus-i** (m), nose  
**natō-āre-āvi- ——— -ātūrus**, I swim  
**nātūra-ae** (f), nature  
**nātūra loci**, countryside  
**nātus-ūs** (m), birth  
**nauta-ae** (m), sailor  
**nāvigō-āre-āvi- ——— -ātūrus**, I sail  
**nāvis-is** (f), ship  
**—— ne ?** (asks question)  
**nec (nec . . . nec)**, nor (neither . . . nor)  
**necesse est mihi**, I must  
**necō-āre-āvi-ātus-ātūrus**, I kill  
**negō-āre-āvi-ātus-ātūrus**, I deny, say . . . not  
**nēmō**, no one, nobody  
**nepōs-ōtis** (m), grandson, descendant  
**nēquam** (indecl.), wicked  
**neque (neque . . . neque)**, nor (neither . . . nor)  
**nēququam**, in vain  
**nesciō-īre-iī- ——— - ———**, I do not know



**nex-necis** (f), murder  
**niger-gra-grum**, black  
**nihil**, nothing  
**nihilōminus**, nevertheless  
**nimis** (+ *Gen.*), too much  
**nisi**, except, unless  
**nītor-i-nixus sum** (+ *Abl.*), I lean on  
**niveus-a-um**, snow-white  
**nix-nivis** (f), snow  
**nōbilis-is-e**, noble, high born  
**noceō-ēre-ui-** ——— **-itūrus** (+ *Dat.*), I harm, injure  
**noctū**, at night  
**nōlō-nōlle-nōlui-** ——— - ———, I do not want, wish  
**nōmen-inis** (n), name  
**nōminō-āre-āvi-ātus-ātūrus**, I name, call  
**nōn**, no, not  
**nōnne** ? surely?  
**nōnnullus-a-um**, some  
**nōscō-ere-nōvi-nōtus-nōtūrus**, I get to know  
**noster-stra-strum**, our  
**notō-āre-āvi-ātus-ātūrus**, I mark, note  
**novus-a-um**, new  
**nox-noctis** (f), night  
**nūdus-a-um**, bare, naked  
**nullus-a-um**, none  
**num** ? surely not?  
**num** (in Indirect Questions) = — **ne**  
**numerō-āre-āvi-ātus-ātūrus**, I add up, count  
**numerus-i** (m), number  
**numquam**, never  
**numquid** ? surely ?  
**nunc**, now  
**nuntiō-āre-āvi-ātus-ātūrus**, I bring news of, announce  
**nuntius-ii** (m), messenger, message, news  
**nūper**, just now, freshly, recently  
**nusquam**, nowhere  
  
**ob** (+ *Acc.*), because of  
**obdormiō-ire-ivi-** ——— **-itūrus**, I fall asleep  
**obeō-ire-ii-** ——— **-itūrus**, I meet  
**mortem obeō**, I die

**obliviscor-i-oblitus sum** (+ *Gen.*), I forget  
**obsideō-ēre-sēdi-sessus-sessūrus**, I besiege  
**obstō-āre-stiti-** ——— - ——— (+ *Dat.*) + **quōminus**, I stand in  
the way of, obstruct, prevent from  
**obviam eō-īre** (+ *Dat.*), I meet  
**occāsus-ūs sōlis**, (m) sunset  
**occidēns-entis** (m), west  
**occidō-ere-dī-** ——— -**occāsūrus**, I go down  
**ocellus-i** (m), little eye  
**oculus-i** (m), eye  
**ōdī-ōdisse-ōsus sum-ōsūrus**, I hate  
**odium-iī** (n), hatred, hate  
**ohē** ! hurray !  
**oleō-ēre-ūi-** ——— - ———, I give out a smell  
**olfaciō-ere-fēcī**, I smell, sniff  
**ōlim**, once upon a time, one day  
**oliva-ae** (f), olive  
**omittō-ere-misi-missus-missūrus**, I drop, let go  
**omninō**, completely  
**omnipotēns-ēns-ēns (entis)**, all powerful  
**omnis-is-e**, all  
**onus-oneris** (n), load, burden  
**opera-ae** (f), work, effort, agency  
**opēs-um** (f. pl.), wealth  
**opinor-ārī-opinātus sum**, I suppose, think  
**oportet-ēre-oportuit mē**, I ought, must  
**opprimō-ere-pressi-pressus-pressūrus**, I oppress  
**optimus-a-um**, best  
**opus est mihi** (+ *Ab!*), I need  
**ōrātiō-iōnis** (f), speech  
**ōrātiōnem habeō-ēre**, I make a speech  
**ōrātor-ōris** (m), orator, speaker  
**orbis-is** (m), sphere, world  
**ordō-inis** (m), line, rank  
**oriēns-ientis** (m), east  
**orior-īrī-ortus sum**, I arise  
**ōrō-āre-āvi-ātus-ātūrus**, I beg  
**ōs-ōris** (n), mouth, face  
**os-ossis** (n), bone  
**ōsculō-āre-āvi-ātus-ātūrus**, I kiss  
**ōsculum-i** (n), kiss



**ovis-is** (f), sheep

**ōvum-i** (n), egg

**paene**, almost

**pallidus-a-um**, pale

**pānis-is** (m), bread, loaf

**parcō-ere-peperci-** ——— **-parsūrus** (+ *Dat.*), I spare

**parcus-a-um**, small, scanty

**parēns-entis** (m or f), parent

**pāreō-ēre-ui-** ——— **-** ——— (+ *Dat.*), I obey

**parō-āre-āvi-ātus-ātūrus**, I prepare

**parricida-ae** (m), parricide, murderer

**pars-partis** (f), part

**partim**, partly

**parum** (+ *Gen.*), not enough, too little

**parvus-a-um** (**minor-minimus**), little, small

**passer-eris** (m), sparrow

**passim**, in many places, everywhere

**passus-ūs** (m), pace

**pāstor-ōris** (m), shepherd

**pater-patris** (m), father

**pater cōscriptus**, senator

**patientia-ae** (f), patience, endurance

**patior-patī-passus sum**, I suffer

**patria-ae** (f), native land

**patricius-iī** (m), one of the nobility, a noble

**patrōnus-i** (m), defending lawyer, counsel

**paucus-a-u m**, a little (pl. a few)

**paucis post diēbus**, a few days later

**pauper-er-er** (**pauperis**), poor

**pax-pācis** (f), peace

**pācem compōnō-ere-posui**, I make peace

**peccō-āre-āvi-** ——— **-ātūrus**, I do wrong

**pectus-oris** (n), chest

**pecūnia-ae** (f), money

**pedes-itis** (m), infantryman

**pēierō-āre-āvi-** ——— **-ātūrus**, I tell lies

**pēior-ior-ius**, worse

**penātēs-ium** (m. pl.), household gods

**pendeō-ēre-pependi-** ——— **-** ———, I hang

**pēnsu-m-i** (n), task, homework



**per (+ Acc.),** through  
**percutiō-ere-cussi-cussus-cussūrus,** I hit, strike  
**perdō-ere-didi-ditus-ditūrus,** I lose  
**perditus-a-um,** wicked  
**pereō-ire-ivi (iī)- ——— -itūrus,** I perish  
**perficiō-ere-fēcī-fectus-fectūrus,** I finish  
**pergō-ere-perrēxi- ——— -perrectūrus,** I continue, proceed  
**periculum-i (n),** danger  
**peristȳlium-iī (n),** peristyle, cloister  
**periūrus-i (m),** perjurer, liar  
**perlegō-ere-lēgi-lectus-lectūrus,** I read through  
**perpetuus-a-um,** everlasting  
**perspiciō-ere-spexi-spectus-spectūrus,** I perceive  
**perterreō-ēre-ūi-itus-itūrus,** I completely terrify  
**pervenio-ire-vēni- ——— -ventūrus,** I arrive  
**pēs-pedis (m),** foot  
**pessimus-a-um,** worst  
**petō-ere-petivi-petitus-itūrus,** I seek, ask for  
**pignus-oris (n),** pledge, wager, security  
**pila-ae (f),** ball  
**pilum-i (n),** javelin  
**pingō-ere-pinxi-pictus-tūrus,** I paint  
**pinguis-is-e,** fat  
**pipilō-āre-āvi- ——— -ātūrus,** I pipe, chirrup  
**piscis-is (m),** fish  
**pistor-ōris (m),** baker  
**pius-a-um,** dutiful, loyal, devout  
**placet-ēre-placuit mihi,** I like  
**plaudō-ere-plausi-plausus-plausūrus,** I applaud  
**plebs-plēbis (f),** the common people  
**plēnus-a-um,** full  
**pluit-ere-pluit,** it rains  
**plūrimus-a-um,** most  
**plūs-plūris,** more  
**pōculum-i (n),** cup  
**poēta-ae (m),** poet  
**poliō-ire-iī-itus-itūrus,** I polish  
**pollex-icis (m),** thumb  
**pōmum-i (n),** fruit, apple  
**pondus-eris (n),** weight, mass  
**pōnō-ere-posui-positus-positūrus,** I put, place

**pōns-pontis** (m), bridge  
**populor-āri-populātus sum**, I lay waste  
**populus-i** (m), people  
**porcus-i** (m), pig  
**porta-ae** (f), gate  
**porticus-ūs** (f), porch  
**portō-āre-āvi-ātus-ātūrus**, I carry  
**portus-ūs** (m), harbour  
**possum-posse-potui**, I can, am able  
**post** (+ *Acc.*), after, behind  
**postea**, afterwards  
**posterior-ior-ius**, the rear (of two)  
**postillā**, afterwards  
**postquam** (*with Verb*), after  
**postrēmus-a-um**, last, final  
**postridiē**, next day  
**potius**, rather  
**praebeō-ere-ui-itus-itūrus**, I offer, give, provide  
**praeclārus-a-um**, famous  
**praedicō-ere-dixi-dictus-dictūrus**, I foretell  
**praefectus-i** (m), commander  
**praemium-ii** (n), reward, prize  
**praesidium-ii** (n), guard, garrison  
**praestō-āre-stiti** — — — —, I show  
**fidem praestō**, I am faithful  
**praesum-esse-fui-futūrus**, I am in command  
**praesēns-ēns-ēns** (**praesentis**), present  
**praeter** (+ *Acc.*), past, beyond  
**praeterea**, moreover, what is more  
**praetor-ōris** (m), praetor, judge  
**praetōrium-ii** (n), general's H.Q.  
**porta praetōria-ae** (f), the main gate of a camp  
**precor-āri-precātus sum**, I beg, pray  
**pretiōsus-a-um**, valuable  
**pretium-ii** (n), price  
**primus-a-um**, first  
**principālis-is-e**, main  
**prior-ior-ius**, former, earlier (of two)  
**priscus-a-um**, ancient  
**prō** (+ *Abl.*), for, on behalf of  
**proavus-i** (m), great-grandfather  
**prōdigium-ii** (n), sign, portent



**prōditor-ōris** (m), traitor  
**prōdō-ere-didī-ditus-ditūrus**, I betray  
**proficiscor-ī-profectus sum**, I set out  
**profundus-a-um**, deep  
**prōgredior-ī-prōgressus sum**, I go forward, advance  
**prohibeō-ēre-uī-itus-itūrus**, I prevent  
**prōmittō-ere-misi-missus-missūrus**, I promise  
**prope** (+ *Acc.*), near  
**propinō-āre-āvi**, I drink a toast  
**propinquus-a-um**, neighbouring, nearby  
**proprius-a-um**, one's own  
**prōspiciō-ere-spexi-spectus-spectūrus**, I look out  
**prōtegō-ere-tēxi-tectus-tectūrus**, I protect  
**proximus-a-um**, nearest  
**puella-ae** (f), girl  
**puer-pueri** (m), boy  
**puerulus-ī** (m), small boy  
**pugnax-ax-ax** (**pugnācis**), pugnacious  
**pugnō-āre-āvi-ātus-ātūrus**, I fight  
**pugnus-ī** (m), fist  
**pulcher-chra-chrum**, beautiful  
**pulsō-āre-āvi-ātus-ātūrus**, I hit  
**purgō-āre-āvi-ātus-ātūrus**, I clean  
**pūrus-a-um**, clean  
**putō-āre-āvi-ātus-ātūrus**, I think

**quadrigae-ārum** (f. pl.), four-horse chariot  
**quaerō-ere-quaesivī-itus-itūrus**, I look for, seek  
**quaestiō-iōnis** (f), enquiry, question  
**quaestōrium-iī** (n), quartermaster's H.Q.  
**quālis-is-e** ? of what sort?  
**quam** ! how !  
**quam** (*after Comparative*), than  
**quam** (+ *Superlative*), as . . . as possible  
**quamquam**, although  
**quandō** ? when?  
**si quandō**, whenever  
**quandōcumque**, whenever  
**quandoquidem**, since  
**quantus-a-um** ? how much? how big?  
**quārē**, why, wherefore, therefore



**quasi**, as if

—— **que**, and

**queror-i-questus sum**, I complain, whine

**quī-quae-quod**, who, which

**quia**, because

**quidam-quaedam-quoddam**, a

**quidem**, at least, at any rate

**quidnī** ? why not?, certainly

**via quintāna-ae** (f), minor road in a camp

**quippe quī-quae-quod** (+ *Subjunctive*), because, since

**quis-quis-quid** ? who? what?

**quisquam-quidquam**, anyone (after a negative)

**quisque-quaecque-quodque**, each

**quisquis-quicquid**, whoever, whatever

**quō** ? to what place?

**quōc ōnsiliō** ? for what purpose? why?

**quō instrūmentō** ? with what?

**quō modō** ? how?

**quod**, because

**quondam**, once upon a time, once

**quoque**, also

**quot** ? how many?

**quotus-a-um** ? what number?

**quōusque** ? how long? how far?

**raeda-ae** (f), cart

**rāmus-i** (m), branch

**rāna-ae** (f), frog

**rapiō-ere-rapui-raptus-raptūrus**, I snatch

**ratio-ōnis** (f), reason

**raucus-a-um**, hoarse

**recitō-āre-āvi-ātus-ātūrus**, I read aloud

**rectus-a-um**, right, straight

**recūsō-āre-āvi-ātus-ātūrus**, I refuse

**reddō-ere-reddidi-redditus-redditūrus**, I give back, make, turn

**redeō-ire-iī- — -itūrus**, I go back

**redūcō-ere-dūxi-ductus-ductūrus**, I lead, bring back

**referō-referre-rettuli-relātus-lātūrus**, I bring back

**rēgālis-is-e**, royal

**rēgina-ae** (f), queen

**rēgnum-i** (n), kingdom

**regō-ere-rēxi-rectus-rectūrus**, I rule

**regredior-i-regressus sum**, I go back, retreat

**reiciō-ere-iēcī-iectus-iectūrus**, I throw back

**relinquō-ere-reliquī-relictus-relictūrus**, I leave behind

**reliquus-a-um**, left, remaining

**removeō-ēre-mōvi-mōtus-mōtūrus**, I move away

**repellō-ere-reppuli-repulsus-repulsūrus**, I drive back

**repōnō-ere-posui-positus-positūrus**, I put back

**reportō-āre-āvi-ātus-ātūrus**, I carry back

**reprehendō-ere-endi-ēnsus-ēnsūrus**, I scold, blame

**requiēscō-ere-quiēvi- ——— -ētūrus**, I rest

**rēs-reī** (f), thing

**rē vērā**, really, in reality

**resistō-ere-restiti- ——— - ——— (+ Dat.)**, I resist, withstand

**respirō-āre-āvi- ——— -ātūrus**, I recover breath

**respondeō-ēre-di-ōnsus-sūrus**, I answer

**rēspública-reipublicae** (f), the state

**rēte-is** (n), net

**rētiārius-iī** (m), net-fighter

**retineō-ēre-tinui-tentus-tentūrus**, I hold back

**retrahō-ere-trāxi-tractus-tractūrus**, I drag back, withdraw

**reveniō-ire-vēni- ——— -ventūrus**, I come back

**revertor-i-reversus sum**, I go back, return

**revocō-āre-āvi-ātus-ātūrus**, I recall

**rex-rēgis** (m), king

**rideō-ēre-risī- ——— -risūrus**, I laugh, laugh at

**rima-ae** (f), chink, crack

**ripa-ae** (f), bank

**risus-ūs** (m), laughter

**rivus-i** (m), river, stream, water

**rixa-ae** (f), quarrel

**rōdō-rōdere-rōsi- ——— - ———**, I gnaw

**rogō-āre-āvi-ātus-ātūrus**, I ask

**rogus-i** (m), pyre

**rostrum-i** (n), beak

**rota-ae** (f), wheel

**rubeō-ēre-ui- ——— - ———**, I am red

**ruber-bra-brum**, red

**ruina-ae** (f), ruin

**rūpēs-is** (f), rock, reef



**sacculus-i(m)**, bag, money-bag  
**saccus-i (m)**, sack  
**sacerdōs-ōtis (m)**, priest  
**sacrificō-āre-āvi-ātus-ātūrus**, I sacrifice  
**sacrilegus-a-um**, impious, sinful  
**saepe, saepenumērō**, often  
**saeviō-ire-iī- ——— -itūrus**, I am angry, rage  
**saevus-a-um**, savage  
**sagitta-ae (f)**, arrow  
**sal-salis (m)**, salt, wit  
**saliō-ire-iī- ——— - ———**, I jump  
**saltō-āre-āvi- ——— -ātūrus**, I jump, dance  
**salūs-ūtis (f)**, safety, welfare  
**salūtō-āre-āvi-ātus-ātūrus**, I hail, greet  
**sanguis-sanguinis (m)**, blood  
**sānō-āre-āvi-ātus-ātūrus**, I cure  
**sānus-a-um**, well  
**sapiēns-ēns-ēns (sapiēntis)**, wise, clever  
**sapientia-ae (f)**, wisdom  
**sapiō-ere-ivī (iī)- ——— - ———**, I taste  
**satis (+ Gen.)**, enough  
*(Adverb)*, sufficiently  
**saxum-i (n)**, rock  
**scaena-ae (f)**, scene  
**scelerātus-a-um**, wicked, wretched  
**scilicet**, of course  
**sciō-ire-scivī- ——— - ———**, I know  
**scriba-ae (m)**, secretary, clerk  
**scribō-ere-scripsi-scriptus-scriptūrus**, I write  
**scūtum-i (n)**, shield  
**sē, suī, sibi, sē**, himself, herself, themselves  
**sēcēdō-ere-cessi- ——— -cessūrus**, I go away, strike, revolt  
**sēcrētō**, secretly  
**secundus-a-um**, second, following, favourable  
**sēcūrus-a-um**, carefree  
**sed**, but  
**sedeō-ēre-sēdi- ——— -sessūrus**, I sit  
**seges-segetis (f)**, growing corn, crop  
**sella-ae (f)**, chair, seat  
**semper**, always  
**senātor-ōris (m)**, senator



**senātus-ūs** (m), senate  
**senex** (**nātū māior-nātū maximus**), old  
**senex-senis** (m), old man  
**senilis-is-e**, old  
**sententia-ae** (f), opinion  
**sentiō-ire-sēnsi-sēnsus-sēnsūrus**, I feel  
**sēparō-āre-āvi-ātus-ātūrus**, I separate  
**sepeliō-ire-ivi-sepultus-sepultūrus**, I bury  
**sepulcrum-i** (n), grave, tomb  
**sequor-i-secūtus sum**, I follow  
**sērō**, late  
**serviō-ire-iī- ——— -itūrus** (+ *Dat.*), I serve, do a service to  
**servō-āre-āvi-ātus-ātūrus**, I save, keep safe  
**servus-i** (m), slave, servant  
**sestertius-iī** (m), sesterce (coin)  
**seu . . . seu**, whether . . . or, if . . . or if  
**sextārius-iī** (m), pint  
**si**, if  
**sic**, thus, in this way  
**sicut**, like, as  
**significō-āre-āvi-ātus-ātūrus**, I indicate, mean  
**signum-i** (n), signal, sign  
**silentium-iī** (n), silence  
**silentiō**, quietly, in silence  
**silva-ae** (f), wood, forest  
**similis-is-e** (+ *Gen.*), like  
**simul**, at the same time, together  
**simulatque**, as soon as  
**simulō-āre-āvi-ātus-ātūrus**, I pretend  
**sine** (+ *Abl.*), without  
**singultus-ūs** (m), sobbing  
**singuli-ae-a**, one each, one by one  
**sinister-stra-strum**, left  
**sinistra-ae** (f), left hand  
**sinō-ere-sivi- ——— -sitūrus**, I allow  
**sitiō-ire-iī- ——— - ———**, I am thirsty  
**socius-iī** (m), ally  
**sōl-sōlis** (m), sun  
**soleō-ēre-solitus sum** (+ *Infin.*), I am accustomed  
**solum-i** (n), earth, ground  
**sōlus-a-um**, alone

**solvō-ere-solvī-solūtus-solūtūrus**, I untie, release  
**somnium-iī** (n), dream  
**somnus-i** (m), sleep  
**sonitus-ūs** (m), noise  
**sonō-āre-sonuī-sonitus-sonāturus**, I sound  
**sonus-i** (m), sound, noise  
**sordidus-a-um**, dirty  
**soror-ōris** (f), sister  
**speciēs-iēī** (f), appearance  
**spectātor-ōris** (m), onlooker, spectator  
**spectō-āre-āvi-ātus-ātūrus**, I look at  
**spērō-āre-āvi-ātus-ātūrus**, I hope  
**splendidus-a-um**, bright, shining  
**spondeō-ēre-spondi-spōnsus-spōnsūrus**, I pledge, bet  
**spōnsiō-iōnis** (f), pledge, bet  
**statim**, at once, immediately  
**statiō-ōnis** (f), outpost  
**statua-ae** (f), statue  
**stilus-i** (m), pen  
**stipendium-iī** (n), pay, wages  
**stipendia ēmeritus**, demobilized, retired  
**stō-āre-steti- ——— -stātūrus**, I stand  
**stringō-ere-strinxi-strictus-strictūrus**, I draw (a sword)  
**stultus-a-um**, stupid, silly, foolish  
**stupefaciō-ere-fēcī-factus-factūrus**, I amaze  
**suāvis-is-e**, sweet, pleasant  
**sub** (+ *Abl.*), under  
**subeō-ire-iī- ——— -itūrus**, I go under  
**subitō**, suddenly  
**submergō-ere-mersi-mersus-mersūrus**, I drown, submerge  
**subrideō-ēre-risi- ——— -risūrus**, I chuckle, smile  
**sufficiō-ere-fēcī- ——— -fectūrus**, I am sufficient  
**sum-esse-fui- ——— -futūrus**, I am  
**summus-a-um**, topmost, top of  
**sūmō-ere-sumpsi-sumptus-tūrus**, I take, put on  
**suō-ere-sui-sūtus-sūtūrus**, I sew  
**super** (+ *Acc.*), over, above  
**superbus-a-um**, proud, haughty  
**superior-ior-ius**, upper, higher  
**supplex-icis** (m or f), petitioner, suppliant  
**suprā** (+ *Acc.*), above



**suprēmus-a-um**, highest, last  
**surdus-a-um**, deaf  
**surgō-ere-surrēxi- ——— -surrectūrus**, I stand up  
**suspendō-ere-endi-ēnsus-ēnsūrus**, I hang  
**suspīcor-ārī-suspīcātus sum**, I suspect, am suspicious  
**suspīrium-iī** (n), sigh  
**sūtor-ōris** (m), cobbler  
**suus-a-um**, his own, her own, their own

**tabella-ae** (f), tablet  
**taberna-ae** (f), shop  
**tablinum-i** (n), study  
**tabula-ae** (f), board  
**taceō-ēre-uī- ——— -itūrus**, I keep quiet  
**tacitus-a-um**, silent  
**taedet-ēre-taedit mē** (+ *Gen.*), I am tired of  
**tālis-is-e**, such  
**tam**, so  
**tamen**, however  
**tandem**, at last, at length  
**tangō-ere-tetigi-tactus-tactūrus**, I touch  
**tantus-a-um**, so big, so great  
**tardus-a-um**, slow, lingering  
**taurus-i** (m), bull  
**tectum-i** (n), roof  
**tempestās-ātis** (f), time, weather, storm  
**templum-i** (n), temple  
**temptō-āre-āvi-ātus-ātūrus**, I try  
**tempus-oris** (n), time  
**tenebrae-ārum** (f. pl.), shade, darkness  
**tenēbricōsus-a-um**, shadowy  
**teneō-ēre-uī- ——— - ———**, I hold  
**tener-era-erum**, tender  
**tenuis-is-e**, thin  
**tergum-i** (n), back  
**terra-ae** (f), earth, ground  
**terreō-ēre-uī-itus-itūrus**, I terrify  
**terribilis-is-e**, terrible  
**testāmentum-i** (n), will  
**timeō-ēre-uī- ——— - ———**, I am afraid, fear  
**timidus-a-um**, afraid



timor-ōris (m), fear  
 tīrō-ōnis (m), recruit  
 titulus-ī (m), notice  
 toga-ae virilis (f), a man's toga  
 tollō-ere-sustulī-sublātus-sublātūrus, I raise, lift, remove  
 tonitrus-ūs (m), thunder  
 torqueō-ēre-torsi-tortus-tortūrus, I twist  
 tot, so many  
 tōtus-a-um, all, whole  
 trādō-ere-trādidi-itus-itūrus, I hand over, hand down  
 trahō-ere-trāxi-tractus-tractūrus, I drag, draw  
 trāns (+ Acc.), across  
 trānseō-ire-ii- ——— -itūrus, I go across  
 trānsfigō-ere-fixi-fixus-fixūrus, I pierce  
 trānsiliō-ire-silui- ——— - ———, I jump across, over  
 tremō-ere-ui- ——— - ———, I tremble  
 tribūnus-ī (m), tribune, lieutenant  
     tribūnus plēbis, tribune of the people  
 triclinium-ii (n), dining-room  
 tristis-is-e, sad  
 tristitia-ae (f), sorrow  
 tritavus-ī (m), great-great-great-great-grandfather  
 trucidō-āre-āvi-ātus-ātūrus, I kill, slaughter  
 tuba-ae (f), trumpet  
 tum, then, at that time  
 turba-ae (f), crowd  
 turbō-āre-āvi-ātus-ātūrus, I disturb  
 turgidulus-a-um, swelling, swollen  
 turgidus-a-um, swollen  
 tussis-is (f), cough  
 tūtus-a-um, safe  
 tuus-a-um, your  
 tyrannus-ī (m), tyrant

ubi, where, when  
 ulciscor-ī-ultus sum, I take vengeance on  
 ulterior-ior-ius, further  
 ultimus-a-um, last  
 ululō-āre-āvi- ——— -ātūrus, I howl, yell  
 umbilicus-ī (m), rod inside papyrus book  
 umbra-ae (f), shade, shadow

**umerus-i** (m), shoulder  
**umquam**, ever  
**ūnā cum**, together with  
**uncia-ae** (f), ounce  
**unda-ae** (f), wave  
**unde** ? from what place?  
**unguentum-i** (n), ointment, perfume  
**urbs-urbis** (f), city  
**urna-ae** (f), jar  
**ūrō-ere-ussi-ustus-ustūrus**, I burn  
**usque**, continuously  
**usque ad** (+ *Acc.*), right up to  
**usque ad infinitum**, for ever  
**uterque-utroque-utrumque**, both  
**ūtilis-is-e**, useful  
**utinam** (+ *Subj.*), if only  
**ūtor-i-ūsus sum** (+ *Abl.*), I use  
**utrum** . . . **necne**, whether . . . or not (in Indirect Questions)  
**ūva-ae** (f), grape  
**uxor-ōris** (f), wife  
  
**vacca-ae** (f), cow  
**vacuus-a-um**, empty  
**vae** ! alas !  
**vāgiō-ire-ii- ——— -itūrus**, I wail  
**vāgitus-ūs** (m), wailing  
**vagor-āri-vagātus sum**, I wander  
**valdē**, very much  
**valeō-ēre-ui- ——— -valitūrus**, I am well  
**valētudinārium-ii** (n), hospital  
**vallum-i** (n), rampart  
**vastō-āre-āvi-ātus-ātūrus**, I devastate  
**vātēs-is** (m), prophet, soothsayer  
**vehementer**, violently  
**vehō-ere-vexi-vectus-vectūrus**, I carry  
**vehor-i-vectus sum**, I ride  
**vel** (**vel** . . . **vel**), or (either . . . or)  
**vellō-ere-vulsi-vulsus-vulsūrus**, I pull  
**vēlō-āre-āvi-ātus-ātūrus**, I cover  
**vendō-ere-vendidi-venditus-venditūrus**, I sell



**venia-ae** (f), pardon

**veniam mihi dā**, I beg your pardon

**veniō-īre-vēni-** ——— **-ventūrus**, I come

**venter-ventris** (m), stomach

**ventus-ī** (m), wind

**venustus-a-um**, charming, elegant

**verbum-ī** (n), word

**vereor-ēri-veritus sum**, I am afraid

**versiculus-ī** (m), line of poetry

**versus-ūs** (m), line of poetry

**vertō-ere-verti-versus-versūrus**, I turn

**vērus-a-um**, true

**vester-vestra-vestrum**, your

**vestibulum-ī** (n), vestibule, entrance hall

**vestis-is** (f), clothes

**vetō-āre-uī-itus-itūrus**, I forbid

**vetus-us-us** (**veteris**), old

**via-ae** (f), road, street

**viātor-ōris** (m), traveller

**victima-ae** (f), victim, animal for sacrifice

**victus-ūs** (m), food

**videō-ēre-vidi-visus-visūrus**, I see

**videor-ēri-visus sum**, I seem

**vigil-ilis** (m), policeman

**vigilia-ae** (f), watch (time of night)

**vigilō-āre-āvi-** ——— **-ātūrus**, I keep awake, watch

**vīlis-is-e**, cheap

**villa-ae** (f), house

**vincō-ere-vici-victus-victūrus**, I conquer

**vinculum-ī** (n), chain

**vinum-ī** (n), wine

**vir-viri** (m), man

**virgō-inis** (f), maiden

**vis** (f), strength, force

**vita-ae** (f), life

**vivō-ere-vixi-** ——— **-victūrus**, I live, exist

**vix**, scarcely

**vocō-āre-āvi-ātus-ātūrus**, I call

**volō-āre-āvi-** ——— **-ātūrus**, I fly

**volō-velle-volui-** ——— - ———, I want, wish

**volūmen-inis** (n), volume



**volvō-ere-volvi-volūtus-tūrus**, I roll

**vox-vōcis** (f), voice

**vulgus-l** (n), mob, common people

**vulnerō-āre-āvi-ātus-ātūrus**, I wound

**vulnus-eris** (n), wound

**vulnus inferō-ferre**, I wound

**vultus-ūs** (m), face, expression



**PARS OCTAVA**  
**ANGLICE—LATINE**





## VOCABULARY

## ENGLISH—LATIN

- able, I am**, possum-posse-potui- — - —  
**absent, I am**, absum-abesse-āfui- — -āfutūrus  
**accompany**, comitor-ārī-ātus sum  
**ache**, doleō-ēre-ui- — -dolitūrus ; ex ventre, capite, etc.,  
 labōrō-āre-āvi- — -ātūrus  
**across**, trāns (+ *Acc.*)  
**advance**, prōgredior-ī-prōgressus sum  
**afraid, afraid of**, timeō-ēre-ui- — - — ; vereor-ērī-veritus  
 sum  
**after**, post (+ *Acc.*), *with noun*  
 — postquam, *with verb*  
**afterwards**, postea  
     **not long afterwards**, nōn multō post  
**again**, iterum  
**against**, contrā (+ *Acc.*) ; in (+ *Acc.*)  
**all**, omnis-is-e  
 — (=whole), tōtus-a-um  
**allow**, sinō-ere-sivī- — -sitūrus (+ *Inf.*)  
**almost**, paene  
**also**, quoque, etiam  
**although**, quamquam  
**always**, semper  
**amazed, I am**, mīror-ārī-mirātus sum  
**ancestors**, māiōrēs-um (m. pl.)  
**and**, et, atque, ac, . . . que  
**angry**, irātus-a-um  
 — **I become**, irāscor-ī-irātus sum  
**animal**, animal-ālis (n)  
**another**, alius-a-ud  
**anyone, if anyone**, sī quis-quis-quid  
**appear**, adpāreō-ēre-ui- — - — ; videor-ērī-visus sum  
**applaud**, plaudō-ere-plausī-plausus-plausūrus  
**apple**, mālum-ī (n) ; pōmum-ī (n)  
**approach**, appropinquō-āre-āvi- — -ātūrus ; adeō-ire-ii-  
 — -itūrus

**arms**, arma-ōrum (n. pl.)

**army**, exercitus-ūs (m)

**arrange**, dispōnō-ere-posuī-positus-positūrus

**arrest**, comprehendō-ere-prehendi-prehēnsus-prehēnsūrus

**arrive**, adveniō ; perveniō-īre-vēnī- — -ventūrus

**as (coin)**, as-assis (m)

**as . . . as possible**, quam (+ *Superlative*)

**ash**, cinis-eris (m)

**ask**, rogō-āre-āvi-ātus-ātūrus ; precor-ārī-precātus sum

**asleep, fall asleep**, obdormiō-īre-dormivī- — -dormitūrus

**assure**, adfirmō-āre-āvi-ātus-ātūrus

**at**, ad (+ *Acc.*) ; the Locative

**attack**, adgredior-ī-adgressus sum ; impetum faciō in (+ *Acc.*)

**awake, I am**, vigilō-āre-āvi- — -ātūrus

**away, I am**, absum-abesse-āfuī- — -āfutūrus

**back**, tergum-ī (n)

**bad**, malus-a-um

**baker**, pistor-ōris (m)

**ball**, pila-ae (f)

**bank**, ripa-ae (f)

**basket**, alveus-ī (m)

**beach**, litus-oris (n)

**beat**, pulsō-āre-āvi-ātus-ātūrus ; caedō-ere-cecidī-caesus-caesūrus

**beautiful**, pulcher-pulchra-pulchrum

**because**, quia ; quippe quī-quae-quod (+ *Subj.*)

**bed**, lectus-ī (m)

**bedroom**, cubiculum-ī (n)

**before**, ante (+ *Acc.*), *with noun*

— antequam, *with verb*

— antea, *adverb*

**beg**, ōrō-āre-āvi-ātus-ātūrus ; precor-ārī-precātus sum

**begin**, incipiō-ere-(coepī-coeptus-coeptūrus)

**behind**, post (+ *Acc.*)

**believe**, crēdō-ere-crēdidī- — -crēditūrus (+ *Dat.*)

**belt**, balteus-ī (m)

**beseech**, ōrō-āre-āvi-ātus-ātūrus ; precor-ārī-precātus sum

**besiege**, obsideō-ēre-sēdī-sessus-sessūrus

**betray**, prōdō-ēre-prōdidī-prōditus-prōditūrus

**between**, inter (+ *Acc.*)



**big**, magnus-a-um ; ingēns-ēns-ēns (ingentis)

so **big**, tantus-a-um

**bird**, avis-is (f)

**bite**, mordeō-ēre-momordī-morsus-morsūrus

**black**, niger-gra-grum

**blame**, reprehendō-ere-reprehendī-ēnsus-ēnsūrus

**body**, corpus-oris (n)

**bone**, os-ossis (n)

**book**, liber-brī (m)

**born, I am**, nāscor-ī-nātus sum

**both**, ambō-ae-ō ; uterque-utroque-utrumque

**bottom**, imus-a-um

**boy**, puer-uerī (m)

**brave**, fortis-is-e ; audax-ax-ax (audācis)

**bravely**, fortiter ; audācter

**bread**, pānis-is (m)

**break**, frangō-ere-frēgi-fractus-fractūrus

**breastplate**, lōrica-ae (f)

**bridge**, pōns-pontis (m)

**bring**, adportō-āre-āvi-ātus-ātūrus ; adferō-ferre-attuli-allātus-allātūrus

**brother**, frāter-frātris (m)

**build**, aedificō-āre-āvi-ātus-ātūrus

**bull**, bōs-bovis (m)

**burn**, ūrō-ere-ussī-ustus-ustūrus ; incendō-ere-incendi-incēnsus-incēnsūrus (I set on fire) ; ardeō-ēre-arsī- ——— -arsūrus (I am on fire)

**burst into**, inrumpō-ere-rūpi- ——— -ruptūrus

**burst out**, ērumpō-ere-rūpi- ——— -ruptūrus

**bush**, dūmētum-ī (n)

**but**, sed

**buy**, emō-ere-ēmi-emptus-emptūrus

**call**, vocō-āre-āvi-ātus-ātūrus

—— **out**, exclāmō-āre-āvi- ——— ātūrus

**camp**, castra-ōrum (n. pl.)

**can**, possum-posse-potui- ——— - ———

**capture**, capiō-ere-cēpi-captus-captūrus

**care, I don't**, nōn flocci faciō-ere

**carry**, portō-āre-āvi-ātus-ātūrus ; ferō-ferre-tuli-lātus-lātūrus ;  
(of *equipment*) gerō-ere-gessi-gestus-gestūrus

**cart**, raeda-ae (f)

**cat**, fēlēs-is (f)

**catch**, capiō-ere-cēpī-captus-captūrus ; captō-āre-āvi-ātus-ātūrus ; comprehendō-ere-comprehendī-ēnsus-ēnsūrus

**cave**, caverna-ae (f)

**centurion**, centuriō-ōnis (m)

**certain, I am**, prō certō habeō-ēre

**chain**, vinculum-ī (n)

**chair**, sella-ae (f)

**chariot**, quadrīgae-ārum (f. pl.)

**charioteer**, aurīga-ae (m)

**chase**, fugō-āre-āvi-ātus-ātūrus

**cheap**, vilis-is-e

**cheaply**, vili

**chest**, pectus-oris (n)

**chest (box)**, cista-ae (f)

**child**, infāns-infantis (m or f)

**citizen**, cīvis-is (m or f)

**city**, urbs-urbis (f)

**clean**, pūrus-a-um

—— purgō-āre-āvi-ātus-ātūrus

**clever**, sapiēns-ēns-ēns (sapiēntis)

**climb**, ascendō-ere-ascendī-ascēnsus-ascēnsūrus

**clothes**, vestis-is (f) ; habitus-ūs (m)

**cobbler**, sūtor-ōris (m)

**cockrel**, gallus-ī (m)

**cold**, frigidus-a-um

**collect**, colligō-ere-collēgī-collectus-collectūrus

**colour**, color-ōris (m)

**come**, veniō-ire-vēnī- —— -ventūrus

—— **back**, reveniō-ire-vēnī- —— -ventūrus

—— **in**, intrō-āre-āvi- —— -ātūrus

**command**, iubeō-ēre-iussī-iussus-iussūrus ; imperō-āre-āvi- —— -ātūrus (+ *Dat.*)

**common people**, vulgus-ī (n)

**companion**, comes-itis (m or f)

**compel**, cōgō-ere-coēgī-coactus-coactūrus

**compose**, compōnō-ere-posuī-positus-positūrus

**condemn**, damnō-āre-āvi-ātus-ātūrus

**confess**, cōnfiteor-ēri-cōnfessus sum

**conquer**, vincō-ere-vicī-victus-victūrus



- conspirator**, coniūrātus-ī (m)  
**conspire**, coniūrō-āre-āvi- — -ātūrus  
**consul**, cōsul-cōsulis (m)  
**contain**, contineō-ere-continui-contentus-contentūrus  
**cook**, coquō-ere-coxi-coctus-coctūrus  
**corn**, frūmentum-ī (n)  
**corpse**, cadāver-eris (n)  
**country**, terra-ae (f) ; patria-ae (f)  
**courage**, audācia-ae (f) ; virtūs-ūtis (f)  
**cover**, vėlō-āre-āvi-ātus-ātūrus  
**cow**, vacca-ae (f)  
**cry**, clāmor-ōris (m)  
**cry**, lacrimō-āre-āvi- — -ātūrus  
 — **out**, exclāmō-āre-āvi- — -ātūrus  
**cure**, sālō-āre-āvi-ātus-ātūrus  
  
**dare**, audeō-ēre-ausus sum  
**dark**, tenēbricōsus-a-um  
**daughter**, filia-ae (f)  
**day**, diēs-iēi (m)  
     **daily**, cotidiē  
     **during the day**, interdiū  
**dead**, mortuus-a-um  
**deceive**, dēcipiō-ere-cēpi-ceptus-ceptūrus; fallō-ere-fefelli-falsus  
     -falsūrus  
**declare (war)**, bellum indicō-ere-dixi-dictus-dictūrus  
**defeat**, vincō-ere-vici-victus-victūrus  
**defend**, dēfendō-ere-dēfendi-dēfensus-dēfensūrus  
**delay**, mora-ae (f)  
**deliberate**, dēliberō-āre-āvi-ātus-ātūrus  
**delight**, placeō-ēre-placui ; dēlectō-āre-āvi-ātus-ātūrus  
**deny**, negō-āre-āvi-ātus-ātūrus  
**die**, mortem obeō-ire-ii- — -itūrus ; morior-ī-mortuus sum-  
     moritūrus  
**difficult**, difficilis-is-e  
**dine**, cēnō-āre-āvi-ātus-ātūrus  
**dinner**, cēna-ae (f)  
**dirty**, sordidus-a-um  
**discover**, inveniō-ire-invēni-inventus-inventūrus  
**dislike**, nōn amō-āre ; nōn placet mihi  
**dismiss**, dīmittō-ere-dīmisī-dīmissus-dīmissūrus



**distribute**, distribuō-ere-distribuī-distribūtus-distribūtūrus

**do**, faciō-ere-fēcī-factus-factūrus

**doctor**, medicus-ī (m)

**dog**, canis-is (m or f)

**door**, porta-ae (f) ; iānua-ae (f)

**doorkeeper**, iānitor-ōris (m)

**doubt**, dubium-iī (n)

**there is no doubt that**, nōn dubium est quīn (+ *Subj.*)

**draw (a sword)**, stringō-ere-strinxī-strictus-strictūrus

**dream**, somnium-iī (n)

**drink**, bibō-ere-bibī- ——— - ——— ; exhaustiō-ire-exhausi-  
exhaustus-exhaustūrus

**drive back**, repellō-ere-reppulī-repulsus-repulsūrus

—— **out**, expellō-ere-expulī-expulsus-expulsūrus

**drop (fall)**, cadō-ere-cecidī- ——— -cāsūrus

**drown**, submergō-ere-submersī-submersus-submersūrus

**dumb**, mūtus-a-um

**during the day**, interdiū

—— **the night**, noctū

**ear**, auris-is (f)

**early**, māne

**easy**, facilis-is-e

**eat**, edō-esse-ēdī-ēsus-ēsūrus ; cōsūmō-ere-cōsumpsī-cōn-  
sumptus-cōsumptūrus

**eat dinner**, cēnō-āre-āvi-ātus-ātūrus

**egg**, ōvum-ī (n)

**elect**, creō-āre-āvi-ātus-ātūrus

**enemy**, hostis-is (m)

**enjoy**, fruor-ī-fructus sum-fruitūrus (+ *Abl.*)

**enough**, satis (+ *Gen.*)

**not enough**, parum (+ *Gen.*)

**enraged, I am**, irāscor-ī-irātus sum ; saeviō-ire-itus-itūrus

**enter**, intrō-āre-āvi- ——— -ātūrus

**equal**, aequus-a-um

—— aequō-āre-āvi-ātus-ātūrus

**escape**, effugiō-ere-effūgī- ——— - ———

**even**, etiam

**every**, quisque-quaeque-quidque

**everyday**, cotidiē

**example**, exemplum-ī (n)

**exile**, exsilium-iī (n)

**expel**, expellō-ere-expulī-expulsus-expulsūrus

**explore**, explōrō-āre-āvi-ātus-ātūrus

**expression**, vultus-ūs (m)

**eye**, oculus-ī (m)

**face**, ōs-ōris (n) ; faciēs-faciēī (f)

**fact, in fact**, rē vērā

**faithful**, fidēlis-is-e

**faithful, I am**, fidem praestō-āre-praestiti

**fall asleep**, obdormiō-īre-īvī- ——— -itūrus

**fall down**, cadō-ere-cecidī- ——— -cāsūrus

**farmer**, agricola-ae (m)

**father**, pater-patris (m)

**fear**, timor-ōris (m)

—— timeō-ēre-uī- ——— - ——— ; vereor-ērī-veritus sum

**few**, paucī-ae-a

**field**, ager-agrī (m)

**fierce**, ferox-ox-ox (ferōcis) ; saevus-a-um

**fight**, pugnō-āre-āvi-ātus-ātūrus

**fill**, compleō-ēre-complēvi-complētus-complētūrus

**find, find out**, inveniō-īre-invēnī-inventus-inventūrus

**finger**, digitus-ī (m)

**finish**, perficiō-ere-perfēcī-perfectus-perfectūrus

**fire**, ignis-is (m)

**fish**, piscis-is (m)

**flee**, fugiō-ere-fūgī- ——— -fugitūrus

**flower**, flōs-flōris (m)

**fly**, volō-āre-āvi- ——— -ātūrus

**follow**, sequor-ī-secūtus sum

**food**, cibus-ī (m) ; victus-ūs (m)

**foolish**, stultus-a-um

**foot**, pēs-pedis (m)

**for**, nam, namque, enim

—— **on behalf of**, prō (+ Abl.)

**forehead**, frōns-frontis (f)

**forest**, silva-ae (f)

**foretell**, praedicō-ere-dīxī-dictus-dictūrus

**forget**, oblivīscor-ī-oblitus sum

**found (a city)**, condō-ere-condidī-conditus-conditūrus

**free, set free**, liberō-āre-āvī-ātus-ātūrus



**free (for nothing)**, grātis

**fresh**, novus-a-um

**friend**, amicus-ī (m) ; comes-itis (m or f)

**frightened**, territus-a-um

**frog**, rāna-ae (f)

**from**, ā, ab (+ Abl.)

**from here**, hinc

**fruit**, fructus-ūs (m) ; frūgēs-um (f. pl.)

**garden**, hortus-ī (m)

**Gaul**, Gallia-ae (f)

**a Gaul**, Gallus-ī (m)

**general**, imperātor-ōris (m)

**get**, adipīscor-ī-adeptus sum

**girl**, puella-ae (f)

**give**, dō-dare-dedī-datus-datūrus

—— **back**, reddō-ere-reddidī-redditus-redditūrus

—— **out**, distribuō-ere-distribui-distribūtus-distribūtūrus

**gladiator**, gladiātor-ōris (m)

**go**, eō-ire-ivī (ii)- —— -itūrus

—— **away**, abeō-ire-ii- —— -itūrus

—— **back**, redeō-ire ; regredior-ī-regressus sum ; revertor-  
ī-reversus sum

—— **forward**, prōgredior-ī-prōgressus sum

—— **out**, exeō-ire ; ēgredior-ī-ēgressus sum

—— **to**, adeō-ire-ii- —— -itūrus

**go to sleep**, obdormiō-ire-obdormivī- —— -obdormitūrus

**gold**, aurum-ī (n)

**good**, bonus-a-um

**grandfather**, avus-ī (m)

**grape**, ūva-ae (f)

**ground**, humus-ī (f) ; terra-ae (f)

**guard**, custōs-ōdis (m)

—— custōdiō-ire-ii-itus-itūrus

**hair**, capillus-ī (m) ; crīnis-is (m)

**hall**, ātrium-ii (n)

**hand**, manus-ūs (f)

**hang**, suspendō-ere-suspendī-suspēnsus-suspēnsūrus

**happen**, accidit-ere-accidit- —— - ——

**happy**, laetus-a-um ; beātus-a-um



**harbour**, portus-ūs (m)  
**hate**, ōdī-ōdisse-ōsus sum-ōsūrus  
**have**, habeō-ēre-habui-habitus-habitūrus  
**head**, caput-itis (n)  
**hear**, audiō-īre-iī-ītus-ītūrus  
**heart**, cor-cordis (n)  
**heaven**, caelum-ī (n)  
**heavy**, gravis-is-e  
**helmet**, galea-ae (f)  
**help**, auxilium-iī (n)  
 — audiuvō-āre-adiūvi-adiūtus-adiūtūrus  
**here**, hīc  
 — (to this place), hūc  
 — from here, hinc  
**hidden, I am**, lateō-ēre-latui- — - —  
**hide**, cēlō-āre-āvi-ātus-ātūrus  
**hiding place**, latebrae-ārum (f. pl.)  
**high**, altus-a-um  
**hit**, pulsō-āre-āvi-ātus-ātūrus  
**hoarse**, raucus-a-um  
**hold**, teneō-ēre-ui- — - —  
**home**, domus-ūs (f)  
**homework**, pēsum-ī (n)  
**honour**, honōs-ōris (m)  
**hook**, hāmus-ī (m)  
**hope**, spērō-āre-āvi-ātus-ātūrus  
**horrible**, terribilis-is-e  
**horse**, equus-ī (m)  
**hot**, calidus-a-um  
**hour**, hōra-ae (f)  
**house**, villa-ae (f) ; domus-ūs (f)  
**how ?** quō modō?  
**how big ?** quantus-a-um ?  
**how long ?** quōusque?  
**how many ?** quot ?  
**how much ?** quantum (+ *Gen.*)?  
**however**, autem, tamen  
**howl**, ululō-āre-āvi- — -ātūrus  
**hunger**, famēs-is (f)  
**hungry**, iēiūnus-a-um  
**hunter**, vērātor-ōris (m)

**hurry**, festinō-āre-āvī- — -ātūrus

**if**, sī

**if . . . not**, nisi

**if only**, utinam (+ *Subj.*)

**ill, I am**, aegrōtō-āre-āvī- — -ātūrus

**immediately**, statim

**in**, in (+ *Abl.*)

**incurable**, insānābilis-is-e

**injure**, noceō-ēre-uī- — -itūrus (+ *Dat.*)

**inn**, dēversōrium-iī (n)

**innkeeper**, caupō-ōnis (m)

**into**, in (+ *Acc.*)

**island**, insula-ae (f)

**jar**, urna-ae (f)

**javelin**, pīlum-ī (n)

**journey**, iter-itineris (n)

— contendō-ere-contendī- — -contentūrus

**judge**, iūdex-icis (m)

**jump**, saltō-āre-āvī- — -ātūrus

— **over**, trānsiliō-īre-trānsilui- — - —

**just (recently)**, nūper

**keep back, keep, in**, retineō-ēre-retinui-retentus-retentūrus

**kick**, calcō-āre-āvī-ātus-ātūrus

**kill**, interficiō-ere-fēcī-fectus-fectūrus; necō-āre-āvī-ātus-ātūrus

**kind**, benīgnus-a-um ; benevolus-a-um

**king**, rex-rēgis (m)

**kingdom**, rēgnum-ī (n)

**knee**, genū-ūs (n)

**knock at**, pulsō-āre-āvī-ātus-ātūrus

**know**, intellegō-ere-intellēxi-intellectus-intellectūrus ; sciō-īre-  
scīvī (scīi)- — - —

**large**, magnus-a-um ; ingēns-ēns-ēns (ingentis)

**so large**, tantus-a-um

**last**, ultimus-a-um

**at last**, tandem

**late**, sērō

**later**, postea

**Latin**, lingua-ae Latīna (f)

**laugh**, rideō-ēre-rīsī- — -rīsūrus



- lead**, dūcō-ere-dūxī-ductus-ductūrus  
**leader**, dux-ducis (m)  
**learn**, discō-ere-didicī- ——— - ———  
**leave**, relinquo-ere-reliqui-relictus-relictūrus  
**left**, reliquus-a-um  
**left hand**, sinistra-ae (f)  
**leg**, crūs-crūris (n)  
**legion**, legiō-ōnis (f)  
**length, at length**, tandem  
**lictor**, lictor-ōris (m)  
**lie, tell lies**, mentior-irī-mentitus sum ; falsa dicō-ere  
**lie down**, iaceō-ēre-uī- ——— - ———  
**like**, amō-āre-āvi-ātus-ātūrus ; placet-ēre-placuit mihi  
**like**, sicut  
**lion**, leō-ōnis (m)  
**little**, parvus-a-um  
     **too little**, parum (+ *Gen.*)  
**live**, vivō-ere-vixī- ——— -victūrus  
**live (at or in)**, habitō-āre-āvi-ātus-ātūrus  
**load**, onus-oneris (n)  
**long**, longus-a-um  
**long ago**, iamdūdum  
     **for a long time**, diū  
     **no longer**, nōn diūtius ; nōn iam  
**look !** ecce !  
**look after**, foveō-ēre-fōvi-fōtus-fōtūrus  
     —— **at**, spectō-āre-āvi-ātus-ātūrus  
     —— **for**, quaerō-ere-quaesivī-quaesitus-quaesitūrus  
     —— **out**, caveō-ēre-cāvi- ——— -cautūrus  
**love**, amō-āre-āvi-ātus-ātūrus  
**lover**, amātor-ōris (m)
- mad**, insānus-a-um  
**magistrate**, magistrātus-ūs (m)  
**maiden**, vīrgō-inis (f)  
**make**, faciō-ere-fēcī-factus-factūrus  
**make . . . do**, efficiō-ere-effēcī-effectus-effectūrus ut (+  
     *Subj.*) ; cōgō-ere-coēgī-coactus-coactūrus (+ *Infin.*)  
**man**, vir-virī (m)  
**manners**, mōrēs-mōrum (m. pl.)



**many**, multi-ae-a

**how many ?** quot ?

**so many**, tot

**march**, iter faciō-ere

**market**, macellum-ī (n)

**market-place**, forum-ī (n)

**master**, dominus-ī (m)

**schoolmaster**, magister-strī (m)

**meal**, cēna-ae (f)

**medicine**, medicīna-ae (f)

**meet**, conveniō-īre-vēnī- ——— -ventūrus

**merchant**, mercātor-ōris (m)

**midday**, meridiēs-ēī (m)

**middle**, medius-a-um

**might**, vis- ——— (f)

**mile**, mille passūs (pl. milia passuum)

**milk**, lac-lactis (n)

—— mulgeō-ēre-mulsī- ——— - ———

**mind**, animus-ī (m)

**have in mind**, in animō est mihi

**mine, my**, meus-a-um

**mistake**, error-ōris (m)

**misuse**, abūtor-ī-abūsus sum (+ *Abl.*)

**mob**, vulgus-ī (n)

**money**, pecūnia-ae (f)

**monster**, mōnstrum-ī (n)

**moon**, lūna-ae (f)

**moreover**, praetereā

**morning, in the morning**, māne

**mortal**, mortālis-is-e ; homō-inis (m)

**mother**, māter-mātris (f)

**mountain**, mōns-montis (m)

**mouse**, mūs-mūris (m)

**mouth**, ōs-ōris (n)

**much**, multus-a-um

**too much**, nimis (+ *Gen.*)

**mud**, limus-ī (m)

**must**, oportet-ēre-oportuit (+ *Acc.*) ; necesse est-esse-erat  
(+ *Dat.*) ; dēbeō-ēre-debui ; *or Use Gerundive*

**my**, meus-a-um

**name**, nōmen-inis (n)

—— nōminō-āre-āvī-ātus-ātūrus

**near**, prope (+ *Acc.*)

**nearby**, propinquus-a-um

**neck**, collum-ī (n)

**need**, opus est mihi (+ *Abl.*)

**net**, rēte-is (n)

**net-fighter**, rētiārius-īī (m)

**never**, numquam

**new**, novus-a-um

**night**, nox-noctis (f)

**during the night**, noctū

**nobleman**, nōbilis-is (m)

**noise**, sonitus-ūs (m) ; clāmor-ōris (m)

**nonetheless**, nihilōminus

**no one**, nēmō (m)

**nose**, nāsus-ī (m)

**notebook**, libellus-ī (m)

**nothing**, nihil

**for nothing**, grātis

**notice**, titulus-ī (m)

**now**, nunc

**by now**, iam

**obey**, pāreō-ēre-pāruī- —— - —— (+ *Dat.*)

**obstruct**, obstō-āre-obstiti- —— - —— (+ *Dat.*)

**often**, saepe ; saepenumērō

**old**, vetus-us-us (veteris)

**years old**, annōs nātus-a-um

**old man**, senex-senis (m)

**old woman**, anus-ūs (f)

**on**, in (+ *Abl.*)

**once**, at once, statim

**once upon a time**, ōlim

**one**, ūnus-a-um

**one by one**, **one each**, singulī-ae-a

**one (of two)**, alter-era-erum (alterius)

**only**, solum

**onto**, in (+ *Acc.*)

**open**, aperiō-īre-uī-apertus-apertūrus



**opinion**, sententia-ae (f)

**in my opinion**, meā quidem sententiā

**opposite**, adversus-a-um

—— contrārium-iī (n)

**or**, aut, vel

**order**, iubeō-ēre-iussī-iussus-iussūrus (+ *Acc.*) ; imperō-āre-  
āvi- —— -ātūrus (+ *Dat.* + *ut* + *Subj.*)

**orders**, iussa-ōrum (n. pl.)

**other**, alius-a-ud

**the other**, alter-era-erum (alterius)

**ought**, dēbeō-ēre-uī ; oportet-ēre-oportuit (+ *Acc.*) ; necesse  
est-esse-erat (+ *Dat.*) ; *or Use Gerundive*

**our**, noster-nostra-nostrum

**out of**, ē, ex (+ *Abl.*)

**over**, super (+ *Acc.*) ; trāns (+ *Acc.*)

**overturn**, ēvertō-ere-ēvertī-ēversus-ēversūrus

**pain**, dolor-ōris (m)

**have a pain**, labōrō-āre-āvi- —— -ātūrus ex (+ *Abl.*)

**pair**, binī-ae-a

**parent**, parēns-entis (m *or* f)

**partly**, partim

**past**, praeter (+ *Acc.*)

**pen**, stilus-ī (m)

**perhaps**, fortasse

**philosopher**, philosophus-ī (m) ; sapiēns-entis (m)

**pick**, dēcerpō-ere-dēcerpsī-dēcerptus-dēcerpturus

**pick up**, tollō-ere-sustulī-sublātus-sublātūrus ; capiō-ere-cēpi-  
captus-captūrus

**pig**, porcus-ī (m)

**place**, pōnō-ere-posuī-positus-positūrus

**place**, locus-ī (m)

**in many places**, passim

**in that place**, ibi ; illic

**from what place ?** unde?

**to what place ?** quō?

**to this place**, hūc

**to that place**, illūc

**plan**, cōnsilium-iī (n)

**make a plan**, cōnsilium ineō-īre

**play**, fābula-ae (f)



- play**, lūdō-lūdere-lūsī- — -lūsūrus  
**please**, placet-ēre-placuit (+ *Dat.*)  
**poem**, carmen-inis (n)  
**poet**, poēta-ae (m)  
**policeman**, vigil-vigilis (m)  
**polish**, poliō-ire-poliī-politus-politūrus  
**poor**, pauper-er-er (pauperis)  
**porch**, porticus-ūs (f)  
**port**, portus-ūs (m)  
**pour out**, effundō-ere-effūdī-effūsus-effūsūrus  
**praise**, laudō-āre-āvi-ātus-ātūrus  
**prefer**, mālō-mālle-mālui- — - —  
**prepare**, parō-āre-āvi-ātus-ātūrus  
**pretend**, simulō-āre-āvi-ātus-ātūrus  
**prevent from**, obstō-āre-obstiti- — - — - (+ *Dat.* +  
quōminus + *Subj.*) impediō-ire-ivī-itus-itūrus (+ *Acc.* +  
quōminus + *Subj.*)  
**price**, pretium-iī (n)  
**priest**, sacerdos-ōtis (m)  
**prison**, carcer-eris (m)  
**prisoner**, captivus-ī (m)  
**prize**, praemium-iī (n)  
**prodigy**, prōdigium-iī (n)  
**promise**, prōmittō-ere-misī-missus-missūrus  
**protect**, dēfendō-ere-dēfendī-dēfēnsus-dēfēnsūrus  
**pull**, trahō-ere-trāxī-tractus-tractūrus  
**pupil**, discipulus-ī (m)  
**put**, pōnō-ere-posuī-positus-positūrus  
— **down**, dēpōnō-ere  
— **on (clothes, equipment)**, induō-ere-induī-indūtus-tūrus  
— **round**, circumdō-are-dedī-datus-datūrus  
— **to death**, interficiō-ere-fēcī-fectus-fectūrus  
**pyre**, rogos-ī (m)
- quick**, celer-celeris-celere  
**quickly**, celeriter; sine morā  
**quiet, I keep**, taceō-ēre-uī- — - —
- raise**, tollō-ere-sustulī-sublātus-sublātūrus  
**reach**, adveniō-ire-vēnī- — -ventūrus ; perveniō-ire-vēnī- —  
-ventūrus

**read**, legō-ere-lēgī-lectus-lectūrus

—— **aloud**, recitō-āre-āvi-ātus-ātūrus

—— **through**, perlegō-ere-lēgī-lectus-lectūrus

**reader**, lector-ōris (m)

**rear, in the rear**, ā tergō

**receive**, accipiō-ere-accēpi-acceptus-acceptūrus

**recently**, nūper

**recognise**, cognōscō-ere-cognōvi-cognitus-cognitūrus

**recruit**, tīrō-ōnis (m)

**red**, ruber-bra-brum

**rejoice**, gaudeō-ēre-gāvisus sum

**remain**, maneō-ēre-mānsī- —— -mānsūrus

**remaining**, reliquus-a-um

**reply**, respondeō-ere-respondī-respōnsus-respōnsūrus

**resist**, resistō-ere-restiti- —— - —— (+ *Dat.*)

**retreat**, regredior-ī-regressus sum

**return (go back)**, redeō-īre-rediī- —— -reditūrus ; regredior-ī-

regressus sum ; revertor-ī-reversus sum

—— (b) **come back**, reveniō-īre-revēnī- —— -reventūrus

—— (b) **give back**, reddō-ere-reddidī-redditus-redditūrus

**rich**, dives-es-es (divitis)

**ride**, vehor-ī-vectus sum

**right hand**, dextra-ae (f)

**ring**, ānulus-ī (m)

**river**, flūmen-inis (n) ; fluvius-iī (m)

**road**, via-ae (f)

**rock**, saxum-ī (n)

**Roman**, Rōmānus-a-um

**rope**, fūnis-is (m)

**round**, circum (+ *Acc.*)

**rule**, regō-ere-rēxī-rectus-rectūrus

**run**, currō-ere-cucurrī- —— -cursūrus

—— **away**, fugiō-ere-fūgī- —— -fugitūrus

**sack**, saccus-ī (m)

**sacrifice**, sacrificō-āre-āvi-ātus-ātūrus

**sad**, maestus-a-um ; miser-era-erum

**sail**, nāvigō-āre-āvi- —— -ātūrus

**sailor**, nauta-ae (m)

**savage**, barbarus-a-um ; saevus-a-um

**save**, servō-āre-āvi-ātus-ātūrus



**say**, dicō-ere-dixī-dictus-dictūrus  
**scarcely**, vix  
**school**, lūdus-ī (m)  
**schoolmaster**, magister-stri (m)  
**scold**, reprehendō-ere-reprehendi-reprehēnsus-reprehēnsūrus  
**sea**, mare-is (n)  
**secretary**, scriba-ae (m)  
**see**, videō-ēre-vidī-vīsus-vīsūrus  
**seem**, videor-ērī-vīsus sum  
**self**, ipse-a-um  
**sell**, vendō-ere-vendidi-venditus-venditūrus  
**senate-house**, cūria-ae (f)  
**senator**, senātor-ōris (m)  
**send**, mittō-ere-misī-missus-missūrus  
 ——— **for**, arcessō-ere-arcessivī-arcessitus-arcessitūrus  
**serve**, serviō-īre-iī- ——— -servitūrus (+ *Dat.*)  
**set**, occidō-ere-occidī- ——— -occāsūrus  
**set free**, liberō-āre-āvī-ātus-ātūrus  
**set out**, proficīscor-ī-profectus sum  
**shade**, umbra-ae (f)  
**sheep**, ovis-is (f)  
**shepherd**, pāstor-ōris (m)  
**shield**, scūtum-ī (n)  
**shine**, lūceō-ēre-lūxī- ——— - ———  
**ship**, nāvis-is (f)  
**shoe**, calceus-ī (m)  
**shop**, taberna-ae (f)  
**short**, brevis-is-e  
**shoulder**, umerus-ī (m)  
**shout**, clāmō-āre-āvī-ātus-ātūrus  
**show**, mōnstrō-āre-āvī-ātus-ātūrus  
**shut**, claudō-ere-clausī-clausus-clausūrus  
**sick**, aegrōtus-a-um  
**silent, I am**, taceō-ēre-uī- ——— - ———  
**silently**, silentiō  
**since**, cum (+ *Subj.*) ; quippe quī-quae-quod (+ *Subj.*)  
**sing**, cantō-āre-āvī-ātus-ātūrus ; canō-ere-cecinī - ——— - ———  
**sister**, soror-ōris (f)  
**sit**, sedeō-ēre-sēdī- ——— -sessūrus  
**sky**, caelum-ī (n)  
**slave**, servus-ī (m)



**sleep**, dormiō-īre-ivī- ——— -itūrus

**go to sleep**, obdormiō-īre-ivī- ——— -itūrus

**slow**, lentus-a-um

**small**, parvus-a-um

**snail**, cochlea-ae (f)

**so**, tam ; adeō ; ita

—— **big, great**, tantus-a-um

—— **many**, tot

**sob**, singultus-ūs (m)

**soldier**, miles-itis (m)

**some**, aliquantum (+ *Gen.*)

**some . . . others**, aliī-ae-a . . . aliī-ae-a

**some people**, sunt quī (+ *Subj.*)

**somebody, something**, aliquis-quis-quid

**son**, fīlius-iī (m)

**soon**, mox

**as soon as**, simulatque

**sort, what sort?** quālis-is-e ?

**soul**, anima-ae (f)

**sound**, sonō-āre-sonuī-sonitus-sonātūrus

—— sonitus-ūs (m)

**spare**, parcō-ere-pepercī- ——— -parsūrus (+ *Dat.*)

**speak**, dicō-ere-dixī-dictus-dictūrus ; loquor-ī-locūtus sum

**spectator**, spectātor-ōris (m)

**speech**, ōrātiō-iōnis (f)

**make a speech**, ōrātiōnem habeō-ēre

**spend**, expendō-ere-expendī-expēnsus-expēnsūrus

**stand**, stō-āre-stetī- ——— -stātūrus

—— **up**, surgō-ere-surrēxī- ——— -surrectūrus

**state**, rēpublica-reīpublicae (f)

**statue**, statua-ae (f)

**stay**, maneō-ēre-mānsī- ——— mānsūrus

**steal**, auferō-auferre-abstulī-ablātus-ablātūrus ; fūror-ārī-  
-fūrātus sum

**steersman**, gubernātor-ōris (m)

**stern**, gravis-is-e

**stick**, baculum-ī (n)

**stomach**, venter-ventris (m)

**stone**, lapis-idis (m) ; saxum-ī (n)

**story**, fābula-ae (f)

**strike**, pulsō-āre-āvi-ātus-ātūrus

**study**, tablinum-ī (n)  
**stupid**, stultus-a-um  
**suddenly**, subitō  
**suffer**, patior-ī-passus sum  
**sufficient**, satis (+ *Gen.*)  
**summon**, convocō-āre-āvi-ātus-ātūrus  
**sun**, sōl-sōlis (m)  
**surely** ? nōne?  
 — not ? num?  
**swallow**, exhaustiō-ire-exhausi-exhaustus-exhaustūrus  
**sweet**, dulcis-is-e  
**swim**, natō-āre-āvi- — -ātūrus  
**sword**, gladius-ii (m)

**table**, mēnsa-ae (f)  
**tail**, cauda-ae (f)  
**take**, capiō-ere-cēpi-captus-captūrus  
 — (lead), dūcō-ere-dūxi-ductus-ductūrus  
 — away, auferō-auferre-abstuli-ablātus-ablātūrus  
 — off (clothes), exuō-ere-ui-ūtus-ūtūrus  
**talk**, loquor-ī-locūtus sum ; conloquor-ī-conlocūtus sum  
**talkative**, loquax-ax-ax (loquācis)  
**tall**, altus-a-um  
**teach**, doceō-ēre-docui-doctus-doctūrus  
**tell**, dicō-ere-dixi-dictus-dictūrus  
 — a story, narrō-āre-āvi-ātus-ātūrus  
 — (order), iubeō-ēre-iussi-iussus-iussūrus (+ *Acc.*); imperō-  
     āre-āvi- — -ātūrus (+ *Dat.* + ut + *Subj.*).  
 — lies, falsa dicō-ere ; mentior-iri-mentitus sum  
 — the truth, vērā dicō-ere  
**than**, quam  
**thank**, grātiās agō-ere-ēgi (+ *Dat.*)  
**that**, ille-illa-illud  
**there**, ibi ; illic  
**thick**, dēnsus-a-um  
**thief**, fūr-fūris (m)  
**thing**, rēs-rei (f)  
**think**, putō-āre-āvi-ātus-ātūrus  
 — out, excōgitō-āre-āvi-ātus-ātūrus  
**thirsty, I am**, sitiō-ire-ii- — - —  
**this**, hīc-haec-hoc



**thread**, filum-ī (n)

**threaten**, minor-ārī-minātus sum

**through**, per (+ *Acc.*)

**throw**, iaciō-ere-iēcī-iactus-iactūrus

—— **away**, abiciō-ere-abiēcī-abiectus-abiectūrus

—— **in**, iniciō-ere-iniēcī-iniectus-iniectūrus

**thumb**, pollex-icis (m)

**till**, colō-ere-coluī-cultus-cultūrus

**time**, tempus-oris (n)

**at the same time**, simul

**for a long time**, diū

**tired**, fessus-a-um

**to**, ad (+ *Acc.*)

**to-day**, hodiē

**tomb**, sepulcrum-ī (n)

**to-morrow**, crās

**tongue**, lingua-ae (f)

**too**, *Comparative*

—— **little**, parum (+ *Gen.*)

—— **much**, nimis (+ *Gen.*)

**tooth**, dēns-dentis (m)

**top**, summus-a-um

**torture**, cruciō-āre-āvi-ātus-ātūrus

**touch**, tangō-ere-tetigī-tactus-tactūrus

**traitor**, prōditor-ōris (m)

**traveller**, viātor-ōris (m)

**tree**, arbor-oris (f)

**trick**, dolus-ī (m)

**trumpet**, tuba-ae (f)

**truth**, vēra-ōrum (n. pl.)

**try**, cōnor-ārī-cōnātus sum ; temptō-āre-āvi-ātus-ātūrus

**turn**, vertō-ere-vertī-versus-versūrus

**twist**, torqueō-ēre-torsi-tortus-tortūrus

**tyrant**, tyrannus-ī (m)

**ugly**, dēformis-is-e

**under**, sub (+ *Abl.*)

**understand**, intellegō-ere-intellēxī-intellectus-intellectūrus

**unless**, nisi

**unpleasant**, molestus-a-um

**until**, dōnec



**up to**, usque ad (+ *Acc.*)  
**use**, ūtor-ī-ūsus sum (+ *Abl.*)

**vain, in vain**, frustrā  
**vengeance, I take**, ulcīscor-ī-ultus sum  
**verse**, versiculus-ī (m)  
**voice**, vox-vōcis (f)

**wage war**, bellum gerō-ere-gessī-gestus-gestūrus  
**wages**, stipendium-īī (n)  
**wake (somebody)**, excitō-āre-āvi-ātus-ātūrus  
 — **up (oneself)**, expergīscor-ī-experrectus sum  
**walk**, ambulō-āre-āvi- — -ātūrus  
**wall**, mūrus-ī (m)  
**wander**, errō-āre-āvi- — -ātūrus  
**want**, volō-velle-volui - — - —  
**war**, bellum-ī (n)  
     **declare war**, bellum indicō-ere  
     **wage war**, bellum gerō-ere  
**wash**, lavō-āre-āvi-ātus-ātūrus  
**waste, lay waste**, vastō-āre-āvi-ātus-ātūrus  
**watch**, spectō-āre-āvi-ātus-ātūrus  
     **keep watch**, vigilō-āre-āvi-ātus-ātūrus  
**water**, aqua-ae (f)  
**wave**, unda-ae (f)  
**wealth**, opēs-opum (f. pl.)  
**weapons**, arma-ōrum (n. pl.)  
**wear**, gerō-ere-gessī-gestus-gestūrus  
**weep**, lacrimō-āre-āvi-ātus-ātūrus  
**weight**, pondus-eris (n)  
**west**, sōlis occāsus-ūs (m)  
**when**, ubi, cum, postquam  
**when ?** quandō?  
**whenever**, quandōcumque  
**where ?** ubi?  
**which**, quī-quae-quod  
**which ?** quis-quis-quid ?  
**while**, dum (+ *Present Indic.*)  
     **for a little while**, aliquamdiū  
**white**, albus-a-um  
**who**, quī-quae-quod

**who** ? quis-quis-quid ?

**whoever, whatever**, quisquis-quisquis-quicquid

**why** ? cūr, quō cōnsiliō, quā dē causā ?

**wife**, uxor-ōris (f)

**will**, testāmentum-ī (n)

**win**, vincō-ere-vicī-victus-victūrus

**window**, fenestra-ae (f)

**wine**, vīnum-ī (n)

**wing**, āla-ae (f)

**wise**, sapiēns-ēns-ēns (sapiēntis)

**wish**, volō-velle-volui- — - —

**with** (in company with), cum (+ *Abl.*) ; ūnā cum (+ *Abl.*)

**without**, sine (+ *Abl.*)

**wolf**, lupus-ī (m)

**woman**, mulier-eris (f) ; mātṛōna-ae (f) ; fēmina-ae (f)

**wonderful**, mīrus-a-um ; mīrābilis-is-e

**wood**, silva-ae (f)

**work hard**, labōrō-āre-āvi- — -ātūrus

**world**, orbis-is (m)

**worry**, vexō-āre-āvi-ātus-ātūrus

**wound**, vulnus-eris (n)

— vulnerō-āre-āvi-ātus-ātūrus

**write**, scribō-ere-scripsi-scriptus-scriptūrus

**wrong, I do**, peccō-āre-āvi- — -ātūrus

**yawn**, hiō-āre-āvi- — -ātūrus

**year**, annus-ī (m)

**yesterday**, herī

**young man**, iuvenis-is (m)

**your**, tuus-a-um ; (plural) vester-stra-strum

# PSEUDOLUS NOSTER

A Beginners' Latin Course

Part Two

TEACHERS' SUPPLEMENT

Printed and Published by  
Wilding & Son Ltd., Castle Street, Shrewsbury.





# HINTS ON THE USE OF THIS BOOK

---

## General

We have now to deal with more difficult ideas than the *accidence* and the simple sentences which are almost all we have hitherto met. Syntax and the complex sentence demand that the pupil shall suspend judgment and deal with more than one idea at once. This does not come easily. Our pupils, as far as Latin is concerned, are mere babes, and such sophistications as the Passive, the Subjunctive, or the Conditional Sentence fall no more naturally, or accurately from their lips than one imagines they fell from those of a Roman six-year-old.

Bearing in mind, then, our aim to teach a working knowledge of the language, we must be even more careful not to complicate complexities. We must emphasise the right thing at the right moment, and not hide the wood in the trees simply for the sake of completeness. Thus, while it is necessary to devote a whole chapter to a basic idea, such as Indirect Command, there are other things, like *quin* and *quippe qui*, which, though very useful, are better slipped in by the way. There are even some items of grammar, such as Passive Impersonal Verbs, which we have deliberately omitted as being unimportant at this stage. The hints which follow have therefore been divided into three groups: (a) Basic Syntax, (b) Points of Secondary Importance, and (c) Points to be Omitted.

We suggest further, that there are many mistakes which a pupil would not think of making, if an over-zealous teacher,

for the sake of completeness, did not warn him against them. We have carefully arranged, for example in teaching the use of the Past Participle, for the pupil to be able to cope adequately with the Grammar while still being ignorant of some of its pitfalls. The bliss which comes of such ignorance should be left untroubled as long as possible. There are many stones concealing dangerous abysses, which can well be left unturned until the specialist stage.

Teachers who have seen *Principia* will already be familiar with the order we recommend for dealing with each chapter. This is :—

(a) Practise orally the grammatical point to be learnt, by means of one of the drills given later in these hints, and then by the *Exercitatio*.

(b) Read the *Fabula*. Vocabulary, etc., should not be “prepared” beforehand, but explained in class as it occurs. Questions in Latin should be asked all through, to be answered in Latin, so as to test and stimulate understanding.

(c) Learn by heart the necessary accidence.

(d) Do the *Exercitationes*.

(e) Do the *Sententiae Anglicae*. These are to test the teacher rather than the pupils. If the pupils do not do these sentences reasonably well, the teacher must drive his point further home by more oral practice.

(f) Learn the new vocabulary. The most important new words are listed under chapters in Part V.



## A—Basic Syntax

### 1. *The Passive. Chapters 1-4*

This form of expression, unnatural at this stage, needs a clear introduction, as follows :—

Magister : (*to Marcus*) Veni. Pulsa me.

(*Marcus, with joyful astonishment, obeys.*)

Quid facis?

Marcus : Pulso te (*or magistrum*).

Magister : Quid accidit mihi? (*Nonplussed silence.*)

Ego pulsor a te (*or a Marco, for example, if speaking to the class*).

It will be found that *a te* or *a Marco* and the introduction of *ego* for emphasis make the idea of the Passive more easily understood, at this stage, than the new verb ending alone.

When we have repeated this demonstration sufficiently, we consolidate :—

Magister : (*to Marcus*) Pulsa me. Quid facis?

Marcus : Pulso te.

Magister : Bene. Ego pulsor a te. Nunc ego pulso te.

Quid accidit tibi?

Marcus : Ego pulsor a te (*or a magistro*).

We are now ready for the Second Person :—

Magister : (*striking Marcus*) Pulso te. Quid accidit tibi?

Marcus : Ego pulsor a te.

Magister : Tu pulsaris a magistro. Dicite omnes.

Omnes : (*pointing at Marcus*) Tu pulsaris a magistro.

Later the pupil himself can be made to ask :—

Marcus : Quid accidit mihi?

Omnes : Tu pulsaris a magistro.

The Third Person can be demonstrated by the same process followed by the master asking :—

Magister : (*to the class*) Quid accidit Marco? (*Silence again.*)

Marcus a magistro pulsatur. Dicite omnes.

Omnes : (*pointing*) Marcus a magistro pulsatur.

This develops into a drill with a series of verbs to practise the Passive Tenses in the same way as we practise the Active:—

Magister : Tango te *digito*. Quid accidit tibi?

Discipulus : Tangor a magistro *digito*.

Magister : A quo tangeris?

Discipulus : A magistro tangor.

*Magister : Quo instrumento tangeris?*

*Discipulus : Digito tangor. Quid accidit mihi?*

Omnes : Tangeris a magistro *digito*.

Discipulus : A quo tangor?

Omnes : A magistro tangeris.

*Discipulus : Quo instrumento tangor?*

*Omnes : Digito tangeris.*

Magister : Quid accidit ei (*or* Marco)?

Omnes : Tangitur a magistro *digito*.

Magister : A quo tangitur?

Omnes : A magistro tangitur.

*Magister : Quo instrumento tangitur?*

*Omnes : Digito tangitur.*

Continue with :—

Retineo te *manu*.

Pulso te *pugno*.

Sepelio te *pala*.

Notice that the unnecessary pronouns are now omitted. The words in italics should not be included until the idea of the Passive with the Agent has been mastered, and obviously,



if it is desired to emphasise either the new ending of the verb or the Agent or the Instrument, only the questions which bring the applicable answer will be asked.

Other tenses of the Passive can be introduced in the same way and drilled as follows :—

Magister : Tangam te. Quid accidet tibi?  
 Discipulus : Tangar a magistro. Quid accidet mihi?  
 Omnes : Tangēris a magistro.  
 Magister : Quid accidet ei?  
 Omnes : Tangetur a magistro.

Magister : Tango te. Quid accidit tibi?  
 Discipulus : Tangor a magistro. Quid accidit mihi?  
 Omnes : Tangeris a magistro.  
 Magister : Quid accidit ei?  
 Omnes : Tangitur a magistro.  
 Magister : (*turning to boy*) A quo tangeris?  
 Discipulus : A magistro tangor. A quo tangor?  
 Omnes : A magistro tangeris.  
 Magister : A quo tangitur?  
 Omnes : A magistro tangitur.  
 Magister : (*turning to boy*) Quo instrumento tangeris?  
 Discipulus : Digito tangor. Quo instrumento tangor?  
 Omnes : Digito tangeris.  
 Magister : Quo instrumento tangitur?  
 Omnes : Digito tangitur.

Magister : (*turning to boy*) Quid accidebat tibi?  
 Discipulus : Tangebar a magistro. Quid accidebat mihi?  
 Omnes : Tangebaris a magistro.  
 Magister : Quid accidebat ei?  
 Omnes : Tangebatur a magistro.



And after the Perfect has been introduced, add :—

Magister : Quid iam accidit tibi?

Discipulus : Tactus sum a magistro. Quid iam accidit mihi?

Omnes : Tactus es a magistro.

Magister : Quid iam accidit ei?

Omnes : Tactus est a magistro.

and so with *retineor manu*, *pulsor pugno* and *sepelior pala*.

Finally, and the Passive is difficult enough to need all this, it may be found wise, in dealing with tenses formed from the Present stem, to show how every verb is made up of three parts, indicating what happened, when, and who did it. Thus *pulsa-bi-t*, *pulsa* "hit," *bi*="in the future," *t*="he." The last part is a personal ending. The Active personal endings are *-m* or *-o*, *-s*, *-t*, *-mus*, *-tis*, *-nt*. The Passive personal endings are *-r*, *-ris*, *-tur*, *-mur*, *-mini*, *-ntur*. Tabulate to show how the Passive is formed by changing the personal endings.

The Perfect, Pluperfect, and Future-Perfect Passive (Chapters 3 and 4) will cause little difficulty after the other tenses have been learnt, and the class will clearly appreciate the idea of adding the appropriate tense of *sum* to the past participle.

Now is the time to go a step further with Principal Parts, *i.e.*, *pulso-are-avi-atus*. We recommend strongly the use of the Past Participle rather than the Supine, for reasons set out later (XI).

## II—*Deponent Verbs* (Chapter 5)

See under *The Middle* in section B below.

## III—*Indirect Command : The Subjunctive* (Chapters 7 and 8)

The endings of the Subjunctive may be easy to learn, but it is just as ineffective to teach them *in vacuo* as it is any other

accidence. Some usage must be found, as concrete as possible, and Indirect Command best serves our purpose.

The pupils will already have been reminded, not too obviously, of the construction with *iubeo*. We have introduced it into the Revision Chapter 6 for this purpose. We then turn to the verb drill, which has become by now second nature :—

Magister : Marce, surge. Quid facis?

Marcus : Surgo. Quid facio?

Magister : Surgis. Quid ego facio?

Marcus : (*after a pause*) Iubes me surgere.

Magister : Ita. Iubeo te surgere, vel impero tibi ut surgas.

(*Writes on the board, " Iubeo te surgere = Impero tibi ut surgas."*)

Iterum igitur surge. Quid facio?

Marcus : Imperas mihi ut surgam.

It is quite likely that Marcus or some other pupil, having in mind the idea of Personal Endings which he came across while learning the Passive, will guess this new first person. If no one does, the class must be told it, but no more. They will certainly guess the other persons with ease.

And so we arrive at the drill :—

Magister : Marce, surge. Quid facio?

Marcus : Imperas mihi ut surgam. Quid facis?

Magister : Impero tibi ut surgas. Quid facio?

Omnes : Imperas ei (Marco) ut surgat.

So with the other verbs of the series, *ambulo*, *revenio* and *sedeo*, and in the plural, and later with *pulsor*, *tangor*, *retineor* and *sepelior*. When the Present Subjunctive has been



thoroughly learnt and practised, as in *Exercitatio* 7A, we can introduce the Imperfect Subjunctive in a similar way :—

Magister : Marce, surge. Quid fecisti?

Marcus : Surrexi. Quid feci?

Magister : Surrexisti. Quid ego feci?

Marcus : (*if he is cautious*) Iussisti me surgere ; (*if rash*)  
Imperavisti mihi ut . . . ?

Magister : Ita. Iussi te surgere, vel, imperavi tibi ut  
surgeres.

(*Writes on the board, "Iussi te surgere =  
imperavi tibi ut surgeres."*)

So once more we get the verb drill :—

Magister : Marce, surge. Quid feci?

Marcus : Imperavisti mihi uturgerem. Quid fecisti?

Magister : Imperavi tibi uturgeres. Quid feci?

Omnes : Imperavisti ei (Marco) uturgeret, etc.

These two tenses of the Subjunctive are sufficient for the moment, and all the class need yet know about the Sequence of Tenses is that the Imperfect Subjunctive is used with a past main verb. Avoid like the plague the true Perfect (the so-called "Perfect with have") main verb.

We shall, of course, tell our pupils, if they do not see it for themselves, that the Imperfect Subjunctive is formed by adding the Personal endings, whether Active or Passive, to the Active Infinitive. And it is now a good time to remind them of the Passive, and especially the Middle, Infinitives, and for the sake of conjugation that *-āri = āre*, *-ēri = ēre*, *-ī = -ere*, *-īrī = -īre*.

An interesting and profitable diversion comes from a combination of the Verb Drill and the *Exercitatio*. This will be all the more amusing if the right props are available, a service dress hat with a red band for *Imperator*, a battle dress



jacket with two pips up for *Tribunus*, and an armlet with sergeant's stripes on it for *Centurio*. Four members of the class act as follows :—

Imperator : (*in best Sandhurst voice*) Impero tibi ut surgas.

Tribunus : (*in tones used by a ranker officer of long experience*) Iubeo te surgere.

Centurio : (*as loud as any of his kind*) Surge!

Tiro : (*timidly*) Surgo.

So with any other verb. This has the virtue of exercising the principle of *aliter Latine*, which, with Prose Composition before us, we must seek to encourage.

Once the idea of Indirect Command with *impero* is fully understood, it will of course be extended to other verbs, like *rogo*, *precor*, etc.

#### IV—*Purpose* (Chapters 9 and 10)

Now that we are familiar with the Subjunctive, it only remains to learn its other uses. Purpose can possibly be introduced as follows :—

Magister : Surge. Quid facis?

Marcus : Surgo.

Magister : Cur surgis?

Marcus : (*perhaps with his mind on the last thing that caused him trouble*) Surgo quia imperas mihi ut surgam.

Magister : Ita, sed quid facies?

Marcus : Ambulabo.

Magister : Quid igitur vis facere?

Marcus : Volo ambulare.

Magister : Cur igitur surgis?

Marcus : Surgo quia volo ambulare.

Magister : Bene. Surgis quia ambulare vis, vel, surgis ut ambules.

(Writes on the board. “ *Surgo quia ambulare volo=Surgo ut ambulem*).”

The above are the likely workings of a pupil's mind, and the way they should be led to the right end. After some such introduction the usual drill develops :—

Magister : Surge. Cur surgis?

Marcus : Surgo ut ambulem. Cur surgo?

Omnes : Surgis ut ambules.

Magister : Cur surgit?

Marcus : Surgit ut ambulet.

So with the other verbs, ending with *sedeo ut surgam*, and so *ad infinitum*. Sooner or later *Cur surgo?* must be replaced by the better *Quo consilio surgis?*, but this should not be done at first.

### V—Gerundive of Purpose (Chapters 11 and 12)

This is a matter of *aliter Latine*, of teaching another means of expressing an idea already learnt. All that is needed is an easily recognisable example. Indeed, much of what follows is teaching by example and learning by analogy. The teacher writes on the board :—

Magister ad ludum venit, ut discipulos doceat.

=Magister ad ludum venit discipulorum docendorum causa.

The Genitive Plural is, perhaps, clumsy, but it makes a good example, because it is so obviously Genitive. Most pupils, taught to keep an eye on the Infinitive when learning new endings of verbs, will form the Gerundive endings accurately without further guidance. Tell them, if you like, that the Gerundive is an adjective which agrees with its object, and



that, to have the meaning of *ut* it must be in the genitive with *causa*. Do not tell them that it is “a passive verbal adjective derived from a verbal substantive, to which its object is attracted, and, taking upon itself adjectival inflections, agrees with it in gender and number.”

Now all that is needed is practice. Turn every suitable Purpose clause with *ut* that you meet, *e.g.*, in Chapter 10, into one expressed by the Gerundive. Practise the construction by means of the series also. But this involves the Gerund, for which see Section B.

It is an easy step from this use of the Gerundive to its use in the Accusative with *ad*. Once more explain by *aliter Latine* :—

Magister ad ludum venit, ut discipulos doceat.

=Magister ad ludum venit discipulorum docendorum causa.

=Magister ad ludum venit ad discipulos docendos.

Explain that the adjective is used in the same way, in a different case, with the same meaning. Then practise as before, using the questions—

Qua de causa ad ludum venit?

Ad quid faciendum ad ludum venit? *or simply* Cur ad ludum venit?

## VI—Gerundive of Necessity (Chapters 13 and 14)

This again is where we use *aliter Latine* for *oportet* and *debeo* as laid down in the *Exercitatio*. No other introduction will probably be needed. Explain that this is the same adjective in another case, used in the same way but with a different meaning. The pupils will already be familiar with the idea that the logical subject of an impersonal verb is expressed by the pronoun which goes with it. An impersonal verb taking the dative has been used in Chapter 12 to remind them of this, and so has *necesse est* in the *Exercitatio* of



Chapter 13. They will accept, therefore, the dative pronoun with the nominative of the Gerundive without much trouble, and there is no need to emphasise the intricacies of grammar connected with it. Practise the construction, whenever possible, by changing *debeo*, *oportet*, *necesse est*, etc., into the Gerundive. Drill with the verb series again involves the Gerund : see Section B.

*Qui* with the Subjunctive is introduced in Chapter 14. This should be explained as *aliter Latine* for *ut* with the subjunctive, and so practised : see Section B.

## VII—*Indirect Speech, Main Clause (Chapters 16 and 17)*

The pupils have already accepted in English the need for this construction. There is no need, therefore, to make a great fuss about the concept of Reported speech, as there was, for instance, about that of Case. All the pupils need know is how to do it.

Once more the examples should precede the rule, and the *Exercitatio* in Chapter 16 may well suffice. If not, use some such introduction as this :—

Magister : Marce, dic aliquid.

Marcus : Magister pueros pulsat.

(*Get Marcus to make a suitable statement, positive and with the subject expressed. If he does not do so at once, say "Hoc mihi non placet" until, by degrees, he does.*)

Magister : Dicis magistrum pueros pulsare.

(*Writes on the board, "Magister pueros pulsat. Dicis magistrum pueros pulsare."*)

Quid dicis?

Marcus : Dico magistrum pueros pulsare. Quid dico?

Omnes : Dicis magistrum pueros pulsare.

The same statement should be repeated with *dixisti* and written on the board, to show that the tense of the infinitive does not depend on that of the main verb. Let the class decide what it does depend on, and what happens to its subject. There is no need to tell them why. Next introduce statements to report containing past and future verbs. The way has been cleared for the future infinitive, since the periphrastic future, e.g., *servaturus sum*=*servabo*, has been used in Chapter 15. See section B.

For drill use the verb series once more :—

Magister : Marce, surge. Quid facis?

Marcus : Surgo.

Magister : Quid dicis?

Marcus : Dico me surgere. Quid dico?

Omnes : Dicis te surgere.

Magister : Quid dicit Marcus?

Omnes : Dicit se surgere.

*Nego* can be substituted by way of exercise for *dico* :—

Magister : Marce, noli surgere. Quid non facis?

Marcus : Non surgo.

Magister : Quid negas?

Marcus : Nego me surgere.

and so on.

Practise also with other verbs and tenses.

The main difficulty with Indirect Speech is that, in translating English into Latin, the pupils are led away by the English tenses. To avoid this, make the pupils turn the English into Direct Speech in English, and then turn this into Direct Speech in Latin before making it Indirect. Similar practice can be had in Latin by asking, “*Quid inquit?*” to turn Indirect into Direct Speech.

For *quippe qui*, introduced in Chapter 17, see section B.



VIII—*Indirect Question (Chapters 18 and 19)*

Treat this in the same way as the main clause in Indirect Speech. If the *Exercitatio* in Chapter 18 is not sufficient introduction in itself, introduce the construction as follows :—

Magister : Marce, roga aliquid.

Marcus : Ubi est libellus?

*(Marcus must be persuaded, as in VII, to keep his verb in the third person, so as to avoid difficulties over changing persons and pronouns, which would distract attention from the essential change into the subjunctive.)*

Magister : Rogas ubi sit libellus.

*(Writes on the board, " Ubi est libellus?  
Rogas ubi sit libellus.")*

Quid rogas?

Marcus : Rogo ubi sit libellus. Quid rogo?

Omnes : Rogas ubi sit libellus.

Repeat the same question with *rogavisti* and write on the board as before. Let the class see what happens to the verb in the question when the question mark disappears, and show them that the tense of the Subjunctive changes as usual with the tense of the main verb. Avoid at first questions containing verbs in the past, since this will involve learning the Perfect and Pluperfect Subjunctives and the Sequence of Tenses. But, when the time comes to learn these tenses, the pupils will have no difficulty with the Active, if they bear in mind the personal endings, and with the Passive will readily turn *sum* of the Indicative into *sim*. The Pluperfect Passive tends to give more trouble, and it is best to remind the pupils that they have only to turn the Imperfect Indicative *eram* into the corresponding subjunctive.



The following *Tabula Magica* will banish most troubles arising from the Sequence of Tenses :—

		Subordinate Verb		
		Present	Past	Future
Main Verb	Not Past	Present	Perfect	Future Participle with <i>sim</i>
	Past	Imperfect	Pluperfect	Future Participle with <i>essem</i>

Do not confuse the pupils, at this stage, by using terms like Primary and Historic, which are meaningless to them. Divide all main verbs into two simple classes, Past and Not Past. The above table will hold good for all normal uses of the Subjunctive except in Conditional Sentences. Past, Present, or Future of the Subordinate Verb mean Past, Present, or Future either in the Direct Speech, if dealing with Indirect Speech, or as regards the main verb in other constructions.

e.g. (i) *Dixit se hominem vidisse, qui matrem necavisset.*

The subordinate verb would be *necavit* in direct speech. It is Past and so, according to *Tabula Magica*, we use the Pluperfect Subjunctive after the Past Main Verb, *Dixit*.

(ii) *Surgo ut ambulem.*

The purpose in *ambulem* is Present, and *surgo* is Not Past, and so, according to *Tabula Magica* we use the Present Subjunctive.

(iii) *Timeo ne patrem necaverim.*

I have already murdered father. The action in *necaverim* is Past as regards *timeo*, which is Not Past. Hence, according to *Tabula Magica* we use the Perfect Subjunctive.

Once more the verb series is useful for drill :—

Magister : Marce, surge. Quid facis?

Marcus : Surgo.

Magister : Cur surgis? Quid rogo?

Marcus : Rogas cur surgam. Quid rogas?

Magister : Rogo cur surgas. Quid rogo?

Omnes : Rogas cur surgat.

So with other verbs and tenses. Notice that in this drill change of person is also practised. Leave such refinements as indirect interrogative particles, *num*, *utrum*, *necne*, etc., until they occur in the *Exercitatio*.

### IX—*Indirect Speech, Main and Subordinate Clause (Chapters 20 and 21)*

This, of course, consists in merely combining the material contained in VII and VIII. All that is needed is constant practice, which can best be obtained either by putting sentences in the *Fabulae* after *Dicit* and *Dixit*, or by inviting statements containing subordinate clauses and dealing with them as in VII above.

In Chapter 22 the Subjunctive Imperative and *non auctum est quin* are introduced for the first time. For notes on these see section B.

### X—*Ablative Absolute (Chapters 23-26)*

This, with both Past and Present Participles, is a matter of *aliter Latine*. We have found that it is best to introduce the Ablative Absolute with the Past Participle first, not only



because it is more frequently used, but also because its use has a more obvious meaning. In both tenses the *Exercitatio* should be found to give sufficient introduction. The pupils are already familiar with *postquam* and *dum*. *Cum* with the pluperfect subjunctive is readily accepted as *aliter Latine* for *postquam* with the perfect indicative. The Ablative Absolute with the perfect participle can then be introduced as a second “*aliter Latine*” for this.

*e.g.* Postquam urbem cepit, domum rediit.

Cum urbem cepisset, domum rediit.

Urbe capta domum rediit.

Similarly the Ablative Absolute with the present participle can be introduced as *aliter Latine* for *dum* with the present.

*e.g.* Dum magister dormit, pueri ludunt.

Magistro dormiente pueri ludunt.

Do not, at this stage, worry the pupils about the Past Participle being passive, or cause unnecessary confusion by introducing examples where the participle cannot be used in the ablative. We have intentionally reserved this difficulty for the next chapter.

## XI—Participles (Chapters 27 and 28)

Here we deal with examples where the participles cannot be used in the ablative. This difficulty needs only to be recognized to be overcome. Get a pupil to put into Latin a sentence like, “When we had killed the master, we buried him.” The first versions will naturally be those with *postquam* and *cum*. After this someone will say, “*Magistro interfecto eum sepelivimus.*” Write this on the board and ask who is “*eum.*” The answer will be “*magistrum.*” Now write on the board, *Magistro interfecto magistrum sepelivimus.* A raising of the eyebrows is enough to deal with this horror.



Such other horrors as *Caesar adventus aciem instruit* can usually be avoided if, in the principal parts, the Past Participle is given instead of the Supine. Thus intransitive verbs have no Past Participle among their principal parts—*advenio-advenire-adveni-* ——— *-adventurus*—and therefore pupils cannot use it. On the other hand, if this system is used, the Future Participle must be supplied from which to form the Future Infinitive, etc. We have found that this system generally eliminates the above error from our pupils' work, and have, therefore, adopted it in this book. It certainly saves a deal of complicated explanation which is rarely understood at this stage.

## XII—Consecutives (Chapters 30 and 31)

This construction, involving only another use of the subjunctive, is so simple that we have known pupils invent it successfully for themselves. It is quite a good idea to make, at this point, a collection of "question words" and their corresponding answers, *e.g.*, *Qualis?*—*Talis*, *Quot?*—*Tot*, etc., and to point out that "*qu*" means question and "*t*" answer. Tell the class also that *tam* goes only with adjectives, and adverbs, *ita* with verbs.

Do not, at this stage, confuse the issue by introducing the use of The Perfect Subjunctive to express "actuality".

Once more we can, if necessary, use the verb series as a drill :—

Magister : Marce, surge. Quo modo surgis?

Marcus : Ita (tam celeriter) surgo, ut ambulem.  
Quo modo surgo?

Omnes : Ita (tam celeriter) surgis, ut ambules.

Magister : Quo modo surgit? etc.

For *quominus* introduced in Chapter 31, see section B.

## XIII—Verbs of Fearing (Chapters 32 and 33)

Let the class discover from the *Exercitatio* that *timeo* is

perverse enough to take *ne* when it should take *ut*, and vice versa. Avoid all mention of “*ne non*.” Drill again :—

Magister : Marce, surge. Quid facis?

Marcus : Surgo.

Magister : Quid times?

Marcus : Timeo ne surgam, etc.

This can be used with varying tenses to give practice in using *Tabula Magica*, e.g. :—

Magister : Marce, surge. Quid fecisti?

Marcus : Surrexi.

Magister : Quid times?

Marcus : Timeo ne surrexerim.

(Followed by the usual questions to bring in the whole class, and then)

Magister : Quid timebas?

Marcus : Timebam ne surrexissem, etc.

For *pugnandi cupidus*, introduced in Chapter 33, see Sections B and D.

#### XIV—Conditionals (Chapters 34 and 35)

Conditional Sentences without Implication have already been dealt with in *Principia*. Those with Implication cause difficulty mainly because of loose usage in English, which is apt to confuse between Present and Future types. We like to call them “*But*” Conditionals, because anyone who uses this type of sentence has a “*but*” clause in his mind even if he does not express it. We then go on to explain that the tense of the verb in this “*but*” clause gives the true tense of the whole sentence ; both verbs will be in the subjunctive, and the tense of the subjunctive will be one step further back in the past than that of the “*but*” verb.

e.g. If I were to see him, I would kill him, *but* I shall not see him. (*Non videbo*.)



Tense of the “ *but* ” verb Future, therefore tense of the subjunctive in the other verbs—Present.

Avoid “ vivid ” constructions and “ mixed ” sentences, and more especially the Perfect Subjunctive in Future sentences.

Once the construction has been introduced, the verb series is very useful for drill here :—

Magister : Marce, surge et ambula. Quid facies?

Marcus : Surgam et ambulabo.

Magister : Qua condicione non ambules?

Marcus : Nisi surgam non ambulem. Qua condicione non ambulem?

Omnes : Nisi surgas non ambules.

Magister : Qua condicione non ambulet?

Omnes : Nisi surgat non ambulet.

Marcus : Ah, sed surgam et ambulabo.

Magister : Surge igitur et ambula. Quid facis?

Marcus : Surgo et ambulo.

Magister : Qua condicione non ambulares?

Marcus : Nisiurgerem non ambulare. Qua condicione non ambulare?

Omnes : Nisiurgeres non ambulares.

Magister : Qua condicione non ambularet?

Omnes : Nisiurgeret non ambularet

Marcus : Ah, sed surgo et ambulo.

Magister : Quid fecisti?

Marcus : Surrexi et ambulavi.

Magister : Qua condicione non ambulavisses?

Marcus : Nisi surrexissem non ambulavissem. Etc.

We have introduced the Conditionals in the order Past, Present, Future, because it has been our experience that the



first are most easily recognized, and the last least. We have deliberately put Conditionals without Implication in the *Sententiae Anglicae* for the sake of contrast and revision.

## B. Points of Secondary Importance

### *The Middle (Chapter 5)*

We prefer to use the term “Middle” rather than “Deponent.” “Deponent” has little obvious meaning, whereas “Middle” indicates just the position such verbs occupy, halfway between Active and Passive—Passive in form though Active in meaning. Such is all the explanation needed. The rest is practice. Moreover, to call such verbs “Middle” will not only help those fortunate few who are to do Greek, but also clear up many otherwise obscure usages in Vergil.

### *Dates (Chapter 6)*

Dates have been introduced early because they need much practice, and we suggest this can be got by having the date written daily on the board and at the head of every piece of written work. Some pupils may even be ingenious enough to devise a “perpetual” calendar.

Tell the class the names of the various fixed festivals, explain that they are not fixed, and dictate the rhyme to help them remember the alterations :—

March, July, October, May,

Have Nones the seventh, Ides the fifteenth day.

An explanation that Nones are so called because they are nine days before the Ides will help to bring home the peculiar Roman method of counting—burning the candle at both ends, as it were. Keep the names of the fixed festivals and the months in the Accusative until it becomes necessary to use the Ablative for the date of a fixed festival itself. *Solvitur ambulando*.

### *The Gerund (Chapter 11)*

Do not confuse the class yet with any other name than the Gerundive, or explain that it is a noun. This merely invites them to concentrate on the futile problem of when is a Gerund a Gerundive, instead of on the use of either. Let the Gerund be regarded simply as the Gerundive without its accompanying noun, in fact only one ending to bother with instead of two.

Sooner or later someone will ask what gender this Gerundive is to be, now that it has no noun to govern it, and he will simply be told that it suffers the usual fate of adjectives bereft of their nouns, and goes into the neuter.

So we come to the drill :—

Magister : Marce, surge et ambula. Qua de causa surgis?

Marcus : Ambulandi causa surgo, etc.

The usual verb series can be expanded to get in the Gerundive. For instance, after *surgo* and *ambulo* we might bring in *cretam capio* and *nomen scribo*, which would give us :—

Magister : Marce, ambula et cape cretam. Qua de causa ambulas?

Marcus : Cretae capiendae causa ambulo, etc.

and

Magister : Cape cretam et scribe nomen. Qua de causa cretam capis?

Marcus : Nominis scribendi causa cretam capio, etc.  
and then on to *revenio* and *sedeo*.

The drill for the Gerund and Gerundive of Necessity is :—

Magister : Marce, surgendum est tibi. Quid tibi faciendum est?

Marcus : Surgendum est mihi. Quid mihi faciendum est?

Omnes : Surgendum est tibi.



Magister : Quid ei (Marco) faciendum est?

Omnes : Surgendum est ei (Marco).

and so on with the series expanded as above.

Other uses of the Gerund can be explained by a little ingenuity, e.g., “*pugnandi cupidus*” by *aliter Latine*, “*quia pugnare vult*” and “*pugnando vicit*” by the question “*quo modo vicit ?*”

### *Qui with the Subjunctive (Chapter 14)*

Explain that here *qui* also means *ut* and so takes the subjunctive, and show that it follows from this that whenever *qui* means something more than “who” it takes the subjunctive, (c.f., *maior erat panis quam quem respuerent*, chapter 27, and in the frequent use of *quippe qui=qui et quia*, which first appears in Chapter 17). Such things, when explained as another opportunity for using the subjunctive, cause little difficulty.

### *Quo with Comparative and Subjunctive (Chapter 15)*

Explain, quite simply, that in a clause like *ut celerius currat*, *quo* always takes the place of *ut*. The logic behind this should not be explained at this stage.

### *Future Participle (Chapter 15)*

We introduce this first as part of the periphrastic future. Some classes seem to revel in such complicated terms, perhaps without understanding them. It is usually best to leave them out and explain simply, as the text itself does, *servaturus est=servabit*. After this its use with *sum* in various Moods is obvious. So is its use purely as a participle, although this is comparatively rare, and we have left it to be encountered for the first time in original texts. From now on add the future participle to the principal parts, making five in all.



### *Quin (Chapter 22) and Quominus (Chapter 31)*

These are not worth all the fuss that is usually made about them. Simply tell the class that they both go with the subjunctive. The class will be subjunctive-conscious by now, and will already have suspected or feared it.

The main difficulty with *quin* is that it goes with negative main verbs, and this can be emphasized by saying that the “*n*” at the end of *quin* is an echo of the *non* with the main verb. This impresses and is not far from the truth.

The chief difficulty with *quominus* is that it should be remembered at all, and we suggest that, at first, every verb meaning “prevent” should be written in vocabularies, and elsewhere, linked with *quominus*, e.g., *impedio quominus*.

The Subjunctive Imperative is best explained, without ado, by the English “let” or “may.”

We are left with phrases whose meaning can be given without explaining the grammar, with some confidence that they will be used properly by imitation. Such phrases are, *efficio ut*, *in eo est ut*, which occur in Chapter 24. These are easily explained by *aliter Latine*, “*in eo est ut ambulem* = *mox ambulabo*”. So is *mirabile dictu* imitation of which should be invited in phrases like *horribile visu*, etc.

### **C. Points to be Omitted**

We have deliberately omitted the following points as being either rare, or unnecessary for self-expression at this stage, or best tackled later when the pupils’ logical sense is sufficiently developed to accept and act upon the mere statement of a rule :—

1. The Supine used to express purpose. This occurs mostly in idiomatic phrases like *cubitum eo*, etc., and is therefore best not put into general use yet. We suggest that, when it is met,

it be treated as the past participle without a noun and therefore in the neuter (*cf.*, Gerund) and explained by *aliter Latine*, “*cubitum eo=eo ut cubem.*”

2. Verbs taking the dative which become impersonal in the passive.

3. The impersonal passive when the subject is vague, *e.g.*, *ad arma concurritur*. This, when met, can be explained by *aliter Latine*, “*omnes ad arma concurrunt,*” or “*nescioquis ad arma currit.*” Make reference also to the French “*on.*”

4. *Timeo* with the infinitive, which would invite confusion if introduced, but explains itself when met in the course of reading, after *timeo ne* with the subjunctive has been driven home.

5. The use of The Perfect Subjunctive after a Past Main Verb (contrary to the *Tabula Magica*) to express “actuality” is a refinement that can wait until it is met in an author.

#### D. *Aliter Latine*

We cannot stress too much the principal of *aliter Latine*, which bases, in the best and most active sense, the unknown upon the known. We have found it not only an aid to memory, but a stimulus to oral work, and a great help in explaining much grammar without fuss. Moreover, the pupil with a fund of such groups of phrases on the tip of his tongue can tackle advanced composition in prose and verse with comparative ease.

Here are a few examples :—

- (1) Oportet me facere
- Necesse est mihi facere
- Debeo facere
- Faciendum est mihi



- (2) Sed, autem, tamen, vero
- (3) Itaque, igitur  
Nam, namque, enim
- (4) Ut opinor, ut puto, mea quidem sententia, ut mihi videtur
- (5) Ut fit, ut solent homines, ut mos est hominibus
- (6) Dum facit, cum faceret  
Cum fecisset, postquam fecit, quo facto  
Quibus auditis, etc.
- (7) Pugnandi cupidus  
Quia pugnare vult  
Quippe qui pugnare velit
- (8) Milites ut pugnent mitto  
Milites qui pugnent mitto, etc.

**E.**

The vocabulary can be expanded at will by the use of *aliter Latine* and *contrarium Latine*.

*e.g.* aperio=pando  
aperio)(claudio

and it is expected that the teacher will do this at every possible opportunity.